



Catalogue No. 92-378-XIE

2001 Census Dictionary

Reference

2001

CENSUS

How to obtain more information

Specific inquiries about this product and related statistics or services should be directed to your nearest regional reference centre.

For information on the wide range of data available from Statistics Canada, you can contact us by calling one of our toll-free numbers. You can also contact us by e-mail or by visiting our Web site.

National inquiries line	1 800 263-1136
TTY	1 800 363-7629
Depository Services Program inquiries	1 800 700-1033
Fax line for Depository Services Program	1 800 889-9734
E-mail inquiries	infostats@statcan.ca
Web site	www.statcan.ca

Ordering Information

This product, Catalogue No. 92-378XPE, is published every five years as a standard printed publication at a price of C\$25.00. The following additional shipping charges apply for delivery outside Canada:

	Single issue
United States	C\$6.00
Other countries	C\$10.00

This product is also available in electronic format on the Statistics Canada Internet site as Catalogue No. 92-378-XIE free of charge. To obtain single issues, visit our Web site at www.statcan.ca, and select Products and Services.

All prices exclude sales taxes.

Ways to order the printed version:

- Telephone (Canada and United States) **1 800 267-6677**
- Fax (Canada and United States) **1 877 287-4369**
- E-mail order@statcan.ca
- Mail Statistics Canada
Dissemination Division
Circulation Management
120 Parkdale Avenue
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0T6
- In person at the Statistics Canada regional reference centre nearest you, or from authorized agents and bookstores.

When notifying us of a change in your address, please provide both old and new addresses.

Standards of service to the public

Statistics Canada is committed to serving its clients in a prompt, reliable and courteous manner and in the official language of their choice. To this end, the Agency has developed standards of service which its employees observe in serving its clients. To obtain a copy of these service standards, please contact Statistics Canada toll free at 1 800 263-1136.



Statistics Canada
Census Operations Division

2001 Census Dictionary

Published by authority of the Minister responsible for Statistics Canada

© Minister of Industry, 2003

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without prior written permission from Licence Services, Marketing Division, Statistics Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K1A 0T6.

Revised in December 2004

Catalogue No. 92-378-XIE
ISBN 0-662-31155-8

Ottawa

La version française de cette publication est offerte sur demande.

Note of Appreciation

Canada owes the success of its statistical system to a long-standing partnership between Statistics Canada, the citizens of Canada, its businesses, governments and other institutions. Accurate and timely statistical information could not be produced without their continued co-operation and goodwill.

National Library of Canada Cataloguing in Publication Data

Main entry under title:

2001 Census Dictionary

Mode of access: World Wide Web.

Electronic document in PDF format.

Issued also in French under title: Dictionnaire du recensement de 2001.

ISBN 0-662-31155-8

CS92-378-XIE

1. Canada – Census, 2001 – Handbooks, manuals, etc.
 2. Canada – Census, 2001 – Methodology.
 3. Canada – Population – Statistics – Handbooks, manuals, etc.
- Statistics Canada. Census Operations Division. II. Title.
III. Series: Reference (Ottawa, Ont.).

HA741.5 2001 T86 2002

001. 4'33

C2002-988004-1

Table of Contents

Modified on June 2, 2004

	Page
Introduction	(xiii)
Date.....	(xiv)
List of New Variables and Terms	(xiv)
List of Deleted Variables and Terms	(xvi)
New Terminology for Certain Variables.....	(xvii)
List of Abbreviations	(xviii)
 Population Universe	
Introduction to the Population Universe	1
Aboriginal:	
Aboriginal Identity	3
Aboriginal Origin	4
Member of an Indian Band or First Nation.....	4
Registered or Treaty Indian.....	5
Agriculture:	
Census Farm	6
Farm Operator	7
Rural Farm Population	7
Citizenship	8
Demography:	
Age	9
Common-law Status.....	9
Date of Birth.....	10
Legal Marital Status	11
Marital Status.....	12
Sex	13
Disability	13
Ethnic Origin	15
Immigration:	
Age at Immigration.....	20
Immigrant Population	20
Landed Immigrant Status	21
Non-immigrant Population.....	22
Non-permanent Resident	23
Period of Immigration.....	26
Year of Immigration.....	27
Income:	
Average Income of Individuals	28
Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan	29
Benefits from Employment Insurance.....	29
Canada Child Tax Benefits	30
Composition of Income	31

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Constant Dollars Income.....	33
Dividends, Interest on Bonds, Deposits and Savings Certificates, and Other Investment Income.....	33
Earned or Employment Income Recipient.....	34
Earnings or Employment Income	34
Government Transfer Payments	35
Major Source of Income	35
Market Income	36
Median Income of Individuals.....	37
Net Farm Income	38
Net Non-farm Income from Unincorporated Business and/or Professional Practice	38
Old Age Security Pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement	39
Other Income from Government Sources.....	40
Other Money Income	41
Retirement Pensions, Superannuation and Annuities, Including Those from RRSPs and RRIFs.....	41
Standard Error of Average Income.....	42
Total Income	43
Wages and Salaries.....	45
Institutional Resident	47
Journey to Work:	
Commuting Distance.....	47
Mode of Transportation.....	48
Place of Work Status	49
Workplace Location	50
Labour Market Activities:	
Class of Worker	51
Employed (in Reference Week)	53
Employment Rate (in Reference Week).....	55
Experienced Labour Force (in Reference Week)	56
Full-time or Part-time Weeks Worked in 2000	57
Historical Labour Force Activity (based on the 1971 Concepts) – (in Reference Week).....	57
Hours Worked for Pay or in Self-employment (in Reference Week).....	59
Incorporation Status.....	60
Industry (based on the 1997 North American Industry Classification System [NAICS])	61
Industry (based on the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification [SIC])	62
Inexperienced Labour Force (in Reference Week).....	64
Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week).....	65
Labour Force (in Reference Week).....	69
Looked for Paid Work in Past Four Weeks (Full- or Part-time Work).....	69
New Job to Start in Four Weeks or Less (from Reference Week)	70
Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week).....	71
Occupation (based on the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics [NOC–S 2001])	72
Occupation (Historical).....	75

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
On Temporary Lay-off or Absent from Job or Business (in Reference Week)	76
Participation Rate (in Reference Week)	77
Reasons Unable to Start a Job (in Reference Week)	78
Unemployed (in Reference Week)	79
Unemployment Rate (in Reference Week)	80
Weeks Worked in 2000	81
When Last Worked for Pay or in Self-employment	82
Work Activity in 2000	83
Language:	
First Official Language Spoken	84
Home Language	85
Knowledge of Non-official Languages	86
Knowledge of Official Languages	87
Language of Work	87
Mother Tongue	88
Mobility:	
Census Agglomeration of Current Residence	92
Census Division of Current Residence	92
Census Metropolitan Area of Current Residence	93
Census Subdivision of Current Residence	93
Province or Territory of Current Residence	94
Mobility 1: Census Division of Residence 1 Year Ago	94
Mobility 1: Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 1 Year Ago	96
Mobility 1: Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago	97
Mobility 1: Census Subdivision Type of Residence 1 Year Ago	97
Mobility 1: Components of Migration (In- and Out-)	98
Mobility 1: Country of Residence 1 Year Ago	99
Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago	100
Mobility 1: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago	103
Mobility 1: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence	104
Mobility 1: Province or Territory of Residence 1 Year Ago	105
Mobility 1: Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 1 Year Ago	106
Mobility 5: Census Division of Residence 5 Years Ago	107
Mobility 5: Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 5 Years Ago	108
Mobility 5: Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago	109
Mobility 5: Census Subdivision Type of Residence 5 Years Ago	109
Mobility 5: Components of Migration (In- and Out-)	110
Mobility 5: Country of Residence 5 Years Ago	111
Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago	112
Mobility 5: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago	115
Mobility 5: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence	116
Mobility 5: Province or Territory of Residence 5 Years Ago	117
Mobility 5: Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 5 Years Ago	118

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Place of Birth:	
Father	119
Generation Status	119
Mother	120
Respondent	120
Population Group.....	121
Presence of Children	122
Relationship to Household Reference Person (Person 1).....	123
Religion	124
Schooling:	
Degree in Medicine, Dentistry, Veterinary Medicine or Optometry	125
Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma.....	126
Highest Grade of Elementary or Secondary Schooling	127
Highest Level of Schooling.....	128
Major Field of Study (MFS) – Census Historical.....	130
Major Field of Study – Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP_MFS)	131
Major Field of Study – International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED_MFS)	131
School Attendance.....	132
Secondary (High) School Graduation Certificate.....	133
Total Years of Schooling.....	134
Trades and College Certificates or Diplomas	135
University Certificate Above Bachelor Level.....	136
Years of College Education.....	136
Years of University.....	138
Unpaid Work:	
Hours Spent Doing Unpaid Housework.....	139
Hours Spent Looking After Children, Without Pay.....	139
Hours Spent Providing Unpaid Care or Assistance to Seniors	140
Usual Place of Residence.....	141
Visible Minorities.....	143
Family Universe	
Introduction to the Family Universe.....	144
Census Family.....	146
Census Family Composition	148
Census Family Household Composition	149
Census Family Status.....	150
Census Family Structure	151
Census Family Type.....	152
Economic Family	153

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Economic Family Status	155
Economic Family Structure	156
Economic Family Type	156
Household Living Arrangements	158
Income:	
Average Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over	159
Average Income of Economic Families and Unattached Individuals 15 Years of Age and Over	160
Census Family Total Income.....	160
Economic Family Total Income	161
Highest Income Recipient in the Census Family	161
Highest Income Recipient in the Economic Family.....	162
Incidence of Low Income	162
Income Status.....	163
Low Income Cut-offs (LICOs).....	164
Median Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over.....	165
Median Income of Economic Families and Unattached Individuals 15 Years of Age and Over.....	166
Household Universe	
Introduction to the Household Universe	168
Annual Payment for Electricity	170
Annual Payment for Oil, Gas, Coal, Wood or Other Fuels	170
Annual Payment for Water and Other Municipal Services.....	171
Annual Property Taxes	171
Condominium Fees	172
Household	172
Household, Collective	173
Household Maintainer(s).....	173
Household Outside Canada.....	174
Household, Private	175
Household Size	175
Household Type	176
Income:	
Average Income of Households	177
Household Total Income	178
Median Income of Households.....	178
Monthly Mortgage Payment.....	179
Number of Household Maintainers.....	180
Number of Persons Per Room	181

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Owner's Major Payments.....	181
Owner's Major Payments or Gross Rent as a Percentage of Household Income.....	182
Primary Household Maintainer.....	183
Property Taxes Included in Mortgage Payments.....	183
Rent, Gross	184
Rent, Monthly Cash	185
Tenure.....	185
Tenure – Condominium	186
 Dwelling Universe	
Introduction to the Dwelling Universe.....	187
Bedrooms	188
Condition of Dwelling	188
Dwelling.....	189
Dwelling, Collective	189
Dwelling, Occupied Marginal	192
Dwelling, Occupied Private.....	193
Dwelling, Owner-occupied Private, Non-farm	194
Dwelling, Private.....	194
Dwelling, Private, Occupied by Foreign and/or Temporary Residents.....	195
Dwelling, Regular	196
Dwelling, Tenant-occupied Private, Non-farm.....	196
Dwelling, Unoccupied Private	197
Period of Construction	197
Rooms.....	198
Structural Type of Dwelling.....	198
Value of Dwelling.....	200
 Geography	
Introduction to the Geography Section.....	202
Geographic Attributes:	
Adjusted Counts	207
Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ).....	208
Geographic Code.....	209
Land Area	210
Population Density	212

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Geographic Classifications:	
Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)	212
Statistical Area Classification (SAC).....	213
Geographic Files:	
Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs).....	216
Digital Boundary Files (DBFs).....	218
Digital Cartographic Files (DCFs).....	218
Road Network Files (RNFs)	218
Street Network Files (SNFs)	219
Geographic Infrastructure:	
National Geographic Base (NGB)	219
Geographic Units:	
Block.....	221
Census Agglomeration (CA)	222
Census Agricultural Region (CAR).....	222
Census Consolidated Subdivision (CCS)	223
Census Division (CD).....	225
Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).....	229
Census Subdivision (CSD).....	239
Census Subdivision – Previous Census.....	245
Census Tract (CT)	246
Consolidated Census Agglomeration	248
Consolidated Census Metropolitan Area	248
Designated Place (DPL).....	248
Dissemination Area (DA).....	251
Economic Region (ER).....	253
Enumeration Area (EA).....	255
Federal Electoral District (FED).....	257
Locality (LOC).....	258
Place Name (PN).....	259
Primary Census Agglomeration.....	259
Primary Census Metropolitan Area	259
Province or Territory	260
Rural Area (RA)	261
Unincorporated Place (UP)	262
Urban Area (UA).....	262
Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe	264
Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS):	
Block-face	266
Coordinate System	267
Datum	268
Ecumene	269
Geocoding	270
Map Projection.....	272
Reference Map	273

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
Representative Point.....	275
Thematic Map.....	278
Other:	
Geographic Reference Date	279
Postal Code	280
Spatial Data Quality Elements	282
Urban Population Size Group	283

Appendices

A. Census Questionnaire Content and Derived Variables Since Confederation	285
B. Data Quality, Sampling and Weighting, Confidentiality and Random Rounding	291
C. Comparison of Ethnic Origins Collected in 2001, 1996 and 1991	297
D. Historical Comparability of Journey to Work Data.....	303
E. Comparability of Labour Force Activity Data With Those of Previous Censuses (1971-2001) and With the Labour Force Survey	305
F. Labour Force Activity Derivation Chart	310
G. Mother Tongue, Home Language and Language of Work: Classifications from 2001, 1996 and 1991	312
H. Knowledge of Non-official Languages: Classifications from 2001, 1996 and 1991.....	317
I. Comparability of Mobility Data With Those of Previous Censuses	322
J. Comparison of Places of Birth Available in 2001, 1996 and 1991	325
K. 2001 Census Countries of Citizenship.....	334
L. Comparison of Religious Code Values, 2001, 1991 and 1981	337
M. Major Field of Study (MFS) – Classification Study	340
N. 2001 Form 2B, Population Questionnaire.....	356
O. Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations With Census Tracts: Changes Between the 1996 Census and the 2001 Census.....	388

List of Tables

1. Geographic Units by Province and Territory, 2001 Census.....	206
2. Population Distribution by the Statistical Area Classification, 1996 Census	215
3. Number of Census Subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification, 2001 Census.....	215
4. Census Division Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census	226
5. Changes to Census Division (CD) Types in Ontario, 1996 to 2001	227
6. Census Subdivision Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census.....	240
7. Selected Census Subdivisions Included when Tabulating “On-reserve” Population, 2001 Census.....	243

Table of Contents – Continued

	Page
8. Summary of Dissolutions and Incorporations by Province and Territory (January 2, 1996 to January 1, 2001).....	244
9. Designated Place Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census.....	250
10. Abbreviations and Codes for Provinces and Territories, 2001 Census.....	260
11. First Character of Postal Code and Corresponding Province, Territory or Region.....	280

List of Figures

1. Population Universe and Subuniverses.....	2
2. British, French and European Origins.....	18
2A. Northern European Origins.....	18
2B. Southern European Origins.....	18
2C. Eastern European Origins.....	18
3. Asian, Arab, African and Pacific Islands Origins.....	19
3A. Maghrebi Origins.....	19
3B. Indo-Chinese Origins.....	19
4. Latin American, Caribbean, Aboriginal and Other Origins.....	19
5A. Permanent and Non-permanent Residents: Place of Birth.....	24
5B. Permanent and Non-permanent Residents: Citizenship.....	25
6. Components of Income in 2000.....	32
7. Income Content and Coverage in the Censuses of Canada.....	46
8. Population and the Labour Force Activity Components, 2001 Census.....	68
9. Mother Tongue, Home Language, Language of Work and Knowledge of Non-official Languages.....	90
9A. Aboriginal Languages.....	91
9B. Germanic Languages.....	91
9C. Niger-Congo Languages.....	91
10. 2001 Census Mobility Variables.....	95
11. Relationship Between the Category of Mobility Status and the 2001 Census Question on Place of Residence 1 Year Ago.....	103
12. Relationship Between the Category of Mobility Status and the 2001 Census Question on Place of Residence 5 Years Ago.....	115
13. 2001 Census and Economic Family Universes and Subuniverses.....	144
14. Economic and Census Family Membership and Family Status.....	145
15. Overview of the Census Family Variables.....	147
16. Overview of the Economic Family Variables.....	154
17. 2001 Household Universe.....	168
18. Household Universe and Subuniverses.....	169
19. 2001 Dwelling Universe.....	187
20. Hierarchy of Standard Geographical Units for Dissemination, 2001 Census.....	205
21. Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Hierarchy.....	213
22. Statistical Area Classification (SAC) Hierarchy.....	214
23. Example of a Cartographic Boundary File (Provinces and Territories).....	216
24. Example of Census Consolidated Subdivisions (CCSs) and Census Subdivisions (CSDs).....	224
25. The Urban Core Rule.....	230

Table of Contents – Concluded

	Page
26. The Forward Commuting Flow Rule.....	231
27. The Reverse Commuting Flow Rule	232
28. The Spatial Contiguity Rule.....	233
29. The Historical Comparability Rule	234
30. Example of a Merged Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration.....	235
31. Example of a Census Metropolitan Area or a Census Agglomeration, Showing Urban Core, Secondary Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe	265
32. Example of Data Retrieval With User-defined Boundaries	271
33. Example of a Map Projection and Unprojected Coordinates	273
34. Example of Block-face and Block Representative Points	276

Introduction

Modified on June 2, 2004

The Dictionary provides definitions for all the concepts, variables and geographic terms of the 2001 Census.

The Dictionary is divided into five sections. The first four focus on census “universes,” i.e. group of variables pertinent to a subject. Terms and variables are listed alphabetically by specific characteristics within each section. The fifth section provides information on the geographic terms used during the Census of Canada.

The four census universes are:

Population Universe – Provides information on the characteristics of Canada’s population, such as demography, language, mobility, immigration, labour force activity and income.

Family Universe – Pertains to the characteristics of family units. Both census and economic families are included.

Household Universe – Covers the characteristics of a person or a group of persons who occupy a private dwelling.

Dwelling Universe – Describes the characteristics of dwelling units in Canada.

In the Dictionary, the information is presented in the following format:

Plain Language Definition	This is a definition without jargon, simplified to make the information accessible to more people. To maintain uniformity in the document format, “Not applicable” appears under this heading for the variables and geographic terms that do not have a plain language definition.
Detailed Definition	This is a comprehensive and more technical definition of each variable or term that will be used in all census products. A variable is a subject about which information can be retrieved from the census database.
Census(es):	This heading indicates the census years in which the term or variable was used, and whether the data were collected from the entire population or from a sample. If the data were collected from a sample, the sample size is given.
Reported for:	This heading gives information on the population or subpopulation for which the data are provided. “Not applicable” appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

Question No(s): This heading indicates the census question number(s) to which a variable is associated. “Not applicable” appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

There are **direct** variables, **derived** variables and **coded** variables. For example, the question on the sex of respondents has two response categories: male and female. These categories correspond exactly to the information in the database. For this reason, Sex is said to be a **direct** variable. In Question 3, on the other hand, respondents are asked to provide the date of birth of each household member. The answers to this question are used to calculate the age of respondents on Census Day, and it is this information that is stored in the database. Age is referred to as a **derived** variable because the information in the database does not correspond to the answers given for Question 3.

Coded variables are written responses that have been classified according to a pre-determined classification system.

Responses: This heading shows the response categories or classifications of the variable. “Not applicable” appears under this heading in the case of geographic terms.

Remarks: This heading provides any additional detailed information (for example, on the comparability with previous censuses) which may help users to better understand and use the data.

In the section on geography, the user will find a subsection entitled “Changes Prior to 2001,” in which all changes brought to the term in the 1996 Census or in previous censuses are indicated.

Date

Some tables and figures in this document include the “As of March 12, 2002” date, to indicate that the information they contain will be updated later. This date will be changed when a modification is brought to them.

If a modification is brought to one of the variables, terms or appendices, a date will be incorporated to indicate when the modification was done (e.g. Modified on April 12, 2002).

List of New Variables and Terms

The 2001 Census Dictionary includes new variables and terms. They are:

Population Universe:

Aboriginal:

Aboriginal Identity

Aboriginal Origin

Income:

- Earned or Employment Income Recipient
- Earnings or Employment Income
- Market Income

Labour Market Activities:

- Employment Rate (in Reference Week)
- Historical Labour Force Activity (based on the 1971 Concepts) – (in Reference Week)
- Industry (based on the 1997 North American Industry Classification System [NAICS])
- Occupation (based on the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics [NOC–S 2001])
- Occupation (Historical)

Language:

- Language of Work

Place of Birth:

- Father
- Generation Status
- Mother

Religion**Schooling:**

- Major Field of Study – Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP_MFS)
- Major Field of Study – International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED_MFS)

Geography:**Geographic Attributes:**

- Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ)

Geographic Classifications:

- Statistical Area Classification (SAC)

Geographic Files:

- Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs)
- Road Network Files (RNFs)

Geographic Infrastructure:

- National Geographic Base (NGB)

Geographic Units:

- Block
- Census Subdivision – Previous Census
- Dissemination Area (DA)
- Locality (LOC)

Other:

- Spatial Data Quality Elements

For more information, see the Introduction of the section on geography.

Appendices:

Comparison of Religious Code Values, 2001, 1991 and 1981
Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations With Census Tracts: Changes Between the
1996 Census and the 2001 Census

List of Deleted Variables and Terms

The following entries, which were included in the 1996 Census Dictionary, have been excluded from the 2001 Census.

Population Universe:

Aboriginal:

- Aboriginal Population
- Aboriginal Self-reporting

Labour Market Activities:

- Occupation (Based on the 1991 Standard Occupational Classification)
- Employment-population Ratio

Persons Living as a Couple

Dwelling Universe:

Dwelling Under Construction, Renovation or Conversion

Geography:

- Consolidated Census Agglomeration
- Consolidated Census Metropolitan Area
- Digital Boundary Files (DBFs)
- Digital Cartographic Files (DCFs)
- Primary Census Agglomeration
- Primary Census Metropolitan Area
- Street Network Files (SNFs)

For more information, see the Introduction of the section on geography.

Appendices:

A Guide to Census Geography and Applications

CMA/CA, Showing Street Network File Coverage

1996 and 1991 Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations by Census Subdivision Components, Showing CMA/CA Code, CSD Type, SNF Coverage, Number of Census Tracts and Number of Enumeration Areas

New Terminology for Certain Variables

- The Household Activities group in 1996 is called Unpaid Work for 2001.
- The variable Income: Benefits from Unemployment Insurance in 1996 is called Income: Benefits from Employment Insurance for 2001.
- The variable Schooling: Major Field of Study (MFS) in 1996 is called Schooling: Major Field of Study (MFS) – Census Historical for 2001.
- The variable Schooling: Trades and Other Non-university Certificates in 1996 is called Schooling: Trades and College Certificates or Diplomas for 2001.
- The variable Schooling: Years of Other Non-university Education in 1996 is called Schooling: Years of College Education for 2001.
- The variable Census Family Living Arrangements in 1996 is called Household Living Arrangements for 2001.

List of Abbreviations

Modified on February 19, 2003

AMF	–	Area Master File
APS	–	Aboriginal Peoples Survey
BDFD	–	Block-face Data File
CA	–	census agglomeration
CANCEIS	–	Canadian Census Edit and Imputation System
CAR	–	census agricultural region
CARTLIB	–	Cartographic Library
CBF	–	Cartographic Boundary File
CCS	–	census consolidated subdivision
CD	–	census division
CIP_2000	–	Classification of Instructional Programs (2000 edition)
CIP_MFS	–	Major Field of Study – Classification of Instructional Programs
CMA	–	census metropolitan area
CPP	–	Canada Pension Plan
CSD	–	census subdivision
CT	–	census tract
DA	–	dissemination area
DBF	–	Digital Boundary File
DCF	–	Digital Cartographic File
DCW	–	Digital Chart of the World
DPL	–	designated place
EA	–	enumeration area
E & I	–	Edit and Imputation
ER	–	economic region
EUROSTAT	–	Statistical Office of the European Communities
FED	–	federal electoral district
FSA	–	forward sortation area
GIS	–	geographic information system
GIS	–	Guaranteed Income Supplement
GNBC	–	Geographic Names Board of Canada
GRS	–	Geodetic Reference System
GST	–	Goods and Services Tax
HALS	–	Health and Activity Limitation Survey
HST	–	Harmonized Sales Tax
INAC	–	Indian and Northern Affairs Canada
ISCED_MFS	–	International Standard Classification of Education – Major Field of Study
LDU	–	local delivery unit
LFS	–	Labour Force Survey
LICOs	–	low income cut-offs
LOC	–	locality
MFS	–	major field of study
MIZ	–	census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zones
MP	–	member of Parliament
MRC	–	municipalité régionale de comté
NAD	–	North American Datum
NAFTA	–	North American Free Trade Agreement
NAICS	–	North American Industry Classification System
NCB	–	National Child Benefit
NCBS	–	National Child Benefit Supplement

n.e.c.	–	not elsewhere classified
NGB	–	National Geographic Base
n.i.e.	–	not included elsewhere
NISA	–	Net Income Stabilization Account
NOC	–	National Occupational Classification
NOC–S 2001	–	National Occupational Classification for Statistics 2001
n.o.s.	–	not otherwise specified
NRCan	–	Natural Resources Canada
NTDB	–	National Topographic Database
OAS	–	Old Age Security pension
OECD	–	Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
PALS	–	Participation and Activity Limitation Survey
PCA	–	primary census agglomeration
PCMA	–	primary census metropolitan area
PN	–	place name
QC	–	quality control
QPP	–	Quebec Pension Plan
QST	–	Quebec Sales Tax
RA	–	rural area
RCMP	–	Royal Canadian Mounted Police
RNF	–	Road Network File
RO	–	representation order
RRIF	–	Registered Retirement Income Fund
RRSP	–	Registered Retirement Savings Plan
SAC	–	Statistical Area Classification
SAS	–	Statistical Analysis System
SGC	–	Standard Geographical Classification
SIC	–	Standard Industrial Classification
SNF	–	Street Network File
SOC	–	Standard Occupational Classification
UA	–	urban area
UNESCO	–	United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization
UP	–	unincorporated place
UTM	–	Universal Transverse Mercator

Introduction to the Population Universe

Modified on November 4, 2002

The **Population Universe** includes variables that provide information about individuals, covering demographic, ethnocultural, language, mobility, schooling, income and labour force characteristics. A complete list of these variables is found in the Table of Contents.

Some variables within this universe are collected for the entire population of Canada; others are collected for a 20% sample of the population only. See Figure 1 on the following page.

The **Population Universe** of the 2001 Census includes the following groups:

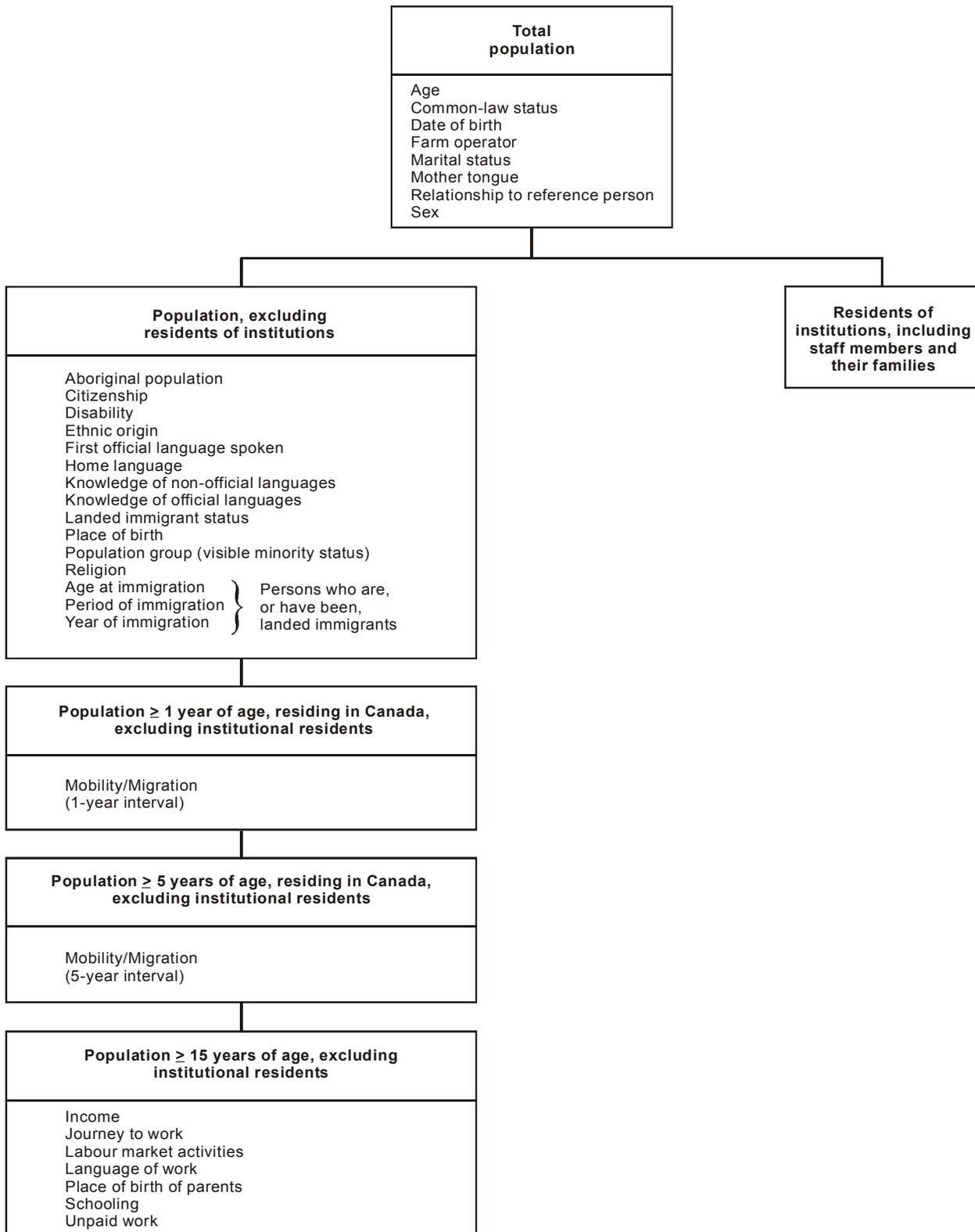
- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants with a usual place of residence in Canada;
- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants who are abroad, either on a military base or attached to a diplomatic mission;
- Canadian citizens (by birth or by naturalization) and landed immigrants at sea or in port aboard merchant vessels under Canadian registry;
- persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who are claiming refugee status and members of their families living with them;
- persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who hold student authorizations (student visas or student permits) and members of their families living with them;
- persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who hold employment authorizations (or work permits) and members of their families living with them;
- persons with a usual place of residence in Canada who hold Minister's permits (including extensions) and members of their families living with them.

For census purposes, the last four groups in this list are referred to as "non-permanent residents". For further information, refer to the variable Immigration: Non-permanent Resident.

The **Population Universe** of the 2001 Census does not include **foreign residents** because they have not been enumerated since 1991. Foreign residents are persons who belong to the following groups:

- government representatives of another country attached to the embassy, high commission or other diplomatic body of that country in Canada, and members of their families living with them;
- members of the Armed Forces of another country who are stationed in Canada, and members of their families living with them;
- residents of another country visiting Canada temporarily (for example, a foreign visitor on vacation or on business, with or without a visitor's permit).

Figure 1. Population Universe and Subuniverses



Aboriginal: Aboriginal Identity

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to those persons who reported identifying with at least one Aboriginal group, i.e. North American Indian, Métis or Inuit (Eskimo), and/or those who reported being a Treaty Indian or a Registered Indian as defined by the *Indian Act* of Canada and/or who were members of an Indian Band or First Nation. In 1991 and previous censuses, Aboriginal persons were determined using the ethnic origin question (ancestry). The 1996 Census included a question on the individual's own perception of his/her Aboriginal identity. The 2001 Census question is the same as the one used in 1996.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 18, 20 and 21

Responses: North American Indian response only
 Métis response only
 Inuit response only
 Multiple Aboriginal responses
 Registered Indian or Treaty Indian without Aboriginal response(s)
 Member of an Indian Band/First Nation

Remarks: The concept of Aboriginal identity was first used in the 1991 Aboriginal Peoples Survey (APS) and differs slightly from the concept used in the 1996 Census. The APS question asked "With which Aboriginal group do **you** identify?", while the census question asks "Is this person an Aboriginal person, that is, a North American Indian, Métis or Inuit (Eskimo)?" Despite these wording differences, the questions yield comparable results, as shown in the 1993 National Census Test.

Caution should be exercised in analyzing trends for Aboriginal peoples based on previous census data. Over time, patterns in Aboriginal self-identification have changed. In recent years, a growing number of people who had not previously identified with an Aboriginal group are now doing so. Changes in Aboriginal participation in the census over time also result in comparability issues.

There are different ways to define the Aboriginal population in Canada. The 2001 Census also provides information on persons who reported at least one Aboriginal group to the ethnic origin question. Depending on the application, data on either identity or ethnic origin/ancestry may be appropriate for defining the Aboriginal population. (See Aboriginal Origin.)

Aboriginal: Aboriginal Origin**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to those persons who reported at least one Aboriginal origin to the ethnic origin question (North American Indian, Métis or Inuit). Ethnic origin refers to the ethnic or cultural group(s) to which the respondent's ancestors belong. See Ethnic Origin.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 17

Responses: Respondents were asked to specify as many groups as applicable. Four write-in spaces were provided.

Remarks: In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents:

For persons with Aboriginal ancestors, report a specific group. For example, report "Cree", "Micmac", "Ojibway", "North American Indian", "Métis". Do **not** report "Indian".

Comparability of the ethnic origin data from the 2001 Census with previous censuses has been affected by several factors, including changes in the question format, wording, examples, instructions and data processing, as well as by the social environment at the time of the census. Changes in Aboriginal participation in the census over time also result in comparability issues.

There are different ways to define the Aboriginal population in Canada. The 2001 Census also provides information on persons who self-identified with an Aboriginal group. Depending on the application, data on either identity or ethnic origin/ancestry may be appropriate for defining the Aboriginal population. (See Aboriginal Identity.)

Aboriginal: Member of an Indian Band or First Nation

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to those persons who reported being a member of an Indian Band or a First Nation of Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 20

Responses: There are approximately 630 different Indian Bands in Canada. Selected groupings of Indian Bands will be published. The unpublished information will be available upon special request, subject to confidentiality and data quality constraints.

Remarks: In 1991, Band membership was a subcomponent of Question 16 on Registered Indians. In the first part of this question, respondents were asked about registration status, while the second part of the question dealt with Band membership. In 1996, one direct question was developed to collect data on Band/First Nation membership. The 2001 Census used the same question as in 1996.

Many Indian Bands have elected to call themselves a First Nation and have changed their Band name to reflect this. Also, with the 1985 amendment to the *Indian Act* of Canada (Bill C-31), many Indian Bands exercised the right to establish their own membership code, whereby it was not always necessary for a Band member to be a Registered Indian according to the *Indian Act*.

Aboriginal: Registered or Treaty Indian

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to those persons who reported they were registered under the *Indian Act* of Canada. Treaty Indians are persons who are registered under the *Indian Act* and can prove descent from a Band that signed a treaty. Although there was a question in the 1991 Census on registration status, the layout of the 1996 question was somewhat different. In 1991, registration status was a subcomponent of Question 16 on Registered Indians. In the first part of the question, respondents were asked about their registration status, while the second part of the question dealt with Band membership. In 1996, one direct question was developed to collect data on registration or treaty status.

The wording of the 1996 question differed slightly from the one in previous years. Prior to 1996, the term “treaty” was excluded from the question. It was added in 1996 at the request of individuals from the Western provinces, where the term is more widely used.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 21

Responses: Treaty or Registered Indian, under the *Indian Act*; Not a Treaty or Registered Indian, under the *Indian Act*

Remarks: The following instructions were provided to respondents:

Mark **Yes** for persons who:

- are registered as Indians under the *Indian Act*;
- are Treaty Indians, **only** if they are registered as Indians under the *Indian Act*;
- have become registered as Indians since June 1985 when **Bill C-31** changed the *Indian Act*.

All other persons should mark **No**, including persons who may be entitled to register under provisions of the *Indian Act*, but for some reason have not.

Agriculture: Census Farm

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a farm, ranch or other agricultural operation which produces at least one of the following products intended for sale: crops, livestock, poultry, animal products, greenhouse or nursery products, Christmas trees, mushrooms, sod, honey and maple syrup products.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,* 1981,* 1976,** 1971,*** 1966,*** 1961***

Reported for: All farms

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * For the 1981 and 1986 Censuses, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding with sales of agricultural products of \$250 or more during the past 12 months. Agricultural holdings with anticipated sales of \$250 or more were also included.

** For the 1976 Census, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of \$1,200 or more during the year 1975. The basic unit for which a questionnaire was collected was termed an agricultural holding. This term was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of \$50 or more during the 12-month period prior to the census.

*** Prior to the 1976 Census, a census farm was defined as a farm, ranch or other agricultural holding of one acre or more with sales of agricultural products of \$50 or more during the 12-month period prior to the census.

Agriculture: Farm Operator

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to those persons responsible for the day-to-day management decisions made in the operation of the census farm.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,* 1981,* 1976,* 1971,* 1966,* 1961*

Reported for: Total population

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 1, 2 and 3 of Form 6, Census of Agriculture Questionnaire

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * Prior to the 1991 Census, the farm operator referred to only one person who was responsible for the day-to-day decisions made in the operation of an agricultural holding. Because only one operator was listed for each census farm, the number of operators was the same as the number of census farms.

Agriculture: Rural Farm Population

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to all persons living in **rural areas** who are members of the households of **farm operators** living on their **census farms** for any length of time during the 12-month period prior to the census.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,* 1981,* 1976,** 1971,** 1966,** 1961**

Reported for: Rural population

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Not applicable

- Remarks:**
- * Prior to 1991, only one farm operator was reported per census farm. Since 1991, up to three farm operators could be reported per census farm. Because of this change, the rural farm population count now includes all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the households of the first, second and third operators; before 1991, the rural farm population count included all persons living in rural areas on a census farm and in the household of the first operator. It should be noted that most of the second and third operators (usually a spouse or a child) of census farms reside in the same household as the first operator and would most likely have been included in the rural farm population under the previous method of reporting.
 - ** Prior to the 1981 Census, the rural farm population was defined as all persons living in rural areas in **dwelling**s situated on census farms.

Citizenship

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the legal citizenship status of the respondent. Persons who are citizens of more than one country were instructed to provide the name of the other country(ies).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 10

Responses: Canada, by birth; Canada, by naturalization; Other country – Specify

A write-in space for country of citizenship (other than Canada) was provided. See Appendix K for the list of countries of citizenship collected in the 2001 Census.

Remarks: Canadian citizens were asked to distinguish between Canadian citizenship by birth and Canadian citizenship by naturalization. Persons who were born outside Canada and who are Canadian citizens by birth were requested to report “Canada, by birth”.

In 2001, as in 1996, a space was provided for a write-in response, as well as for the mark-in responses of “Canada, by birth” and “Canada, by naturalization”. Respondents could write in a country of citizenship other than Canada. Multiple responses to the citizenship question were also accepted.

In the 1971 Census, respondents were asked to indicate specific countries of citizenship. In 1981, 1986 and 1991, the format of the question was changed. For those censuses, citizenship information for specific countries is available, but only for respondents who indicated the same country for their citizenship and their place of birth.

Data for the 2001 Census, as in 1996, will not be published for all countries of citizenship and dual citizenship. Unpublished data relating to persons who indicated dual citizenship are available upon special request, subject to restrictions imposed to ensure confidentiality.

For further information on this population, refer to Figure 5B.

Demography: Age

Modified on February 19, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the age at last birthday (as of the census reference date, May 15, 2001). This variable is derived from date of birth.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 3

Responses: Range of values: single years 0 to 121

Remarks: In 1966 and 1961, respondents were asked to state their age in completed years as of their last birthday before the census date.

Statistics Canada uses a Statistical Analysis System (SAS) to calculate the median age. The SAS employs a linear interpolation method with which the mid-point of the age distribution is determined along with the frequency for each age. The result of the calculation is a real number. Take for example a result of 37.7. In this example, the whole number (37) represents the age range within which the middle value falls. The decimal (.7) represents the relative location of the actual mid-point of the distribution among the records having the same value; it indicates that 70% of records with the value 37 fall to the left of the middle value.

For more information, see Date of Birth.

Demography: Common-law Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to two people of the opposite sex or of the same sex who live together as a couple, but who are not legally married to each other.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 5

Responses: Yes; No

Remarks: In 1986 and 1981, the common-law status was derived based on the relationship to Person 1 question. The common-law status was not measured in censuses prior to 1981.

Data for persons in common-law unions, classified by legal marital status, are available for 1991, 1996 and 2001. In 1986 and 1981, such persons were included among the "married" population. Historical comparability of the marital status variable can be maintained with the 1991, 1996 and 2001 data by including persons in common-law unions with the "married and common-law" population. See Marital Status.

Demography: Date of Birth

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the day, month and year of birth, collected for the purpose of determining the person's age as of the census reference date. Persons who were unable to give the exact date of birth were asked to give the best possible estimate.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976,* 1971*

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 3

Responses: January 1, 1880 to May 14, 2001

Remarks: In 1966 and 1961, respondents were asked to state their age in completed years as of their last birthday before the census date. In 1961, published data for single years of age were graduated (or smoothed) within each five-year age group to counteract the tendency towards "heaping" at certain specific ages. In 1966, this was not done, and the published tables represent the date as reported.

In 1991, 1986 and 1981, the date of birth components (i.e. day, month and year) were not available. In 1996, all components are available.

* In 1976 and 1971, the question on date of birth was answered in groups of months: January-May, June-December.

Demography: Legal Marital Status

Modified on May 31, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

A person's conjugal status under the law (e.g. single, married, widowed). **Legal marital status** data are derived from the responses to Question 4 (Marital Status) on the census questionnaires.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the legal conjugal status of a person.

The various responses are defined as follows:

Never legally married (single)

Persons who have never married (including all persons less than 15 years of age) and persons whose marriage has been annulled and who have not remarried.

Legally married (and not separated)*

Persons whose husband or wife is living, unless the couple is separated or a divorce has been obtained.

Separated, but still legally married

Persons currently married, but who are no longer living with their spouse (for any reason other than illness or work) and have not obtained a divorce.

Divorced

Persons who have obtained a legal divorce and who have not remarried.

Widowed

Persons who have lost their spouse through death and who have not remarried.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 4

Responses: Never legally married (single); Legally married (and not separated); Separated, but still legally married; Divorced; Widowed

Remarks: * In 2001 and 1996, Aboriginal people married according to traditional customs were instructed to report themselves as legally married.

Demography: Marital Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

A person's de facto conjugal status. **Marital status** data are derived from the responses to Question 4 (Marital Status) and Question 5 (Common-law) in the census questionnaires. For example, a person who, in Question 4, reported being "widowed" and in Question 5 reported living with another person as a couple, but not being married to that person, will be counted as married.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the conjugal status of a person.

The various responses are defined as follows:

Married and common-law*

Persons currently married whose husband or wife is living, unless the couple is separated or divorced, and persons living common-law.

Separated, but still legally married

Persons currently married, but who are no longer living with their spouse (for any reason other than illness or work) and have not obtained a divorce. Persons who are separated but who live with a common-law partner are not included in this category.

Divorced

Persons who have obtained a legal divorce and who have not remarried. Persons who are divorced but who live with a common-law partner are not included in this category.

Widowed

Persons who have lost their spouse through death and who have not remarried. Persons who are widowed but who live with a common-law partner are not included in this category.

Never legally married (single)**

Persons who have never married (including all persons less than 15 years of age) and persons whose marriage has been annulled and who have not remarried. Persons who are single and live with a common-law partner are not included in this category.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966,*** 1961***

Reported for: Total population

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 4 and 5

Responses: Married and common-law; Separated, but still legally married; Divorced; Widowed; Never legally married (single)

- Remarks:**
- * In 1996, Aboriginal people married according to traditional customs were instructed to report themselves as legally married. In 2001, same-sex partners living common-law are included in this category.
 - ** In 2001, this category was reordered from the last position to the first in the choice of responses.
 - *** "Separated" persons were included with married persons in 1966 and 1961.

Demography: Sex

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the gender of the respondent.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 2

Responses: Male; Female

Remarks: Since a person's first name is not always a sufficient indication of the gender (e.g. Jean, Leslie, Francis), respondents were required to specify "Male" or "Female".

Disability

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to difficulties with daily activities and the reduction in the amount or kind of activities due to physical or mental conditions or health problems.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), * 1991 (1/5 sample), * 1986 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 7 and 8

Responses:	Question 7 – Difficulties with daily activities:	Yes, sometimes Yes, often No
	Question 8 – Reduction in activities:	
	(a) at home:	Yes, sometimes Yes, often No
	(b) at work or at school:	Yes, sometimes Yes, often No Not applicable
	(c) in other activities:	Yes, sometimes Yes, often No

Remarks: In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents:

These questions refer to conditions or health problems that have lasted or are expected to last **six months or more**.

For young children, include only those conditions or problems that have been diagnosed by a professional.

The Participation and Activity Limitation Survey (PALS), formerly known as the Health and Activity Limitation Survey (HALS), is designed to collect data on persons with disabilities. The PALS is a postcensal survey and will be conducted following the 2001 Census. Its survey frame is provided by the answers to two filter questions on the census questionnaire. The HALS was first conducted after the 1986 Census, and repeated after the 1991 Census. It was not conducted after the 1996 Census due to budget constraints.

* The disability question was added to the census for the first time in 1986, to provide a sample frame to enable the conduct of the postcensal Health and Activity Limitation Survey (HALS). The same filter question was used in 1986, 1991 and 1996; however, in 1991 and 1996, the question was split and presented as two questions. In 1996, Question 7 was a three-part question which asked if the person was limited in activities at home, at school or at work, or in other activities. Question 8 asked if the person had any long-term disabilities or handicaps.

New disability questions were developed for the 2001 Census. Results from the 1998 National Census Test showed that the new questions allow for the selection of a larger portion of the target population. Both the wording of the new questions and of the response categories are different from the disability questions used in the previous censuses. The new questions ask about difficulty in daily activities, and activity reduction covering the different components of home, work/school, and other activities. The “yes” answer category was split into two possibilities: “Yes, sometimes” and “Yes, often”.

The PALS will be the primary source for disability data in 2001, since it provides a better identification of the population, and more detailed information on its characteristics. Disability data from the 2001 Census will be available upon special request only. The 2001 Census disability data have minimum edits and should be used with caution.

Ethnic Origin

Modified on November 4, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the ethnic or cultural group(s) to which the respondent's ancestors belong.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 17

Responses: Respondents were asked to specify as many groups as applicable. Four write-in spaces were provided. See Appendix C for a comparison of these groups in 2001, 1996, and 1991.

Remarks: In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents:

This question refers to the ethnic or cultural origins of a person's ancestors.

An ancestor is someone from whom a person is descended and is usually more distant than a grandparent. Other than Aboriginal persons, most people can trace their origins to their ancestors who first came to this continent. Ancestry should not be confused with citizenship or nationality.

For all persons, report the specific ethnic or cultural group or groups to which their ancestors belonged, not the language they spoke. For example, report "Haitian" rather than "French", or "Austrian" rather than "German".

For persons of East Indian or South Asian origins, report a specific group. Do **not** report "Indian". For example, report "East Indian from India", "East Indian from Guyana", or indicate the specific group, such as "Punjabi" or "Tamil".

For persons with Aboriginal ancestors, report a specific group. For example, report "Cree", "Micmac", "Ojibway", "North American Indian", "Métis". Do **not** report "Indian".

In 2001, 1996 and 1991, the respondent was asked "To which ethnic or cultural group(s) did this person's **ancestors** belong?" However, in 1996, the format of the ethnic origin question was changed. The 1991 Census question included 15 mark-in categories and two write-in spaces. The 2001 and 1996 questions did not include any mark-in categories. Respondents were required to write in their ethnic origin(s) in four write-in spaces.

In 2001, the ethnic origin question gave 25 examples: Canadian, French, English, Chinese, Italian, German, Scottish, Irish, Cree, Micmac, Métis, Inuit (Eskimo), East Indian, Ukrainian, Dutch, Polish, Portuguese, Filipino, Jewish, Greek, Jamaican, Vietnamese, Lebanese, Chilean and Somali. The first 21 examples were based on the frequency (largest number) of single ethnic origin counts from the 1996 Census. In addition, terms which tended to be confusing to some respondents were replaced with more specific groups. For instance, "North American Indian" was replaced by "Cree" and "Micmac". The last four examples were added to ensure that at least one group from each ethnic category and geographic area was included on the questionnaire. Vietnamese, Lebanese, Chilean and Somali were added to the list of examples because they were the largest groups among those with South East Asian, Arab, Latin American and African origins in 1996.

The comparability of ethnic origin data has been affected by several factors, including changes in the question wording, format, examples, instructions and data processing, as well as by the social environment at the time of the census.

In 1996 and 2001, the comparability with previous census data is affected by the change in format and the examples provided on the questionnaire. The change in format to an open-ended question in 1996 likely affected response patterns, especially for groups who had been included as mark-in response categories in 1991. In addition, the presence of examples such as "Canadian", which were not included in previous censuses, may also affect response patterns.

Since 1981, changes in question format and examples may have particularly affected the comparability of data for "Black" and "North American Indian". In 1981, "Black" was not listed on the census questionnaire, though respondents could specify "Black ethnic origin" in the write-in box. In light of the recommendations of the Special Committee on the Participation of Visible Minorities in Canadian Society in the report *Equality Now!* and of the Abella Commission of Inquiry on Equality in Employment, the mark-in response "Black" was added to the 1986 Census questionnaire and included again in 1991. In 1996, "Black" was replaced by the examples "Haitian" and "Jamaican" in the ethnic origin question. "Black" was, however, listed as a separate mark-in category in the population group question in 1996 (see Population Group).

In the 1981 Census, respondents with Aboriginal origins were to mark in status or registered Indian, non-status Indian, Métis, or Inuit. In 1986 and 1991, Aboriginal respondents were asked to indicate North American Indian, Métis, or Inuit by checking the appropriate mark-in circles. In 2001 and 1996, "Métis" and "Inuit" again appeared in the ethnic origin question, while "North American Indian" was replaced by the examples "Cree" and "Micmac".

Since 1986, an instruction to specify as many ethnic groups as applicable has been included in the ethnic origin question. This has affected data comparability for all ethnic groups and categories because of the increase in multiple responses. Prior to the 1981 Census, only the respondent's paternal ancestry was to be reported. If multiple ethnic origins were provided, only one origin was captured, resulting in one ethnic origin per respondent. In 1981, multiple origins were allowed and a write-in space was added to the question, although respondents were not instructed to provide more than one origin. In 1986, respondents were permitted to write in up to three origins other than those shown in the mark-in circles. In 1991, they were permitted to write in up to two additional origins. In 2001 and 1996, four write-in boxes were provided on the questionnaire, and up to six ethnic origins were captured.

As a result of changing immigration patterns and increasing diversity in Canada, modifications are made to the specific ethnic groups and categories captured each census. For a comparison of ethnic groups in 2001, 1996 and 1991, please see Appendix C.

In addition to the factors discussed above, the measurement of ethnicity is affected by changes in the social environment in which the questions are asked, and changes in the respondent's understanding or views about the topic. Awareness of family background or length of time since immigration can affect responses to the ethnic origin question, as can confusion with other concepts such as citizenship, nationality, language or cultural identity. Ethnic origin response patterns may be influenced by both social and personal considerations. The choices that respondents make can affect ethnic origin counts and have an impact on the comparability of data between censuses.

Not all combinations of multiple ethnic origins available from the 2001 Census will be published. Unpublished data will be available upon special request, subject to confidentiality and data quality constraints.

Figure 2. British, French and European Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 2A. Northern European Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 2B. Southern European Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 2C. Eastern European Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 3. Asian, Arab, African and Pacific Islands Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 3A. Maghrebi Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 3B. Indo-Chinese Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Figure 4. Latin American, Caribbean, Aboriginal and Other Origins

Modified on November 4, 2002

This figure will not be produced for the 2001 Census. Refer to Appendix C for the 2001 Census classification of ethnic origins.

Immigration: Age at Immigration

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the age at which the respondent first obtained landed immigrant status. A landed immigrant is a person who has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Persons who are, or have been, landed immigrants, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 3 and 12

Responses: Single years of age from 0 to 121

Remarks: Age at immigration is calculated using the year of immigration, the year of birth, and an estimated month of immigration.

Respondents who answered “Yes” to the landed immigrant status question (Question 11) were to answer the year of immigration question (Question 12) by reporting the year in which they first obtained landed immigrant status.

People who answered “No” to Question 11 will **not** have gone through the immigration process and, thus, do not have a year of immigration or an age at immigration. These people are Canadian citizens by birth or non-permanent residents (people from another country who have an employment authorization, a student authorization, or a Minister’s permit, or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living here with them).

Age at immigration data are available since the 1981 Census. Censuses taken earlier than in 1981 had only periods of immigration, i.e. ranges of years, which made it impossible to calculate the age at immigration.

For further information on the immigrant population, refer to Figure 5A.

Immigration: Immigrant Population

Modified on March 28, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

People who are or who have ever been landed immigrants. Landed immigrants are people who have been permitted by immigration authorities to live in Canada permanently; some will have lived in Canada for a number of years, while others have arrived recently.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to people who are, or have been, landed immigrants in Canada. A landed immigrant is a person who has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities. Some immigrants have resided in Canada for a number of years, while others have arrived recently. Most immigrants are born outside Canada, but a small number were born in Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 11

Responses: No; Yes

Remarks: Immigrants were asked to answer “Yes” to this question.

The definition of the immigrant population was slightly different in the 1991, 1996 and 2001 Censuses, compared with the 1981 and 1986 Censuses. In the 1981 and 1986 Censuses, the immigrant population was defined as people who were not Canadian citizens by birth. Since the 1991 Census, the landed immigrant status question (Question 11) was used to identify the immigrant population, because the population included in the census was expanded to include non-permanent residents. This change should not affect the comparability of immigration data collected.

Children born in Canada to immigrant parents are considered to be non-immigrants in the census.

For further information on the population, refer to Figures 5A and 5B.

Immigration: Landed Immigrant Status**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to people who have been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 11

Responses: No; Yes

Remarks: The landed immigrant status question, along with the citizenship question, is used to identify the non-immigrant population (Canadian citizens by birth), the immigrant population (landed immigrants) and the non-permanent resident population (people from another country who have an employment authorization, a student authorization, or a Minister's permit, or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living here with them).

Respondents who are Canadian citizens by naturalization, but who have been landed immigrants to Canada, were to mark "Yes" to Question 11, and are included in the immigrant population in census data. In addition, respondents who were landed immigrants and who had not obtained Canadian citizenship (by naturalization) were also to mark "Yes" to Question 11, and are included in the immigrant population in census data.

Respondents who are Canadian citizens by birth and non-permanent residents were to mark "No" to the landed immigrant status question (Question 11).

Immigration: Non-immigrant Population

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to people who are Canadian citizens by birth. Although most were born in Canada, a small number of them were born outside Canada to Canadian parents.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 10

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Non-immigrants are defined using the citizenship question (Question 10). Respondents who are Canadians by birth are considered non-immigrants.

For further information on the non-immigrant population, see Figures 5A and 5B.

Immigration: Non-permanent Resident**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to people from another country who had an employment authorization, a student authorization, or a Minister's permit, or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living here with them.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 10 and 11

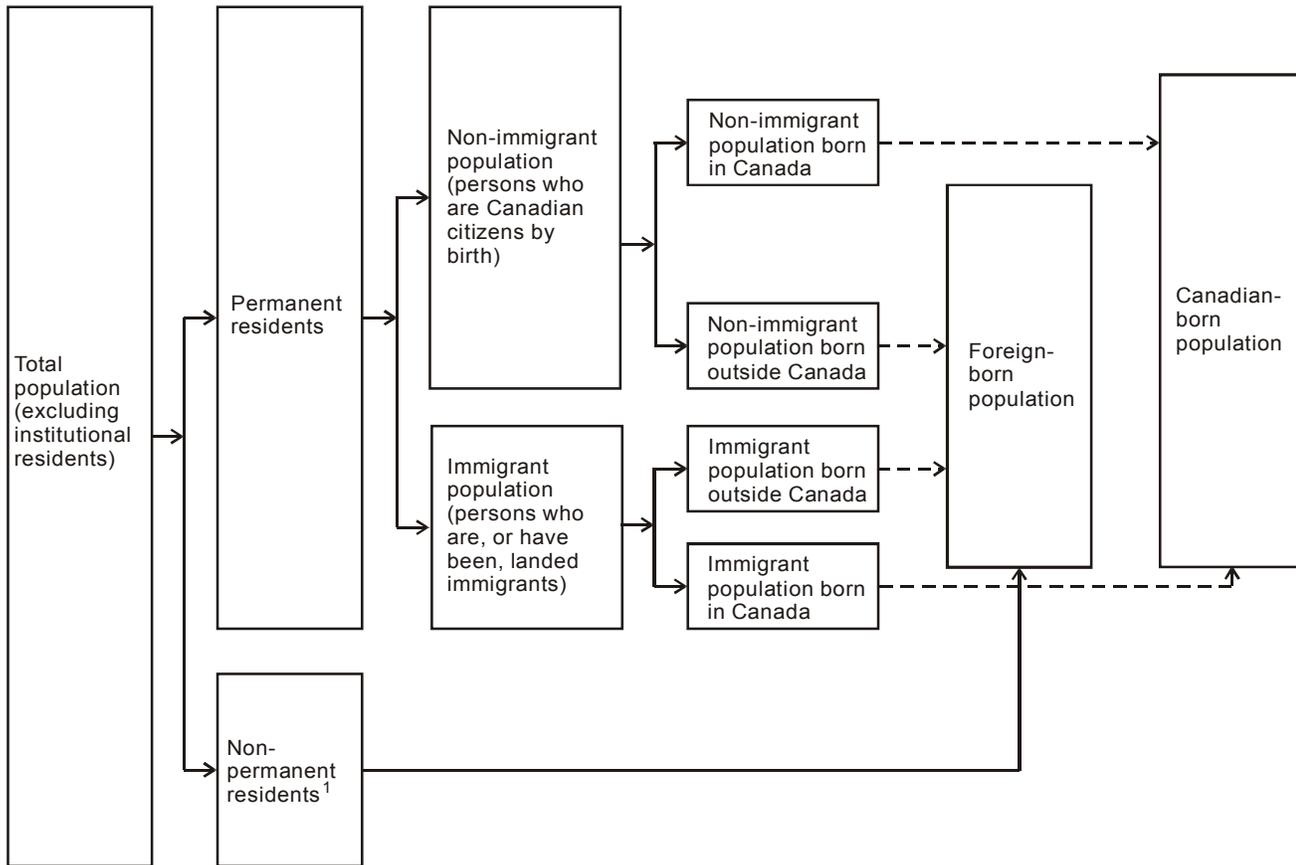
Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This population is determined based on answers to the citizenship and landed immigrant status questions. Non-permanent residents are identified as persons who are not Canadian citizens by birth (Question 10) and who answered "No" to the landed immigrant status question (Question 11).

Since 1991, the census includes non-permanent residents. Previous censuses excluded persons holding authorizations, visas and permits, as well as refugee claimants, except the 1941 Census, when persons who did not plan to live permanently in Canada were included.

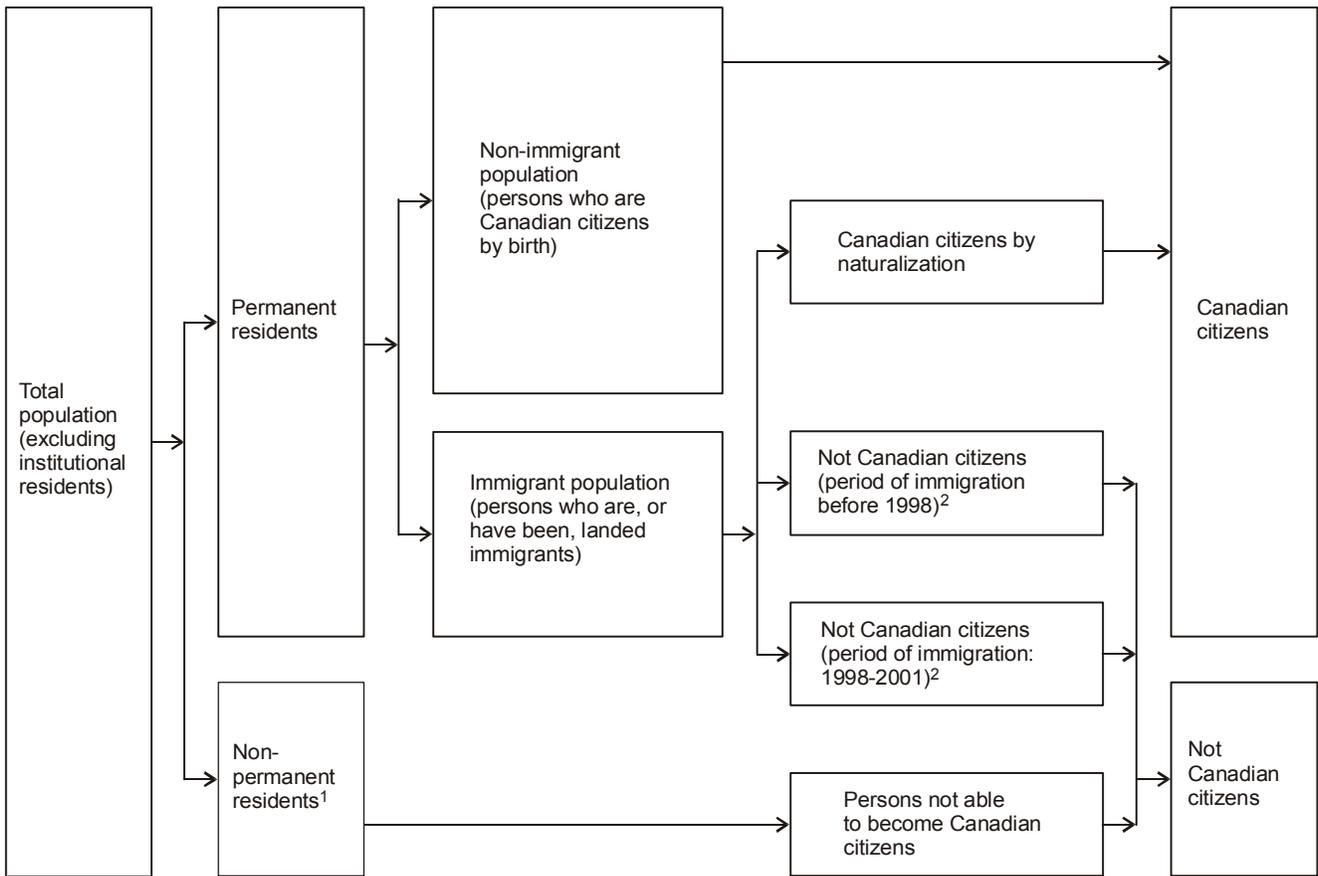
For further information on the non-permanent residents, refer to Figures 5A and 5B.

Figure 5A. Permanent and Non-permanent Residents: Place of Birth



¹ People who held a student authorization, an employment authorization, a Minister's permit or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living with them.

Figure 5B. Permanent and Non-permanent Residents: Citizenship



¹ People who held a student authorization, an employment authorization, a Minister's permit or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living with them.

² Landed immigrants must reside in Canada for a minimum of three years before they have the right to apply for Canadian citizenship.

Immigration: *Period of Immigration*

Modified on March 28, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Group of years, for example, 1996-2001, during which the immigrant was given permission to live in Canada for the first time by immigration authorities.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to ranges of years based on the year of immigration question. Year of immigration refers to the year in which landed immigrant status was first obtained.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961

Reported for: Persons who are, or have been, landed immigrants, excluding institutional residents.

A landed immigrant is a person who has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 12

Responses: Ranges of years as desired for the years 1880 to 2001

Remarks: Respondents who answered “Yes” to the landed immigrant status question (Question 11) were to answer the year of immigration question (Question 12) by reporting the year in which they first obtained landed immigrant status.

Respondents who answered “No” to Question 11 will not have gone through the immigration process and, thus, do not have a year when their landed immigrant status was obtained. These people include Canadian citizens by birth and non-permanent residents (people from another country who have an employment authorization, a student authorization, a Minister’s permit or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living here with them).

For further information on the immigrant population, refer to Figure 5A.

Immigration: Year of Immigration**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the year in which landed immigrant status was first obtained. A landed immigrant is a person who has been granted the right to live in Canada permanently by immigration authorities.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Persons who are, or have been, landed immigrants, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 12

Responses: Single years from 1880 to 2001 (includes January to Census Day, May 15, 2001)

Remarks: Respondents who answered “Yes” to the landed immigrant status question (Question 11) were to answer the year of immigration question (Question 12) by reporting the year in which they first obtained landed immigrant status. People who immigrated to Canada more than once were to report the year in which they **first** received landed immigrant status.

Respondents who answered “No” to Question 11 will not have gone through the immigration process, and thus, do not have a year when landed immigrant status was obtained. These people include Canadian citizens by birth and non-permanent residents (people from another country who have an employment authorization, a student authorization, or a Minister’s permit, or who were refugee claimants at the time of the census, and family members living here with them).

Year of immigration data are available since the 1981 Census. The 1971 Census and earlier censuses had only periods of immigration, i.e. ranges of years.

For further information on the immigrant population, refer to Figures 5A and 5B.

Income: Average Income of Individuals

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount obtained by adding up the total income of all individuals and dividing this sum by the number of individuals with income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Average income of individuals refers to the weighted mean total income of individuals 15 years of age and over who reported income for 2000. Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of individuals (e.g. males 45 to 54 years of age) by the number of individuals **with income** in that group.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with income, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: This statistic is not resident on the database. It is calculated for any group as follows:

$$\bar{Y} = \frac{\sum(Y_i W_i)}{\sum W_i}, \text{ where}$$

\bar{Y} = Average income of the individuals 15 years of age and over with income in the group

Y_i = Actual income of each individual 15 years of age and over in the group

W_i = Weight of each individual 15 years of age and over with income in the group

Average and median incomes and standard errors for average income of individuals will be calculated for those individuals who are at least 15 years of age and who have an income (positive or negative). **For all other universes (e.g. census families or private households), these statistics will be calculated over all units, whether or not they reported any income.**

Income: *Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to benefits received during calendar year 2000 from the Canada or Quebec Pension Plan (e.g. retirement pensions, survivors' benefits and disability pensions). Does not include lump-sum death benefits.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (e)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: In 1981 and 1971, this source was combined with the Old Age Security (OAS) pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS). See Income: Old Age Security Pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement.

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: *Benefits from Employment Insurance***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to total Employment Insurance benefits received during calendar year 2000, before income tax deductions. It includes benefits for unemployment, sickness, maternity, paternity, adoption, work sharing, retraining and benefits to self-employed fishers received under the federal Employment Insurance Program.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (f)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: The 1971 and 1961 Censuses included Unemployment Insurance benefits as a component of "Other Government Income".

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Canada Child Tax Benefits

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to payments received under the Canada Child Tax Benefit program during calendar year 2000 by eligible parents with dependent children under 18 years of age. No information on these benefits was collected from respondents. Instead, these were calculated and assigned, where applicable, to one of the parents in the census family on the basis of information on children in the family and the family income. Included with the Canada Child Tax Benefit is the National Child Benefit Supplement (NCBS) for low-income families with children. The NCBS is the federal contribution to the National Child Benefit (NCB), a joint initiative of federal, provincial and territorial governments. Also included under this program are child benefits and earned income supplements provided by certain provinces and territories.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

* In the 1986 and 1991 Censuses, there were two separate allowances for children (family allowances and child tax credit). These have since been amalgamated into a single Child Tax Benefit.

Income: Composition of Income**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The composition of the total income of a population group or a geographic area refers to the relative share of each income source or group of sources, expressed as a percentage of the aggregate total income of that group or area.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

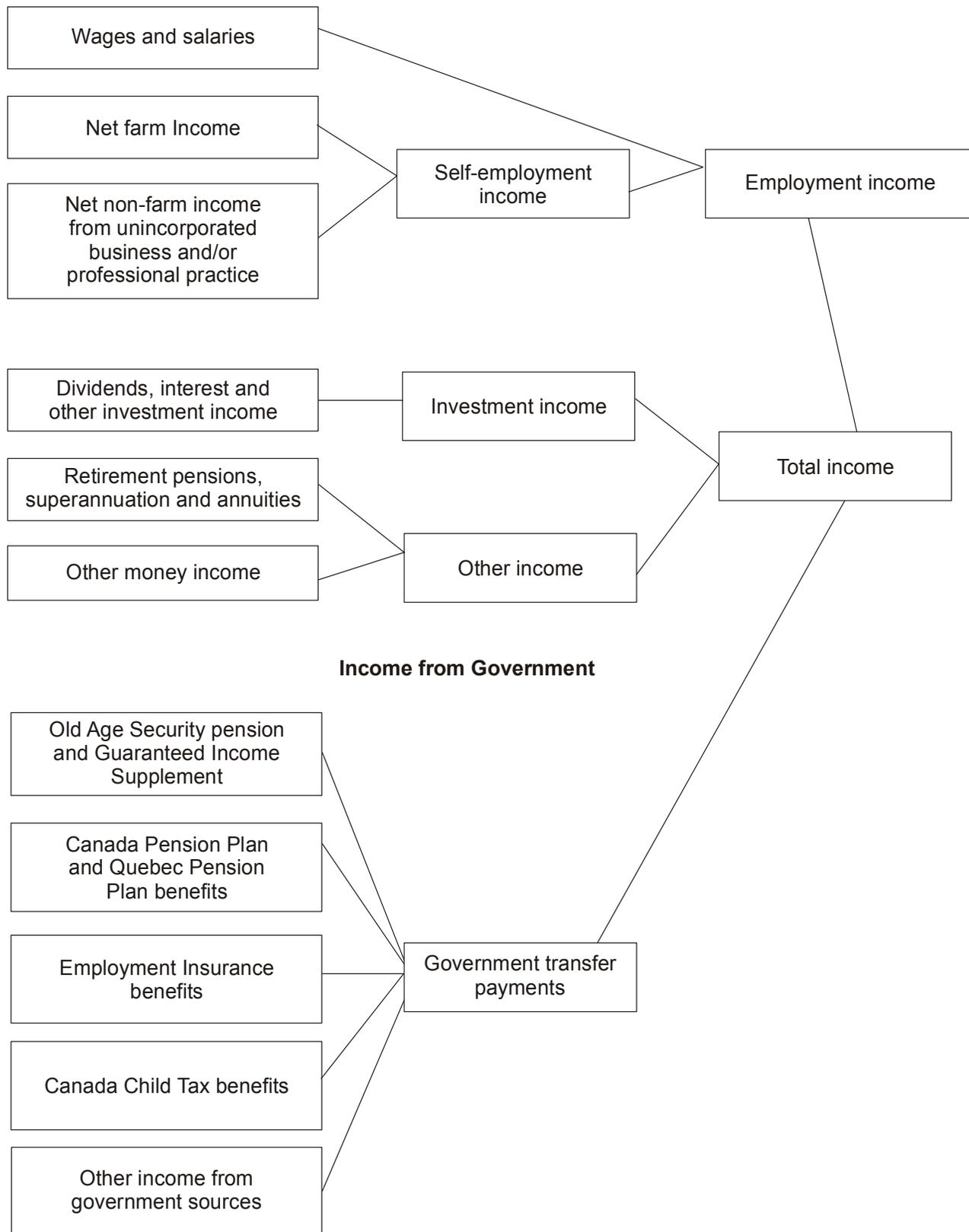
Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with income, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: See "Remarks".

Remarks: The components of total income and the combinations for which percentages may be published are shown in Figure 6. Percentages are derived from aggregate data prior to rounding.

Figure 6. Components of Income in 2000



Income: Constant Dollars Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Income data for one or more previous years, calculated to reflect the increase or decrease in the cost of living over the intervening period.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the presentation of income statistics from two or more censuses in terms of the value of the dollar in one of those censuses.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with income, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: To convert the 1995 incomes into 2000 dollars, the 1995 values are revised upwards by the change in the Consumer Price Index between 1995 and 2000.

Income: Dividends, Interest on Bonds, Deposits and Savings Certificates, and Other Investment Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to interest received during calendar year 2000 from deposits in banks, trust companies, cooperatives, credit unions, caisses populaires, etc., as well as interest on savings certificates, bonds and debentures, and all dividends from both Canadian and foreign corporate stocks and mutual funds. Also included is other investment income from either Canadian or foreign sources, such as net rents from real estate, mortgage and loan interest received, regular income from an estate or trust fund, and interest from insurance policies.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (h)

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: In 1971 and 1961, separate information was collected on (a) interest and dividends, and (b) other investment income.

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Earner or Employment Income Recipient

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Person who earns a wage or has self-employment income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a person 15 years of age and over who received wages and salaries, net income from a non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice, and/or net farm self-employment income during calendar year 2000.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 51 (a), (b) and (c)

Responses: See "Remarks".

Remarks: The variable is not resident on the database.

Income: Earnings or Employment Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Total wages and salaries and net income from self-employment.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to total income received by persons 15 years of age and over during calendar year 2000 as wages and salaries, net income from a non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice, and/or net farm self-employment income.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 51 (a), (b) and (c)

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: See "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

See also the detailed definitions for each of the components.

Income: Government Transfer Payments

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to total income from all transfer payments received from federal, provincial or municipal governments during calendar year 2000. This variable is the sum of the amounts reported in:

- the Old Age Security pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement;
- benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance;
- Canada Child Tax benefits;
- other income from government sources.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: See the detailed definitions and "Remarks" for each of the components.

This variable can be derived for any of the above census years by summing the various government transfer payments.

Income: Major Source of Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to that component which constitutes the largest proportion of an income recipient's total income. Various combinations of income sources can be used to derive this classification. For example, at the most detailed level, the income sources are combined into five components: wages and salaries, self-employment income (farm and non-farm), government transfer payments, investment income, and other income. The absolute values for these components are compared, and the largest one is designated as the major source of income.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: See "Remarks".

Remarks: This variable is not resident on the database.

Income: Market Income**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Total income minus income from government programs, such as Old Age Security pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement, Canada or Quebec Pension Plan and Employment Insurance.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the sum of employment income (wages and salaries, net farm income and net income from a non-farm unincorporated business and/or professional practice), investment income, retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities (including those from Registered Retirement Savings Plans [RRSPs] and Registered Retirement Income Funds [RRIFs]) and other money income. It is equivalent to total income minus all government transfers, and is also referred to as income before transfers and taxes.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: See the definitions for each of the components. This variable is not resident on the database.

Income: Median Income of Individuals

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount that marks the midpoint of a distribution of individuals, with income, ranked by size of income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The median income of a specified group of income recipients is that amount which divides their income size distribution into two halves, i.e. the incomes of the first half of individuals are below the median, while those of the second half are above the median. Median income is calculated from the unrounded number of individuals (e.g. males 45 to 54 years of age) **with income** in that group.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with income, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: 1. This statistic is not resident on the database. For an income size distribution, the median is usually estimated as follows:

$$M = L_m + c_m (d / f_m), \text{ where}$$

M = Median value

L_m = Lower boundary of the income group in which

$$\frac{N}{2} = \frac{\sum W_i}{2} \text{ falls, where}$$

N = Number of (weighted) individuals 15 years of age and over with income in the category for which the distribution is being shown

W_i = Weight of each individual 15 years of age and over with income in the category

c_m = Size (range) of the median income group

d = Number of individuals 15 years of age and over necessary from the median income group to reach the middle

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{N}{2} - \sum_i^{m-1} f_i$$

f_m = Frequency or total (weighted) of individuals 15 years of age and over in the median income group

2. Average and median incomes and standard errors for average income of individuals will be calculated for those individuals who are at least 15 years of age and who have an income (positive or negative). **For all other universes (e.g. census families or private households), these statistics will be calculated over all units, whether or not they reported any income.**

Income: Net Farm Income**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Net income earned by working for oneself (self-employment) as an owner/operator of his/her farm.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to net income (gross receipts from farm sales minus depreciation and cost of operation) received during calendar year 2000 from the operation of a farm, either on the respondent's own account or in partnership. In the case of partnerships, only the respondent's share of income was reported. Included with gross receipts are cash advances received in 2000, dividends from cooperatives, rebates and farm-support payments to farmers from federal, provincial and regional agricultural programs (e.g. milk subsidies and marketing board payments) and gross insurance proceeds such as payments from the Net Income Stabilization Account (NISA). The value of income "in kind", such as agricultural products produced and consumed on the farm, is excluded.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (b)

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: See "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Net Non-farm Income from Unincorporated Business and/or Professional Practice**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Net Income earned by working for oneself (self-employment) as an owner/operator of his/her non-farm business.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to net income (gross receipts minus expenses of operation such as wages, rents and depreciation) received during calendar year 2000 from the respondent's non-farm unincorporated business or professional practice. In the case of partnerships, only the respondent's share was reported. Also included is net income from persons babysitting in their own homes, persons providing room and board to non-relatives, self-employed fishers, hunters and trappers, operators of direct distributorships (such as those selling and delivering cosmetics), as well as freelance activities of artists, writers, music teachers, hairdressers, dressmakers, etc.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (c)

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: See "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Old Age Security Pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to Old Age Security pensions and Guaranteed Income Supplements paid to persons 65 years of age and over, and to the Allowance or Allowance for the survivor paid to 60- to 64-year-old spouses of old age security recipients or widow(er)s by the federal government during the calendar year 2000.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (d)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: In 1971 and 1981, this source was combined with "Benefits from Canada/Quebec Pension Plan". See Income: Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan.

In 1961, neither the Canada/Quebec Pension Plan nor the Guaranteed Income Supplement existed. The relevant source was "Old Age Pensions and Old Age Assistance".

Provincial income supplements to seniors are included in Income: Other Income from Government Sources.

Retirement pensions to civil servants, Royal Canadian Mounted Police (RCMP) and military personnel are included in Income: Retirement Pensions, Superannuation and Annuities, Including Those from RRSPs and RRIFs.

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Other Income from Government Sources**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to all transfer payments, excluding those covered as a separate income source (Canada Child Tax Benefits, Old Age Security pensions and Guaranteed Income Supplements, Canada or Quebec Pension Plan benefits and Employment Insurance benefits) received from federal, provincial or municipal programs during the calendar year 2000. This source includes social assistance payments received by persons in need, such as mothers with dependent children, persons temporarily or permanently unable to work, elderly individuals, the blind and persons with disabilities. Included are provincial income supplement payments to seniors and provincial payments to help offset accommodation costs. Also included are other transfer payments, such as payments received from training programs sponsored by the federal and provincial governments, regular payments from provincial automobile insurance plans, veterans' pensions, war veterans' allowance, pensions to widows and dependants of veterans, and workers' compensation. Additionally, refundable provincial tax credits, the Alberta Energy Tax Refund and refunds of the Goods and Services Tax (GST), Harmonized Sales Tax (HST) or Quebec Sales Tax (QST) received in 2000 are included.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (g)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: The 1961 and 1971 Censuses included Unemployment Insurance benefits as a component of this source, while for 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001, information on these benefits was collected in a separate question.

In 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001, provincial income supplements to the elderly were included in this item, while for the earlier censuses, provincial old age assistance was included with "Government Old Age Pensions".

Amounts received as the Ontario Tax Dividend, because these are a refund of a portion of the 1999 provincial tax paid, are not included as income for 2000.

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Other Money Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to regular cash income received during calendar year 2000 and not reported in any of the other nine sources listed on the questionnaire. For example, alimony, child support, periodic support from other persons not in the household, income from abroad (excluding dividends and interest), non-refundable scholarships and bursaries, severance pay and royalties are included.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (j)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: In 1981, this variable was combined with “Retirement Pensions, Superannuation and Annuities”. In other censuses, information on these pensions was collected separately. See *Income: Retirement Pensions, Superannuation and Annuities, Including Those from RRSPs and RRIFs*.

In 2001, income from wage-loss replacement plans or income maintenance plans is included with *Income: Wages and Salaries*.

See also “Remarks” under *Income: Total Income*.

Income: Retirement Pensions, Superannuation and Annuities, Including Those from RRSPs and RRIFs

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Regular income received as a pension from a former employer, or in the form of an annuity or a Registered Retirement Income Fund (RRIF).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to all regular income received by the respondent during calendar year 2000 as the result of having been a member of a pension plan of one or more employers. It includes payments received from all annuities, including payments from a matured Registered Retirement Savings Plan (RRSP) in the form of a life annuity, a fixed-term annuity, a Registered Retirement Income Fund (RRIF) or an income-averaging annuity contract; pensions paid to widow(er)s or other relatives of deceased pensioners; pensions of retired civil servants, Armed Forces personnel and Royal Canadian Mounted

Police (RCMP) officers; annuity payments received from the Canadian Government Annuities Fund, an insurance company, etc. Does not include lump-sum death benefits, lump-sum benefits or withdrawals from a pension plan or RRSP, or refunds of overcontributions.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (i)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: In 1981, this variable was combined with "Other Money Income".

See also "Remarks" under Income: Total Income.

Income: Standard Error of Average Income

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Refers to a dollar value which indicates the precision of the estimate of average income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the estimated standard error of average income for an income size distribution. If interpreted as shown below, it serves as a rough indicator of the precision of the corresponding estimate of average income. For about 68% of the samples which could be selected from the sample frame, the difference between the sample estimate of average income and the corresponding figure based on complete enumeration would be less than one standard error. For about 95% of the possible samples, the difference would be less than two standard errors and, in about 99% of the samples, the difference would be less than approximately two and one half standard errors.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with income, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: This statistic is not resident on the database.

Income: Total Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Total of income from all sources, including employment income, income from government programs, pension income, investment income and any other money income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total money income received from the following sources during calendar year 2000 by persons 15 years of age and over:

- wages and salaries (total);
- net farm income;
- net non-farm income from unincorporated business and/or professional practice;
- Canada Child Tax Benefits;
- Old Age Security pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement;
- benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan;
- benefits from Employment Insurance;
- other income from government sources;
- dividends, interest on bonds, deposits and savings certificates, and other investment income;
- retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities, including those from RRSPs and RRIFs;
- other money income.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: Although the respondents were asked a direct question on their total income excluding Canada Child Tax Benefits, the reported total income is replaced by a derived total income which includes an assigned amount for the Canada Child Tax Benefit.

Information on total money income was collected in the 1961, 1971, 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001 Censuses. The major differences between censuses with respect to income are summarized below. For an overview, see Figure 7.

Concept

- (a) The 1961 Census did not collect data on income from farming. Therefore, this source of income was excluded from “Total Income” in that census.
- (b) The 1986 Census included, for the first time, federal Child Tax credits in “Total Money Income”. These credits and family allowances were replaced in 1996 by the federal Child Tax benefit. In 2001, this benefit is composed of the Canada Child Tax Benefit,

the National Child Benefit Supplement and child benefits and earned income supplements provided by certain provinces and territories.

- (c) In all censuses, income received by immigrants prior to their arrival in Canada was not included in "Total Income".
- (d) In all censuses, the income concept excluded gambling gains and losses, lottery prizes, money inherited during the year in a lump sum, capital gains or losses, receipts from the sale of property, income tax refunds, loan payments received, lump-sum settlements of insurance policies, rebates received on property taxes, refunds of pension contributions, as well as all income "in kind", such as free meals, living accommodations, or agricultural products produced and consumed on the farm.
- (e) In 2000, respondents may have received an Ontario Taxpayer Dividend, an Alberta Energy Tax Rebate or an amount as part of the federal government's pay equity settlement. The Ontario Taxpayer Dividend, a rebate of 1999 provincial tax, is excluded from the income concept. The Alberta Energy Tax Rebate is a non-taxable benefit paid to Alberta residents 16 years of age and over who filed a 1999 income tax return. Respondents were asked not to include this amount in their income; rather it will be calculated and assigned during processing. All amounts, received from the federal government's pay equity settlement, related to years of service prior to calendar year 2000 are excluded from the income concept.
- (f) Benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance plans are included with Wages and Salaries in 2000. In prior censuses, these amounts were included as part of Other Money Income.

Reference Period

Except for 1961, respondents were asked to report their income for the calendar year prior to the census. The 1961 Census gave the respondents the option to report their income either for the 12 months preceding the census or for the calendar year 1960.

Coverage

- (a) The 1961 Census excluded all farm households, all collective households and all households in the Northwest Territories.
- (b) Only the 1971 Census collected information on income from institutional residents.
- (c) In 1991, 1996 and 2001, income information was collected from non-permanent residents. (See the definition for Immigration: Non-permanent Population.)

Methodology

- (a) In 1971, income data were collected from a 1/3 sample of households. In all other censuses, the sample size was 1/5. (In certain selected areas, sampling was replaced by 100% enumeration.)
- (b) The data were collected by canvassers in 1961. In subsequent censuses, the main collection method used was self-enumeration.

- (c) Because of inconsistent reporting of income in Hutterite colonies, all individuals in them were assigned zero income in the 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001 Censuses.
- (d) Various censuses differed in respect of combination of income sources. For details, see Figure 7.
- (e) No information was collected from respondents on Family Allowances and Child Tax credits in 1985 and 1990, Child Tax benefits in 1995 or Canada Child Tax Benefits in 2000. These were calculated on the basis of other information on families and assigned, where applicable, to appropriate individuals.

Income: Wages and Salaries

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Income earned by working for a wage, a salary, tips or commissions.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to gross wages and salaries before deductions for such items as income tax, pensions and Employment Insurance. Included in this source are military pay and allowances, tips, commissions and cash bonuses, benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance insurance plans, as well as all types of casual earnings during calendar year 2000. The value of taxable allowances and benefits provided by employers, such as free lodging and free automobile use, is excluded.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 51 (a)

Responses: Dollar value or nil

Remarks: Benefits from wage-loss replacement plans or income-maintenance insurance plans were included under “Other Money Income” in prior censuses.

See “Remarks” under Income: Total Income.

Figure 7. Income Content and Coverage in the Censuses of Canada

Sources	Censuses						
	1961	1971	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Wages and salaries	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Net non-farm self-employment income	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Net farm self-employment income	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Family Allowances	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	⁷	⁷
Federal Child Tax credits	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	⁷	⁷
Federal Child Tax Benefits	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Old Age Security (OAS) pension and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)	–	²	³	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan (CPP/QPP)	–	²	³	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Benefits from Employment Insurance	¹	¹	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other income from government sources	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Interest and dividends	Yes	Yes	⁴	⁴	⁴	⁴	⁴
Other investment income	Yes	Yes	⁴	⁴	⁴	⁴	⁴
Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities	Yes	Yes	⁵	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Other money income	Yes	Yes	⁵	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<u>Reference Period</u>	June 1960– May 1961	1970	1980	1985	1990	1995	2000
<u>Sample Size</u>	20%	33%	20%	20%	20%	20%	20%
<u>Coverage</u>	Farms and N.W.T. excluded	All	Institutional population excluded	Institutional population excluded	Institutional population excluded ⁶	Institutional population excluded ⁶	Institutional population excluded ⁶

¹ Included in “Other income from government sources”.

² One question was asked to include OAS, CPP/QPP and provincial old age assistance.

³ The question included OAS/GIS and CPP/QPP benefits, but provincial income supplements were included in “Other income from government sources”.

⁴ One question covering all investment income.

⁵ One question covering both “Retirement pensions, superannuation and annuities” and “Other money income”.

⁶ Includes non-permanent residents 15 years of age and over.

⁷ Federal Child Tax benefits replace Family Allowances and federal Child Tax credits. For 2000, this includes the Canada Child Tax Benefit, the National Child Tax Benefit Supplement and child benefits and earned income supplements provided by certain provinces and territories.

Institutional Resident

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Person, other than a staff member and his or her family, who lives in an institution, such as a hospital, a senior citizens' home or a jail.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a resident of an “institutional” collective dwelling, other than staff members and their families.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 6

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: “Institutional” collective dwellings are general hospitals and hospitals with emergency, other hospitals and related institutions, nursing homes, residences for senior citizens, facilities for persons with a disability, establishments for delinquents and young offenders, establishments for children and minors, penal and correctional institutions, jails, shelters for persons lacking a fixed address, other shelters and lodging and rooming with assistance services.

In the 2001 Census, only basic data were collected for all residents of institutions (including staff members and their families): age, sex, marital status and mother tongue. Therefore, any tabulations containing other variables collected from the one-fifth sample of households will not include these persons. In the 1996, 1991, 1986 and 1981 Censuses, this applied to institutional residents only. In contrast, the 1976 and 1971 Censuses did include institutional residents in many tabulations based on sample variables.

In 1981, the term “Inmates” was used.

Journey to Work: Commuting Distance

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the distance, in kilometres, between the respondent's residence and his or her usual workplace location. The variable relates to non-institutional residents 15 years of age and over who worked at some time since January 1, 2000. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held in the week prior to enumeration. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2000, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked at some time since January 1, 2000, and who had a usual place of work

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 46

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Workplace locations are coded to a geographic point location. This geographic point location is a block-face, block, dissemination area or census subdivision representative point. Commuting distance is calculated as the straight-line distance between the residential block representative point and the workplace location representative point.

Journey to Work: Mode of Transportation

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Main means a person uses to travel between home and place of work, for example, by car, on foot, on public transit, or by some other means.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the mode of transportation to work of non-institutional residents 15 years of age and over who worked at some time since January 1, 2000. Persons who indicate in the place of work question that they either had no fixed workplace address, or specified a usual workplace address, are asked to identify the mode of transportation they most frequently use to commute from home to work. The variable usually relates to the individual's job in the week prior to enumeration. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2000, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked at some time since January 1, 2000 at a usual workplace address, or had no fixed workplace address

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 47

Responses: Car, truck or van as driver; Car, truck or van as passenger; Public transit (e.g. bus, streetcar, subway, light-rail transit, commuter train, ferry); Walked to work; Bicycle; Motorcycle; Taxicab; Other method

Remarks: Persons who use more than one mode of transportation are asked to identify the single mode they use for most of the travel distance. As a result, the question provides data on the primary mode of transportation to work. The question does not measure multiple modes of transportation, nor does it measure the seasonal variation in mode of transportation or trips made for purposes other than the commute from home to work.

Journey to Work: Place of Work Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Classification of people aged 15 or over who worked at some point between January 1, 2000 and May 15, 2001 (Census Day), according to whether they worked at home, worked outside Canada, had no fixed workplace address, or worked at a specific address.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the place of work of non-institutional residents 15 years of age and over who worked at some time since January 1, 2000. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held in the week prior to enumeration. However, if the person did not work during that week but had worked at some time since January 1, 2000, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked at some time since January 1, 2000

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 46

Responses: Worked at home (including farms); Worked outside Canada; No fixed workplace address; Worked at the address specified below (usual workplace address)

Remarks: Respondent-completed responses

Worked at home – Persons whose job is located in the same building as their place of residence, persons who live and work on the same farm, building superintendents and teleworkers who spend most of their work week working at home.

Worked outside Canada – Persons who work at a location outside Canada. This can include diplomats, Armed Forces personnel and other persons enumerated abroad. This category also includes recent immigrants who may not currently be employed, but whose job of longest duration since January 1, 2000 was held outside Canada.

No fixed workplace address – Persons who do not go from home to the same workplace location at the beginning of each shift. Such persons include building and landscape contractors, travelling salespersons, independent truck drivers, etc.

Worked at the address specified below – Persons who are not included in the categories described above and who report to the same (usual) workplace location at the beginning of each shift are included here. Respondents are asked to provide the street address, city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve, province/territory and postal code of their workplace. If the full street address was not known, the name of the building or nearest street intersection could be substituted.

Teleworkers who spend less than one-half of their workweek working at their home office are asked to report the full address of their employer. Persons whose workplace location varied, but who reported regularly to an employer's address at the beginning of each shift, are asked to report the full address of the employer.

The chart below indicates which "journey to work" data are available for each place of work status.

Place of Work Status	Workplace Location	Commuting Distance	Mode of Transportation
Worked at home	Available	Not applicable	Not applicable
Worked outside Canada	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
No fixed workplace address	Not applicable	Not applicable	Available
Usual place of work	Available	Available	Available

For information on the comparability of **journey to work data** to previous censuses, see Appendix D.

Journey to Work: Workplace Location

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the geographic location of the workplace of non-institutional residents 15 years of age and over who worked at some time since January 1, 2000. The variable usually relates to the individual's job held in the week prior to enumeration. However, if the person did not work during that week, but had worked at some time since January 1, 2000, the information relates to the job held longest during that period.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked at some time since January 1, 2000, and who either worked at home or had a usual place of work.

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 46

Responses: For persons who indicated they "Worked at home" or "Worked at the address specified below" (a usual place of work), the street address, city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve, province or territory and postal code of their workplace was used to assign geographic codes identifying the workplace location. Several workplace location geographic codes are available, including province, census division, census subdivision, census metropolitan area, census agglomeration, census tract, federal electoral district, dissemination area and block. The hierarchy of standard geographic areas is presented in Figure 20 in the Geography section.

Data on workplace locations are usually disseminated at the census subdivision and census tract levels of geography, but can be produced at other levels upon request. Aggregating workplace location representative points can approximate non-standard or user-defined query areas, such as traffic zones.

Remarks: Persons working in census metropolitan areas or census agglomerations are coded to a block-face, block or dissemination area representative point. Persons working outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations are **coded** to census subdivision representative points.

Labour Market Activities: *Class of Worker*

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

This variable classifies persons who reported a job into the following categories:

- (a) persons who worked mainly for wages, salaries, commissions, tips, piece-rates, or payments “in kind” (payments in goods or services rather than money);
- (b) persons who worked mainly for themselves, with or without paid help, operating a business, farm or professional practice, alone or in partnership;
- (c) persons who worked without pay in a family business, farm or professional practice owned or operated by a related household member; unpaid family work does not include unpaid housework, unpaid childcare, unpaid care to seniors and volunteer work.

The job reported was the one held in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001) if the person was employed, or the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000, if the person was not employed during the reference week. Persons with two or more jobs in the reference week were asked to provide information for the job at which they worked the most hours.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 44 and 45

Responses: Wage and salary earners
Unpaid family workers (worked without pay for a relative in a family business, on a farm or in a professional practice)
Self-employed without paid help in unincorporated businesses
Self-employed with paid help in unincorporated businesses
Self-employed without paid help in incorporated businesses
Self-employed with paid help in incorporated businesses

Note: Self-employed persons with paid help are often classified as “employers”.
Self-employed persons without paid help are classified as “own account” or “independent” workers.

Remarks: Wage and Salary Earners

Includes persons 15 years of age and over who worked since January 1, 2000, and who indicated that in the job reported, they were working mainly for wages, salaries, commissions, tips, piece-rates or payments “in kind” (payments in goods or services rather than money). Some examples include: those who worked in someone else’s private household at such jobs as babysitting and cleaning; salespersons on commission working for only one company and not maintaining an office or staff; and those who worked for payment “in kind” in non-family enterprises, such as members of a religious order who received free room and board or other supplies in lieu of cash.

Self-employed

Includes persons 15 years of age and over who worked since January 1, 2000, and for whom the job reported consisted mainly of operating a business, farm or professional practice, alone or in partnership. Some examples include: operating a farm, whether the land is rented or owned; working on a freelance or contract basis to do a job (e.g. architects, private duty nurses); operating a direct distributorship selling and delivering products such as cosmetics, newspapers, brushes and soap products; and fishing with own equipment or with equipment in which the person has a share.

Respondents were to specify if their business was incorporated or unincorporated, as well as if they had paid help or no paid help. It should be noted that new tax laws in 1980 permitted the respondent, for the first time, to deduct a spouse’s wages as expenses. Consequently, self-employed persons who decided to pay wages to their spouse to take advantage of the new law changed status from “without paid help” to “with paid help” between 1971 and 1981. This change should be kept in mind when comparing data between the 1971 Census and subsequent censuses.

Unpaid Family Workers (Worked Without Pay for a Relative in a Family Business, Farm or Professional Practice)

Includes persons 15 years of age and over who worked without regular money wages, for a relative who was a member of the same household. The job reported consisted mainly of tasks contributing to the operation of a business, farm or professional practice, owned or operated by the relative.

Census data are directly comparable for this category from 1981 to 2001. The 1971 Census may not be strictly comparable to subsequent censuses because of conceptual changes in the 1981 Census. For instance, females who were unpaid family workers, worked as farm labourers, and did less than 20 hours of unpaid work a week, were excluded from the labour force according to the 1971 definitions. These persons are included in the employed labour force in 1981, 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001. Also, new tax laws, mentioned earlier, changed the status of some people from “unpaid family workers” to “paid workers” between 1971 and 1981.

In addition, there were some data quality problems with the 1981 data that led to the underestimation of the “Unpaid family workers”. In 1986, an apparent dramatic increase from 1981 in this category of worker was due more to better reporting in 1986 than an actual increase in the number of unpaid family workers.

Census products

Census products often present the class of worker data in the following categories:

- (a) paid workers: this includes wage and salary earners and self-employed persons in incorporated companies (the latter are included because they are considered employees of their own companies and thus, paid workers);
- (b) self-employed in unincorporated companies (a breakdown of “with paid help” and “without paid help” can be provided);
- (c) unpaid family workers.

Comparability between Census Data and the Labour Force Survey data

Some persons who are considered as paid workers in the census are considered as self-employed persons without a business in the Labour Force Survey. These are persons who work at jobs such as babysitting and cleaning for private households, or as newspaper carriers.

Please refer to Appendix E for more information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data.

Labour Market Activities: Employed (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Persons who, during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001):

- (a) did any work at all for pay or in self-employment or without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice;
- (b) were absent from their job or business, with or without pay, for the **entire week** because of a vacation, an illness, a labour dispute at their place of work, or any other reasons.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 and 35

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: 1. The “Employed” includes all persons who “worked for pay or in self-employment” in the week prior to enumeration. This includes all persons working for wages or salaries, all self-employed persons (with or without paid help) working in their own business, farm or professional practice, and all persons working without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice during the reference week. (The “Employed” also includes persons who were absent from their job or business for a variety of reasons.)

“Worked for pay or in self-employment” does not include unpaid housework, unpaid childcare, unpaid care to seniors or volunteer work.

“Worked for wages or salaries” includes worked for wages, salaries, piece-rates, tips, commissions, payments “in kind” (payments in goods or services rather than money), service as a member of a religious order, active duty in the Armed Forces, and casual work for pay, such as babysitting in other people’s homes.

Self-employed persons who worked in their own farm, business or professional practice include persons who:

- spent time in the operation or setting-up of such enterprises, whether or not goods were sold or services were rendered, and whether or not a profit was made;
- did work on a freelance or contract basis;
- operated a direct distributorship selling and delivering products, such as cosmetics, newspapers, brushes or soap products;
- fished, hunted or trapped, whether for profit or for maintenance of their community.

Persons who directly contributed, without formal pay arrangements, towards the operation of a family farm, business or professional practice owned or operated by a relative who was a member of the same household are included in the “Employed” as “unpaid family workers”.

In addition to the reasons given on the questionnaire in Question 35 for absence from a job or business in the week prior to enumeration, which included illness, vacation and a labour dispute at the respondent's place of work, the other reasons mentioned in the *2001 Census Guide* were maternity leave, bad weather, fire, and personal or family responsibilities. In all cases, respondents must have been absent from their job or business for the **entire week**, with or without pay. Absences for training courses could also be included if wages or salary were received from the respondent's employer.

2. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week) definition.
3. For information on the comparability of the **Employed** with previous censuses, refer to Appendix E.
4. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.
5. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.

* See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: *Employment Rate (in Reference Week)**

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of persons employed in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), expressed as a percentage of the total population 15 years of age and over.

$$\text{Employment rate} = \frac{\text{Employed}}{\text{Population 15 years and over (excluding institutional residents)}} \times 100$$

The employment rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the number employed in that group, expressed as a percentage of the population 15 years of age and over in that group.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)**

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Statistic derived from the Labour Force Activity variable

Responses: Not applicable

- Remarks:**
1. In 1976 and 1971, institutional residents were included in the population 15 years of age and over, but were excluded from the labour force.
 2. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Employed (in Reference Week) definition.
 3. For information on the comparability of the **Employed** data with those of previous censuses, see Appendix E.
- * In past censuses, this was called the Employment-population Ratio.
- ** See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Experienced Labour Force (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Persons who, during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), were employed or unemployed who worked for pay or in self-employment since January 1, 2000.

$$\text{Experienced Labour Force} = \text{Employed} + (\text{Unemployed who last worked in 2000}) + (\text{Unemployed who last worked in 2001})$$

The **experienced labour force** can also be derived by excluding from the labour force those unemployed persons 15 years of age and over who have never worked or who had last worked prior to January 1, 2000 only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 39

Responses: Not applicable

- Remarks:**
1. The **experienced labour force** is frequently used when tabulating industry, occupation and class of worker data. For respondents not currently employed, the data on industry, occupation and class of worker are collected for the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000.
 2. See Figure 8 for the components of population and labour force activity.

3. See Appendix F for information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived.
 4. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Full-time or Part-time Weeks Worked in 2000

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to persons who worked for pay or in self-employment in 2000. These persons were asked to report whether the weeks they worked in 2000 were full-time weeks (30 hours or more per week) or not, on the basis of all jobs held. Persons with a part-time job for part of the year and a full-time job for another part of the year were to report the information for the job at which they worked the most weeks.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked for pay or in self-employment in 2000

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 50

Responses: Full time (30 hours or more per week); Part time (1 to 29 hours per week)

- Remarks:**
1. In the censuses prior to 1991, no specific definition was given to respondents for full-time work. Respondents were instructed in the *Guide* to consider part-time work as work which involved fewer hours than the normally scheduled weekly hours performed by persons doing similar work.
 2. The 1971 data for this variable included institutional residents.

Labour Market Activities: Historical Labour Force Activity (based on the 1971 Concepts) – (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The historical labour force activity classifies persons 15 years of age and over, including institutional residents, in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), as **employed**, **unemployed** or **not in the labour force** according to the labour force activity concepts used in the 1971 Census.

The labour force activity concepts have remained fairly consistent since 1971. However, some changes in the questions asked and in processing, as well as some minor conceptual changes, have been introduced throughout the past six censuses. These differences need to be taken into consideration whenever data from two or more census years are being compared. This derived variable which takes into account as many of these differences as possible should be used in doing historical tabulations that include 1971 or 1976 Census data. When doing historical tabulations that include 1981 to 2001 Census data only, the regular labour force activity variable: Labour Market Activities: Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week) can be used.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, including institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 39

Responses: The derived categories for the historical Labour Force Activity variable are:

- Employed – Absent in reference week – Armed Forces
- Employed – Absent in reference week – Civilian
- Employed – Unpaid family worker
- Employed – Paid – Armed Forces
- Employed – Paid or self-employed – Civilian
- Unemployed – Looked for work – Experienced
- Unemployed – Looked for work – Inexperienced
- Unemployed – On temporary lay-off
- Not in the labour force – Excluding institutional residents
- Not in the labour force – Institutional residents
- Not applicable – less than 15 years old

Remarks:

1. According to the 1971 labour force activity concepts, institutional residents are included in the “Not in the labour force” category.
2. For more information, refer to Appendix E or contact the census labour market analysts.

Labour Market Activities: Hours Worked for Pay or in Self-employment (in Reference Week)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Actual number of hours that persons worked for pay or in self-employment at all jobs they held during the week of May 6 to 12, 2001.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the **actual** number of hours that persons worked for pay or in self-employment at all jobs held in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001). This includes hours worked for wages, salaries, tips, commissions, piece-rate payments or payments “in kind” (payments in goods or services rather than money). Hours worked in one’s own business, farm or professional practice or hours worked without pay in a family business, farm or professional practice, owned or operated by a relative living in the same household are also included.

Excluded are hours during which the respondent was absent, with or without pay, for part of the week because of illness, vacation, or other reasons.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 34

Responses: None; Total actual number of hours (write-in entry) worked for pay or in self-employment (to the nearest hour)

Remarks:

1. “Worked for pay or in self-employment” includes work without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. It does not include unpaid housework, unpaid childcare, unpaid care to seniors, or volunteer work. For a more detailed description of “Worked for pay or in self-employment”, refer to the Labour Market Activities: Employed (in Reference Week) definition.
2. In each of the censuses from 1981 to 2001, respondents were asked to write in their actual number of hours worked for pay or in self-employment during the reference week. In 1971 and 1976, two separate questions were asked, one on paid and self-employment hours, and one on hours spent helping without pay in the operation of a family business, farm or professional practice. In both cases, precise response categories were given on the questionnaire. In addition, the reference weeks in 1971 and 1976 included a statutory holiday, and the data included institutional residents. Data for each of the censuses from 1981 to 2001 are, therefore, largely not comparable to previous years.
3. Data on actual and usual number of hours worked are available from the Labour Force Survey.

4. For further information on the comparability of labour force activity data with those of previous censuses and with the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix E.
5. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

Labour Market Activities: Incorporation Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the legal status of a business, farm or professional practice. It is directed at persons who were mainly self-employed, either with or without paid help in the job reported (i.e. their job in the week [Sunday to Saturday] prior to enumeration [May 15, 2001] or the one of longest duration since January 1, 2000). An **incorporated business** is a business, farm or professional practice that has been formed into a legal corporation, thus constituting a legal entity under either federal or provincial laws. An **unincorporated business**, farm or professional practice is not a separate legal entity, but may be a partnership, family business or owner-operated business.

The question on incorporation is often used in conjunction with **Labour Market Activities: Class of Worker** data, since self-employed persons who reported their farm or business as incorporated can be included with paid workers in certain types of analysis.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000 and who were self-employed

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 45

Responses: No (not incorporated); Yes (incorporated)

Remarks: Not applicable

Labour Market Activities: Industry (based on the 1997 North American Industry Classification System [NAICS])

Modified on February 19, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

General nature of the business carried out in the establishment where the person worked. The 2001 Census data on **industry (based on the 1997 NAICS)** can be compared with data from Canada's NAFTA partners (United States and Mexico).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the general nature of the business carried out in the establishment where the person worked. If the person did not have a job during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001), the data relate to the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000. Persons with two or more jobs were required to report the information for the job at which they worked the most hours.

The 2001 industry data are produced according to the 1997 NAICS. The NAICS provides enhanced industry comparability among the three North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) trading partners (Canada, United States and Mexico). This classification consists of a systematic and comprehensive arrangement of industries structured into 20 sectors, 99 subsectors and 300 industry groups. The criteria used to create these categories are similarity of input structures, labour skills or production processes used by the establishment. For further information on the classification, see *North American Industry Classification System, Canada, 1997*, Catalogue No. 12-501-XPE.

The variable "Industry (based on the 1997 NAICS)" does not permit direct comparison to any previous census industry data. The 1980 Standard Industrial Classification should be used for comparisons between the 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001 Censuses.

Census: 2001 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question Nos.: Coded variable: Questions 40 and 41

Responses: The industry questions request write-in responses indicating for whom the respondents worked (their employer) and the kind of business or service offered by this employer. The census coders assigned an industry code from these responses, based on the 1997 NAICS classification.

Remarks: The 2001 industry data can be tabulated for a number of populations, among which the most frequently used are:

- (a) the employed;
- (b) the experienced labour force – persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week but who had worked since January 1, 2000;
- (c) those who have worked since January 1, 2000, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

The remaining components of the labour force, unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2000, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category "Industry – Not applicable".

Coding of responses to the industry questions was done, where possible, using a pre-coded List of Establishments to ensure uniformity with the NAICS codes assigned to the same establishments by other Statistics Canada surveys.

Comparable industry information based on the 1997 NAICS is also available from the Labour Force Survey. For more information on the comparability of the census and of the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.

Overview of the Industrial Classifications Available from 1971 to 2001

Classifications Used to Code Responses	Census Years for Which Data can be Compared	Comments
1997 North American Industry Classification	2001	
1980 Standard Industrial Classification	1986, 1991, 1996, 2001	The 2001 Census industry responses are coded to the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification codes. This allows for comparison between the 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001 Censuses. This is the only industrial classification available for the 1996 Census.
1970 Standard Industrial Classification Manual	1971, 1981, 1986, 1991	In 1981, the concept of the labour force was expanded to include employment arrangements to start work and availability for work. For data comparisons with the 1971 Census, adjustments must be made to the labour force universe.

Labour Market Activities: Industry (based on the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification [SIC])

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

General nature of the business carried out in the establishment where the person worked. The 2001 Census data on **industry (based on the 1980 SIC)** can be compared with data from the 1986, 1991 and 1996 Censuses.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the general nature of the business carried out in the establishment where the person worked. If the person did not have a job during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001), data relate to the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000. Persons with two or more jobs were to report the information for the job at which they worked the most hours.

The variable “Industry (based on the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification)” permits direct comparisons between 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001 Census industry data.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question Nos.: Coded variable: Questions 40 and 41

Responses: The industry questions request write-in responses indicating for whom the respondents worked (their employer) and the kind of business or service offered by this employer. The census coders assigned an industry code from these responses, based on the 1980 Standard Industrial Classification.

Remarks: The 2001 industry data can be tabulated for a number of populations, among which the most frequently used are:

- (a) the employed;
- (b) the experienced labour force – persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week but who had worked since January 1, 2000;
- (c) those who have worked since January 1, 2000, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

The remaining components of the labour force, unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2000, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category “Industry – Not applicable”.

This classification consists of a systematic and comprehensive arrangement of industries structured into 18 divisions, 75 major groups and 296 groups. These industrial groups are based on the general nature of the establishment’s business, industry or service. For further information on the classification, see *Standard Industrial Classification, 1980*, Catalogue No. 12-501E.

Coding of responses to the industry questions was done, where possible, using a pre-coded List of Establishments to ensure uniformity with the SIC codes assigned to the same establishments by other Statistics Canada surveys. If the respondent did not specify an industry, or did not define it in sufficient detail to permit coding, a computer-generated SIC code was assigned based on other economic and demographic information given by the respondent.

Overview of the Standard Industrial Classifications Available from 1971 to 2001

Classifications Used to Code Responses	Census Years for Which Data can be Compared	Comments
1997 North American Industry Classification	2001	
1980 Standard Industrial Classification	1986, 1991, 1996, 2001	A separate coding operation is done to the 2001 Census responses in order to provide data comparable to that of other census years. The original industrial coding operation coded the 2001 Census responses to the 1997 North American Industry Classification System (NAICS). This is the only industrial classification available for the 1996 Census.
1970 Standard Industrial Classification Manual	1971, 1981, 1986, 1991	In 1981, the concept of the labour force was expanded to include employment arrangements to start work and availability for work. For data comparisons with the 1971 Census, adjustments must be made to the labour force universe.

Labour Market Activities: Inexperienced Labour Force (in Reference Week)
Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The inexperienced labour force consists of unemployed persons who, in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001), had never worked for pay or in self-employment, or who had last worked for pay or in self-employment prior to January 1, 2000 only.

$$\text{Inexperienced labour force} = \begin{aligned} & (\text{Unemployed who last worked before January 1, 2000}) \\ & + \\ & (\text{Unemployed who never worked}) \end{aligned}$$

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 39

Responses: Not applicable

- Remarks:**
1. Industry, occupation and class of worker data are not collected for the inexperienced labour force.
 2. See Figure 8 for the components of population and labour force activity.
 3. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the labour market activity of the population 15 years of age and over in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001). Respondents were classified as either **employed**, or **unemployed**, or as **not in the labour force**. The **labour force** includes the **employed** and the **unemployed**.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 39

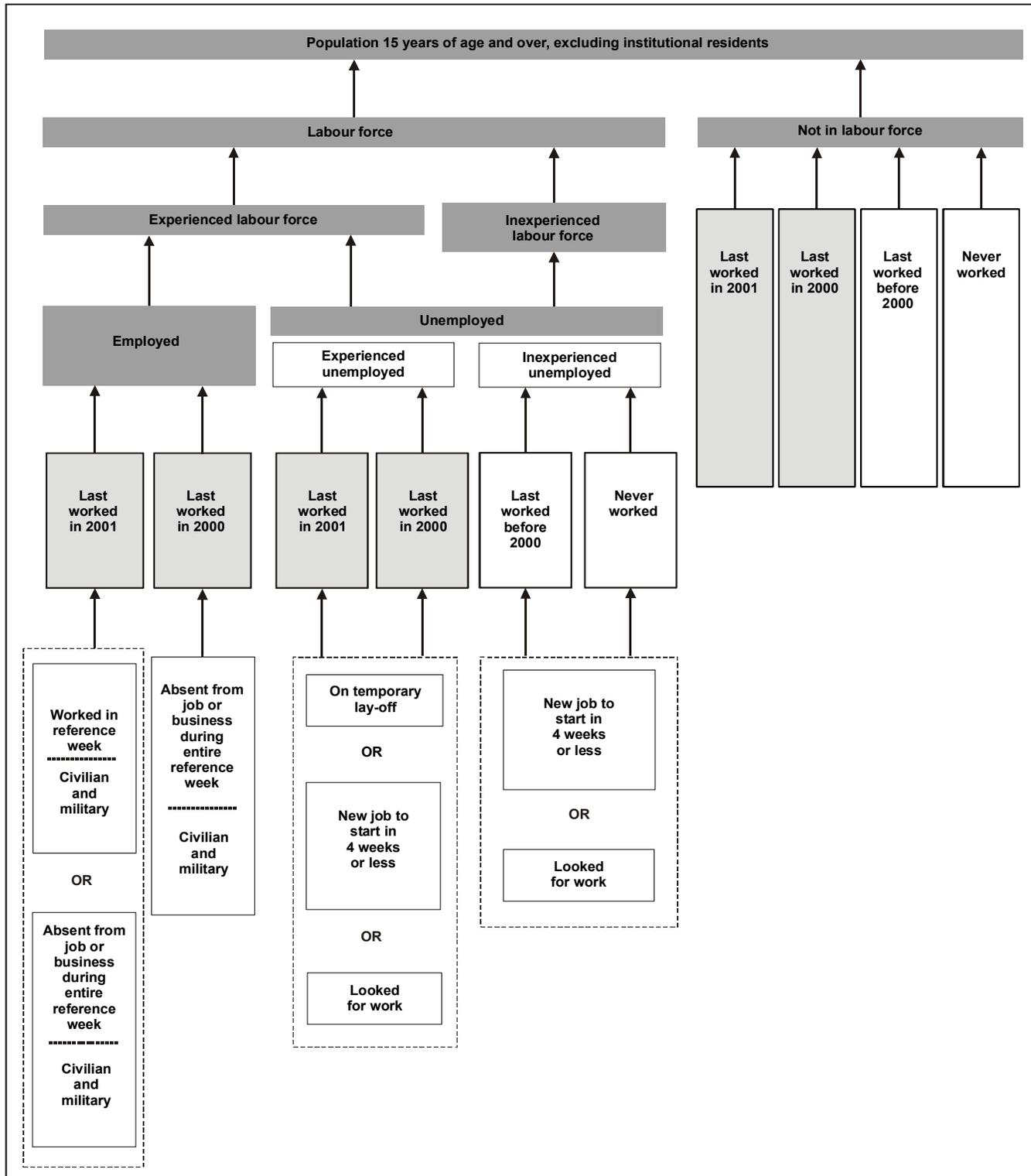
Responses: The values for the Labour Force Activity variable are:

-
2. The “Labour force activity” categories were derived from the responses to the labour force questions on the census questionnaire. These were as follows:
 - Hours worked for pay or in self-employment in the reference week (Question 34)
 - On temporary lay-off or absent from job or business in the reference week (Question 35)
 - New job to start in four weeks or less from the reference week (Question 36)
 - Looked for full-time or part-time paid work in the past four weeks (Question 37)
 - Reasons unable to start a job in the reference week (Question 38)
 - When last worked for pay or in self-employment (Question 39)

Definitions of the above-listed variables are included in this dictionary. However, the major purpose of these variables was to derive the labour force activity of the respondent. Other than for specialized research in consultation with the census labour market analysts, the use of these variables on their own (except for Labour Market Activities: Hours Worked for Pay or in Self-employment and Labour Market Activities: When Last Worked for Pay or in Self-employment) is not recommended.

3. For historical tabulations, refer to the definition Labour Market Activities: Historical Labour Force Activity (based on the 1971 Concepts) – (in Reference Week).
 4. See Figure 8 for the components of population and labour force activity.
 5. For information on the comparability of Labour Force Activity data with those of previous censuses and with the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix E.
 6. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Figure 8. Population and the Labour Force Activity Components, 2001 Census



Worked since January 1, 2000 (industry, occupation and class of worker data are available for all persons who worked since January 1, 2000).

Labour Market Activities: Labour Force* (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to persons who were either **employed** or **unemployed** during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001).

$$\text{Labour force} = \text{Employed} + \text{Unemployed}$$

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)**

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 38

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks:

1. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week), the Labour Market Activities: Employed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) definitions.
2. See Figure 8 for the components of population and labour force activity.
3. See Appendix F for information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived.

* In past censuses, this was called “Total Labour Force”.

** See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Looked for Paid Work in Past Four Weeks (Full- or Part-time Work)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether or not a person actively looked for paid work in the four weeks prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001). The work sought could be either full time (30 hours or more per week) or part time (1 to 29 hours per week). “Actively looked” means using such job search methods as contacting a Canada Employment Centre, checking with employers, or placing or answering newspaper ads. Data were collected for persons who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration.

This variable is used to derive the respondent’s labour force activity status. Other than for specialized research in consultation with census labour market analysts, the use of this variable on its own is not recommended.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 37

Responses: No; Yes, looked for full-time work; Yes, looked for part-time work (less than 30 hours per week)

Remarks:

1. In 1976 and 1971, information on whether the paid work sought was full time or part time was not collected; as well, institutional residents were asked the census job search question and were included in the “Not in the labour force” category.
2. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.
3. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week) definitions.
4. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

Labour Market Activities: New Job to Start in Four Weeks or Less (from Reference Week)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether or not a person, in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), had definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks. Data were collected for persons who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration.

This variable is used to derive the respondent's labour force activity status. Other than for specialized research in consultation with census labour market analysts, the use of this variable on its own is not recommended.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 36

Responses: No (did not have definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks); Yes (had definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks)

Remarks:

1. The 1976 data for this variable included institutional residents.
2. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.
3. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week) definitions.
4. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

Labour Market Activities: Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to persons who, in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), were neither employed nor unemployed. It includes students, homemakers, retired workers, seasonal workers in an "off" season who were not looking for work, and persons who could not work because of a long-term illness or disability.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 39

Responses: Not applicable

- Remarks:**
1. "Availability for work", in the week prior to Census Day, is based on the individual's responses to Question 37 (Did this person look for paid work during the past four weeks?) and Question 38 (Could this person have started a job last week had one been available?), as well as on derived education variables. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.
 2. Since 1981, institutional residents have not been asked the questions on labour force activity. In 1976 and 1971, institutional residents were asked the labour force questions and were included in the "Not in the labour force" category.
 3. In 1976, although respondents were asked to indicate whether or not they were available for work, a question on reasons why respondents were unavailable for work was not asked. Therefore, all unemployed persons who looked for work and indicated that they were not available for work were included in the "Not in the labour force" category.
 4. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) definition.
 5. See Figure 8 for the components of population and labour force activity.
 6. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Occupation (based on the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics [NOC-S 2001])

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Kind of work done by persons aged 15 and over. **Occupation** is based on the type of job the person holds and the description of his or her duties. The 2001 data on occupation are classified according to the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC-S 2001). For comparisons with data from the 1991 and 1996 Censuses, the variable Occupation (Historical) should be used.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the kind of work persons were doing during the reference week, as determined by their kind of work and the description of the main activities in their job. If the person did not have a job during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001), the data relate to the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000. Persons with two or more jobs were to report the information for the job at which they worked the most hours.

The 2001 occupation data are classified according to the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC–S 2001). This classification is composed of four levels of aggregation. There are 10 broad occupational categories containing 47 major groups that are further subdivided into 140 minor groups. At the most detailed level, there are 520 occupation unit groups. Occupation unit groups are formed on the basis of the education, training, or skill level required to enter the job, as well as the kind of work performed, as determined by the tasks, duties and responsibilities of the occupation.

For information on the NOC–S 2001, see the *National Occupational Classification for Statistics, 2001*, Catalogue No. 12-583-XPE.

Census: 2001 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question Nos.: Coded variable: Questions 42 and 43

Responses: Respondents were asked what was their work or occupation and to describe the main activities in their job. The information from these responses was used by census coders to assign an occupation code from the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC-S 2001).

Remarks: The 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics is a revision of the 1991 Standard Occupational Classification (SOC). The 1991 SOC was used to classify occupation data in the 1991 and 1996 Censuses. In order to compare occupation data coded to the NOC–S 2001 with data coded to the 1991 SOC, the variable Occupation (Historical) should be used.

The 2001 occupation data can be tabulated for a number of populations, among which the most frequently used are:

- (a) the employed;
- (b) the experienced labour force – persons who were either employed or unemployed in the reference week but who had worked since January 1, 2000;
- (c) those who have worked since January 1, 2000, regardless of whether or not they were in the labour force in the reference week.

The remaining components of the labour force, unemployed persons who worked prior to January 1, 2000, or who never worked, are shown in the data under the category “Occupation – Not applicable”.

If the respondent did not specify an occupation or did not define it in sufficient detail to permit coding, a computer-generated NOC–S 2001 code was assigned based on other economic and demographic information given by the respondent.

Human Resources Development Canada classifies occupation data according to the National Occupational Classification (NOC). This classification has a similar structure to that of the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC–S 2001). The two classifications have 520 unit groups, 140 minor groups and 10 broad categories in common. However, there are 47 major groups in the NOC–S 2001 and 26 major groups in the NOC. Occupation data from the 2001 Census are available according to both the NOC–S 2001 and the NOC structures.

Occupation information is also available from the Labour Force Survey. For more information on the comparability of the census and of the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.

Overview of the Occupational Classifications Available from 1971 to 2001

Classifications Used to Code Responses	Census Years for Which Data can be Compared	Comments
2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (also available as the National Occupational Classification)	2001	
1991 Standard Occupational Classification (also available as the National Occupational Classification)	1991, 1996, 2001*	* For comparisons between the 1991, 1996 and 2001 data, the variable Occupation (Historical) should be used.
1980 Standard Occupational Classification ¹	1981, 1986, 1991	
1971 Occupational Classification Manual ¹	1971, 1981, 1986, 1991	For comparisons with the 1971 data, adjustments must be made to the 1981, 1986 and 1991 labour force universes. (See Appendix E for further information on historical comparability of labour force data.)

¹ During the coding operations in 1981, 1986 and 1991, occupation responses were coded to an interim classification which allowed for the restructuring of the occupation data into the 1971 or 1980 classifications without the need for coding the data twice.

Labour Market Activities: Occupation (Historical)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Kind of work done by persons aged 15 and over. **Occupation** is based on the type of job the person holds and the description of his or her duties. This variable has been created in order to facilitate comparison of occupation data coded to the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC–S 2001) with 1991 and 1996 Census occupation data coded to the 1991 Standard Occupational Classification (SOC).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the kind of work persons were doing during the reference week, as determined by their kind of work and the description of the main activities in their job. If the person did not have a job during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to enumeration (May 15, 2001), the data relate to the job of longest duration since January 1, 2000. Persons with two or more jobs were to report the information for the job at which they worked the most hours.

This variable has been created in order to facilitate comparison of occupation data coded to the 2001 National Occupational Classification for Statistics (NOC–S 2001) with 1991 and 1996 Census occupation data coded to the 1991 Standard Occupational Classification (SOC).

Census: 2001 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000

Question No.: Coded variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The 1991 SOC was used as the basis for the creation of the Occupation (Historical) variable. Wherever possible, the 1991 SOC code has been retained. However, data users should be aware that some adjustments to occupation data coded to the 1991 SOC will still be necessary when making comparisons with the 2001 Occupation (Historical) variable. The following table summarizes the relationship between the 1991 SOC, the NOC–S 2001 and the Occupation (Historical) variables.

SOC91	NOC–S 2001	Occupation (Historical)
A121	A121 A123	A121
B511 B512	B511	B510*
B521 C047 C062 C063	C047 C071 C072 C073 C074 C075 C181 C182 C183	C070*
C131	C131 C134	C131
D313 G951	D313	D310*
E034	E034 E039	E034
G731	G723 G731	G731
G813	E217	G813
G961 G962	G961	G960*
J195	H326	J195

* Codes ending in "0" indicate that two or more unit groups have been collapsed in the 1991 SOC.

Labour Market Activities: On Temporary Lay-off or Absent from Job or Business (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether persons were, during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), (a) on temporary lay-off from a job to which they expected to return or (b) absent from their job or business for the entire week. Reasons for absence included a vacation, an illness, a strike or lock-out at the respondent's place of employment, or other reasons, including maternity leave, bad weather, fire, personal or family responsibilities, and attendance at training courses if wages or salaries were received from the employer. Data were collected for persons who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration.

This variable is used to derive the respondent's labour force activity status. Other than for specialized research in consultation with census labour market analysts, the use of this variable on its own is not recommended.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 35

Responses: No; Yes, on temporary lay-off from a job to which this person expects to return; Yes, on vacation, ill, on strike or locked out, or absent for other reasons

- Remarks:**
1. In 1971 and 1976, two separate questions were asked, one on lay-off and the second on absence. All persons 15 years of age and over, including those who worked for pay or in self-employment in the week preceding the census, as well as institutional residents, were asked these two questions and were included in the data.
 2. In 1981, persons were considered to be on temporary lay-off from a job to which they expected to return if the length of their lay-off did not exceed 26 weeks. In 1971 and 1976, this period was restricted to 30 days. For 1986, 1991, 1996 and 2001, there was no limit to the lay-off period.
 3. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.
 4. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Employed (in Reference Week), the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week) definitions.
 5. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

***Labour Market Activities: Participation Rate
(in Reference Week)***

Modified on December 4, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the labour force in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), expressed as a percentage of the population 15 years of age and over.

$$\text{Participation rate} = \frac{\text{Labour force}}{\text{Population 15 years of age and over (excluding institutional residents)}} \times 100$$

The participation rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the total labour force in that group, expressed as a percentage of the population 15 years of age and over, in that group.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Statistic derived from the Labour Force Activity variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks:

1. In 1971 and 1976, although institutional residents were excluded from the labour force, they were included in the population 15 years of age and over that is used in calculating participation rates.
2. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Labour Force (in Reference Week) definition.
3. For information on the comparability of labour force activity data with those of previous censuses and with the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix E.

* See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Reasons Unable to Start a Job (in Reference Week)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the reasons why persons could not have started a job in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001). Reasons provided to respondents included: already had a job, temporary illness or disability, personal or family responsibilities, going to school, and the residual category “Other reasons”. Respondents could answer that they could have started a job in the week prior to Census Day.

This variable is used to derive the respondent’s labour force activity status. Other than for specialized research in consultation with census labour market analysts, the use of this variable on its own is not recommended.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Persons 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents, who did not work for pay or in self-employment in the week prior to enumeration and who actively looked for paid work in the four weeks prior to enumeration

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 38

Responses: Yes, could have started a job; No, already had a job; No, because of temporary illness or disability; No, because of personal or family responsibilities; No, going to school; No, other reasons

Remarks:

1. The response category “personal or family responsibilities” includes illness in the family, jury duty, and caring for own child.
2. In 1976, the question was asked of all persons looking for paid work in the reference week, and no reasons for unavailability for paid work were asked. In addition, the 1976 data included institutional residents.
3. For information on the comparability between the census and the Labour Force Survey data, refer to Appendix E.
4. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Not in the Labour Force (in Reference Week) definitions.
5. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week)

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Persons who, during the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001), were **without paid work or without self-employment work** and were **available for work** and either:

- (a) had actively looked for paid work in the past four weeks; or
- (b) were on temporary lay-off and expected to return to their job; or
- (c) had definite arrangements to start a new job in four weeks or less.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 34 to 38

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: 1. The “Unemployed” category consists primarily of those persons who, during the week prior to enumeration, were without paid work, were available for work, and had actively looked for paid work in the past four weeks.

There are two smaller components of the “Unemployed”: those persons who did not work during the week prior to enumeration because they had been laid off from a job to which they expected to return, and persons who did not work during the week prior to enumeration, but had definite arrangements to start a new job in four weeks or less. In both cases, the respondents had to be available for work in the week prior to enumeration.

“Availability for work”, in the week prior to Census Day, is based on the individual’s responses to Question 37 (Did this person look for paid work during the past four weeks?) and Question 38 (Could this person have started a job last week had one been available?), as well as on derived education variables. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

2. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Labour Force Activity (in Reference Week) definition.
 3. For information on the comparability of the Unemployed data with those of previous censuses and with the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix E.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

***Labour Market Activities: Unemployment Rate
(in Reference Week)***

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the unemployed expressed as a percentage of the labour force in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001).

$$\text{Unemployment rate} = \frac{\text{Unemployed}}{\text{Labour force}} \times 100$$

The unemployment rate for a particular group (age, sex, marital status, geographic area, etc.) is the unemployed in that group, expressed as a percentage of the labour force in that group, in the week prior to enumeration.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Statistic derived from the Labour Force Activity variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks:

1. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Unemployed (in Reference Week) and the Labour Market Activities: Labour Force (in Reference Week) definitions.
2. For information on the comparability of labour force activity data with those of previous censuses and with the Labour Force Survey, see Appendix E.

* See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: Weeks Worked in 2000

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of weeks in 2000 during which persons worked for pay or in self-employment at all jobs held, even if only for a few hours. It includes weeks of paid vacation, weeks on sick leave with pay, and all weeks in which training was paid for by the employer.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 49

Responses: None; Number of weeks (write-in entry)

Remarks:

1. "Worked for pay or in self-employment" includes work without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. It does not include unpaid housework, unpaid childcare, unpaid care to seniors, or volunteer work.

2. Respondents were instructed to enter 52 weeks if they were **paid** for a full year even though they worked less than a year (for example, a school teacher paid on a 12-month basis).
 3. In 1971, data for this variable were obtained in groupings (none; 1-13; 14-26; 27-39; 40-48; 49-52) and included institutional residents.
- * See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: When Last Worked for Pay or in Self-employment

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the year or period in which persons last worked for pay or in self-employment, even if only for a few days.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 39

Responses: In 2001; In 2000; Before 2000; Never (Worked for pay or in self-employment)

- Remarks:**
1. “Worked for pay or in self-employment” includes work without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. It does not include unpaid housework, unpaid childcare, unpaid care to seniors, or volunteer work.
 2. This variable is used to identify persons with recent paid work experience. Persons who responded “In 2000” or “In 2001” make up the population who “worked for pay or in self-employment since January 1, 2000”. This is the population for which occupation, industry and class of worker data are collected. This variable is also used to derive the Labour Force Activity, the Work Activity in 2000, the Experienced Labour Force and the Inexperienced Labour Force variables.
 3. See Figure 8 for the components of the population and labour force activity.
 4. The 1971 data for this variable included institutional residents.
 5. For information on how each of the components of the Labour Force Activity variable is derived, see Appendix F.

* See the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) for differences between 1961 and 1971.

Labour Market Activities: *Work Activity in 2000*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of weeks in which a person worked for pay or in self-employment in 2000 at all jobs held, even if only for a few hours, and whether these weeks were mostly full time (30 hours or more per week) or mostly part time (1 to 29 hours per week).

The term **full-year full-time workers** refers to persons 15 years of age and over who worked 49-52 weeks (mostly full time) in 2000 for pay or in self-employment.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 39, 49 and 50

Responses: Derived categories:

Did not work for pay or in self-employment in 2000 (worked before 2000; or never worked)

Did not work for pay or in self-employment in 2000 (worked in 2001)

Worked for pay or in self-employment in 2000:

1-13 weeks mostly full-time paid work;
 1-13 weeks mostly part-time paid work;
 14-26 weeks mostly full-time paid work;
 14-26 weeks mostly part-time paid work;
 27-39 weeks mostly full-time paid work;
 27-39 weeks mostly part-time paid work;
 40-48 weeks mostly full-time paid work;
 40-48 weeks mostly part-time paid work;
 49-52 weeks mostly full-time paid work;
 49-52 weeks mostly part-time paid work.

- Remarks:**
1. For additional information, see the Labour Market Activities: Weeks Worked in 2000 and Labour Market Activities: Full-time or Part-time Weeks Worked in 2000 definitions.
 2. Although "Work Activity in 1980" was a new variable in 1981, similar data can be derived from the 1971 Census retrieval database.

Language: *First Official Language Spoken*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a variable specified within the framework of the *Official Languages Act*.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 13, 15 and 16

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable was derived within the framework of the application of the *Official Languages Act*.

This derivation method is described in the regulations concerning the use of official languages for the provision of public services. It takes into account first the knowledge of the two official languages, second the mother tongue, and third the home language.

People who can conduct a conversation in French only are assigned French as their first official language spoken. People who can carry on a conversation in English only are assigned English as their first official language spoken. The responses to questions on mother tongue and home language are subsequently used to establish the first official language spoken by people who speak both English and French, or who cannot speak either of the two official languages. The French category includes people who have French only or French and at least one non-official language as their mother tongue. People who have English only or English and at least one non-official language as their mother tongue are included in the English category. For cases that have not yet been classified, people are assigned to the French category when they speak French only or French and at least one non-official language as their home language. The procedure is the same for English. Thus, the population is classified into two principal categories: English or French. It is necessary to add two residual categories for people who cannot be classified in accordance with the information available: English and French and neither English nor French.

Please consult the following documents for more information: *Regulations Respecting Communications With and Services to the Public in Either Official Language*, registered on December 16, 1991, in accordance with section 85 of the *Official Languages Act*, R.S.C., c. 32 (4th suppl.) and *Population Estimates by First Official Language Spoken, 1991*, Catalogue No. 94-320, Demography Division, Statistics Canada.

Language: Home Language

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the language spoken most often or on a regular basis at home by the individual at the time of the census.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 15

Responses: See Figures 9, 9A, 9B and 9C.

Remarks: This question has been changed since 1996. Until that census, the question asked for the language spoken most often at home, and this remains as part (a) in 2001; another part (part [b]) on languages spoken on a regular basis at home was added in 2001. This was done in order to reflect the complete linguistic situation of some Canadian households.

In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents in the *2001 Census Guide*:

Part (a)

Report the language spoken **most often** at home. Report more than one language only if all languages are spoken equally often.

For a person who lives alone:

- report the language in which you feel most comfortable.

For a child who has not yet learned to speak:

- report the language spoken most often to this child at home. If two languages are spoken, report the language spoken most often. If both languages are used equally often, report both languages.

Part (b)

Report any other languages that the person speaks at home on a regular basis, but not as often as the language reported in part (a).

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear was modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category "French". The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflect this change, in the actual wording of the question(s).

For comparability purposes, Appendix G provides a list of languages released in 1991, 1996 and 2001.

Comparison with 1996 Census data

1. Some 2001 Census data on home language by type of response (for example, “spoken regularly”) cannot be compared with previous census data since the second part of the question on home language, asked for the first time in 2001, relates to the language spoken on a regular basis at home. The category “Single responses” means that the language reported is the only one spoken most often at home while the category “Multiple responses” indicates that at least two languages have been reported as spoken most often at home.
2. When comparing 2001 Census data on home language with the 1996 data, only the language spoken most often at home is to be used since, before the 2001 Census, there was no question asked regarding languages spoken on a regular basis.
3. The categories “Only” and “Mostly” were derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the single responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. The category “Equally” was derived to obtain the frequency of language spoken at home from the multiple responses reported in part (a) of the question on home language. Finally, the category “Regularly” was created from the responses reported in the second part of the question pertaining to home language, asked for the first time in 2001.

Language: Knowledge of Non-official Languages

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to languages, other than English or French, in which the respondent can conduct a conversation.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 14

Responses: See Figures 9, 9A, 9B and 9C.

Remarks: This is the same question as in 1991 and 1996. The non-official language data are based on the respondent’s assessment of his or her ability to speak non-official languages.

In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents in the *2001 Census Guide*:

Report only those languages in which the person can carry on a conversation of some length on various topics.

For a child who has not yet learned to speak:

- report a language other than English or French that the child is learning to speak at home.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear was modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category “French”. The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflect this change in the actual wording of the question(s).

This question was asked for the first time in the 1991 Census. Appendix H provides a list of the non-official languages released in 2001, 1996 and 1991.

Language: Knowledge of Official Languages

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the ability to conduct a conversation in English only, in French only, in both English and French, or in neither of the official languages of Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 13

Responses: English only; French only; Both English and French; Neither English nor French

Remarks: The official language data are based on the respondent’s assessment of his or her ability to speak the two official languages. The word “bilingualism” is often used in census documents to express both English and French data.

This is the same question as in 1996 and 1991.

In 2001, the following instructions were provided to respondents in the *2001 Census Guide*:

Mark **English** or **French** only if the person can carry on a conversation of some length on various topics in that language.

For a child who has not yet learned to speak:

- report the language(s) that the child is learning to speak at home: English, French, both, or neither.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear was modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category “French”. The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflect this change in the actual wording of the question(s).

Language: *Language of Work***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the language used most often at work by the individual at the time of the census. Other languages used at work on a regular basis are also collected.

Census: 2001 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years and over, excluding institutional residents, who worked since January 1, 2000.

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 48

Responses: See Figure 9.

Remarks: This question is being asked for the first time in 2001. Instructions from the *2001 Census Guide* were as follows:

Part (a)

For persons whose job requires mostly dealing with customers, clients or peers, report the language used most often.

For persons whose job requires mostly writing, report the language written most often.

For persons who are deaf, hard of hearing or who have a speech disability, report a sign language if it is used most often at work.

Report **only languages used** in performing a job or a major task.

Report two languages only if they are used **equally** often.

Do **not** report a language used only during coffee, lunch or other rest breaks.

Part (b)

Report any other languages that this person may use on a regular basis in performing a job or a major task, though not as often as the main language reported in part (a).

Do **not** report a language used only during coffee, lunch or other rest breaks.

Appendix G provides a list of the non-official languages released in 2001.

Language: *Mother Tongue***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the first language learned at home in childhood and still understood by the individual at the time of the census.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for: Total population

Question Nos.: Direct variable: Question 7 of the short form and Question 16 of the long form

Responses: See Figures 9, 9A, 9B and 9C.

Remarks: Mother tongue is the only language question asked of the entire population. On the long form, four language questions were asked consecutively of a 20% sample of the population. The question on mother tongue appeared after the questions on language knowledge and the question on home language. This is the same as in 1996 and 1991.

In the wording of the question on mother tongue, the expression “at home” was added to specify the context in which the individual learned the language. Only the two official languages, English and French, appear on the questionnaire. Other languages could be written in the space provided. This is the same as in 1996 and 1991. In previous censuses, the most frequently occurring non-official languages were listed on the questionnaire.

In 1996 and 2001, only the occurrence of a write-in response, and not the specific languages, was captured from the short form. Detailed information about mother tongue will still be provided for the 20% sample population who received the long form.

To facilitate the task of respondents, an instruction which appeared in the *1986 Census Guide* was added to the questionnaire in 1991, where it remained in 1996 and 2001. The instruction reads as follows: “If this person no longer understands the first language learned, indicate the second language learned.”

Furthermore, the following instructions were provided to respondents in the *2001 Census Guide*:

For a person who learned two languages at the same time in early childhood, report the language this person spoke most often **at home** before starting school. Report two languages only if they were used equally often and are still understood by this person.

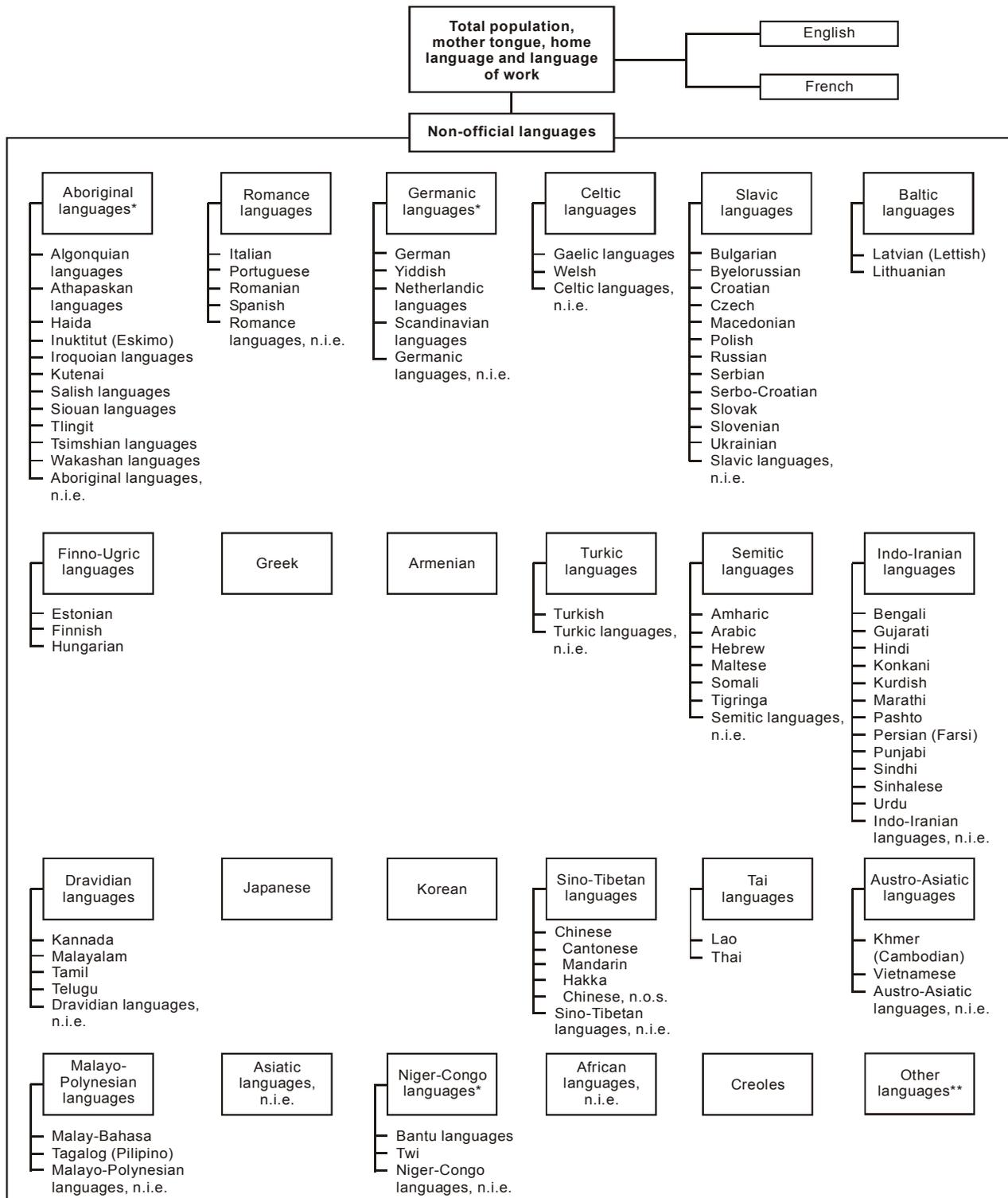
For a child who has not yet learned to speak:

- report the language spoken most often to this child at home. Report two languages only if both languages are spoken equally often so that the child learns both languages at the same time.

On the French version of all census forms, for all questions in the language module where there is a choice of response available, the order in which the choices appear was modified since 1996 in order to give precedence to the category “French”. The questions on knowledge of official languages and non-official languages also reflect this change in the actual wording of the question(s).

For comparability purposes, Appendix G provides a list of languages released in 1991, 1996 and 2001.

Figure 9. Mother Tongue, Home Language, Language of Work and Knowledge of Non-official Languages



n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

* For a detailed breakdown of Aboriginal, Germanic and Niger-Congo languages, see Figures 9A, 9B and 9C on the following page.

** For knowledge of non-official languages, a category will be added for non-verbal languages.

Figure 9A. Aboriginal Languages

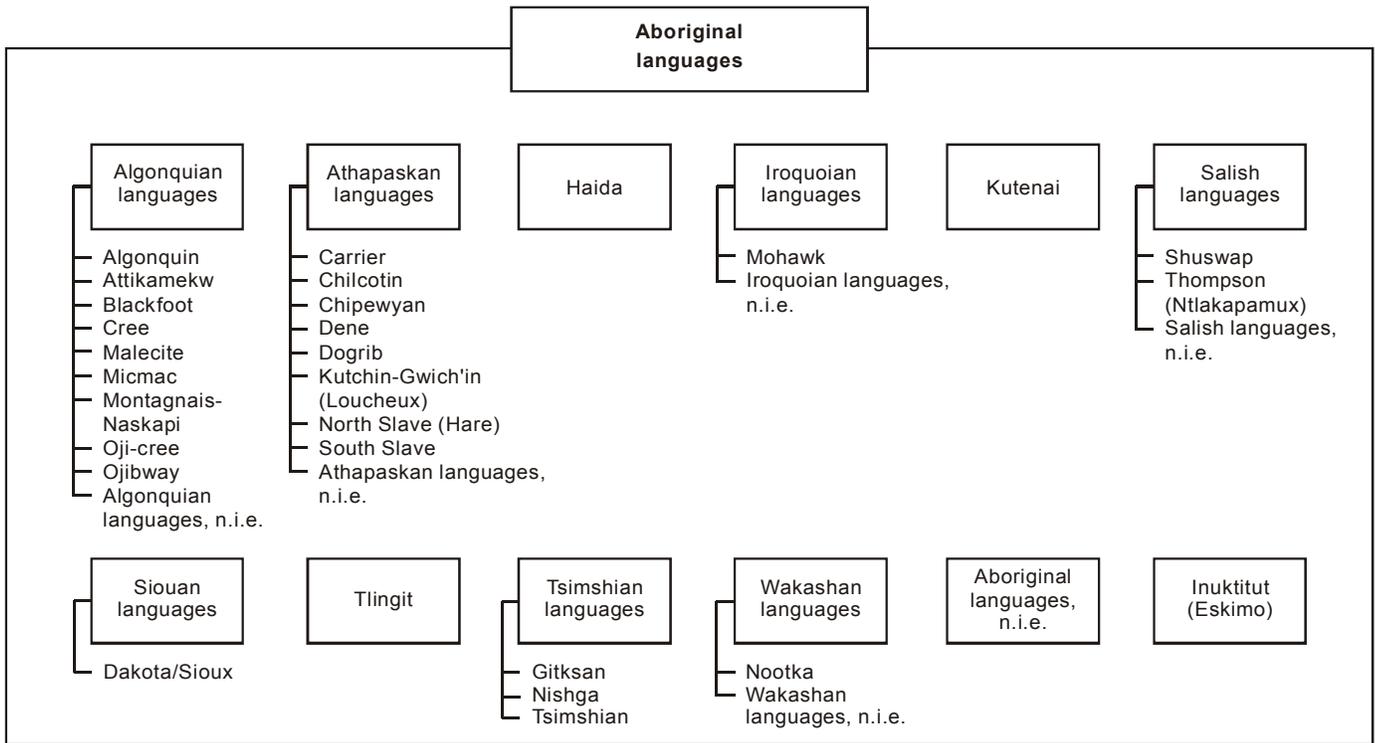


Figure 9B. Germanic Languages

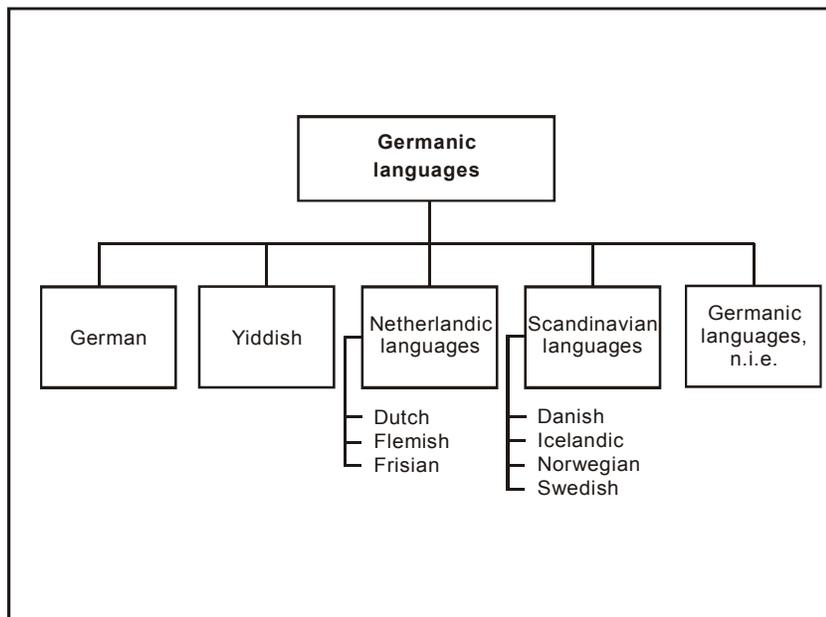
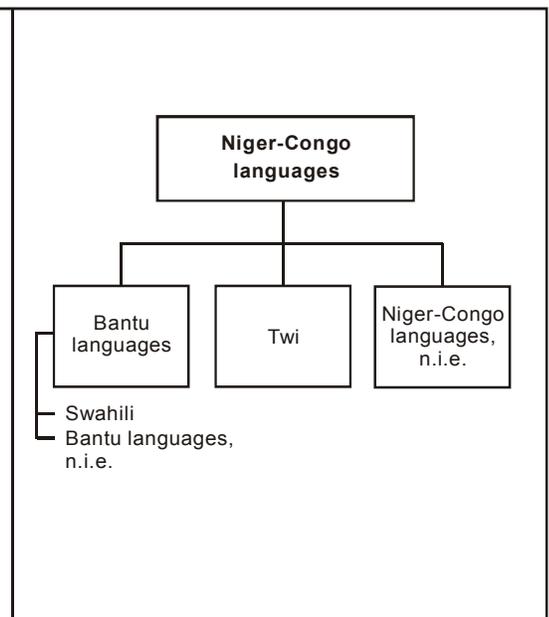


Figure 9C. Niger-Congo Languages



n.i.e. = not included elsewhere

Mobility: Census Agglomeration of Current Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

City with a population of 10,000 to 99,999 inhabitants where the enumerated person lived on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census agglomeration (CA) where the person's current residence is located on Census Day (2001). See the section on geography.

Census: Not applicable

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Mobility: Census Division of Current Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

County, regional county municipality, regional district, etc., where the enumerated person lived on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the usual census division (CD) where the person's current residence is located on Census Day (2001). See the section on geography.

Census: Not applicable

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Mobility: Census Metropolitan Area of Current Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

City with a population of 100,000 or more inhabitants where the enumerated person lived on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census metropolitan area (CMA) where the person's current residence is located on Census Day (2001). See the section on geography.

Census: Not applicable

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Mobility: Census Subdivision of Current Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

City or town where the enumerated person lived on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the usual census subdivision (CSD) where the person's current residence is located on Census Day (2001). See the section on geography.

Census: Not applicable

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Mobility: Province or Territory of Current Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Province or territory of Canada where the enumerated person lived on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the major political division of Canada where the person's current residence is located on Census Day (2001). For the corresponding province or territory of current residence, refer to the variable Province and Territory in the section on geography.

Census: Not applicable

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Mobility: Mobility 1: Census Division of Residence 1 Year Ago**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

County, regional county municipality, regional district, etc., where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 2000, one year before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual census division (CD) of residence on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 24

Responses: For the one-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence one year ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. The four-digit census division code is a substring of the seven-digit SGC code. The four-digit code corresponds to a two-digit province/territory code, followed by a two-digit census division code.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they “Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada” one year ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the place and province. The city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve corresponds to the census subdivision (CSD), and it belongs to only one census division (CD).

The CD of residence 1 year ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the census division of residence 1 year ago is the same as the current census division of residence. Census Division of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current CD of residence and a definition of CD, refer to the variable Census Division (CD) in the section on geography.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Figure 10. 2001 Census Mobility Variables

Mobility 1 Variables
<p>Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago Census Division of Residence 1 Year Ago Province or Territory of Residence 1 Year Ago Country of Residence 1 Year Ago <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 1 Year Ago Census Subdivision Type of Residence 1 Year Ago Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 1 Year Ago <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence

Mobility 5 Variables
<p>Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago Census Division of Residence 5 Years Ago Province or Territory of Residence 5 Years Ago Country of Residence 5 Years Ago <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 5 Years Ago Census Subdivision Type of Residence 5 Years Ago Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 5 Years Ago <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence

Mobility: Mobility 1: Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

City with a population of 100,000 or more inhabitants (census metropolitan area) or city with a population of 10,000 to 99,999 inhabitants (census agglomeration) where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 2000, one year before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census metropolitan area (CMA), census agglomeration (CA) or non-CMA/CA where the person usually resided on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This is a derived variable which provides a CMA/CA code for persons whose census subdivision (CSD) of residence one year ago is a CMA/CA component, or a value of zero (0) if it is not. For information on the linkage of CMA/CA names to codes and CSD components, refer to the *Standard Geographical Classification SGC 2001, Volumes I and II*, Catalogue Nos. 12-571-XPB and 12-572-XPB (March 2002).

As with census subdivisions (CSDs) and census divisions (CDs), the CMA/CA of residence 1 year ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

Migrants whose CSD of residence one year ago is within the same CMA/CA as the current CSD (based on 2001 Census boundaries) are classified as intra-CMA/CA migrants. Migrants whose current CSD of residence (on May 15, 2001) is in a different CMA/CA of residence from that of one year ago are classified as inter-CMA/CA migrants. Persons who resided in a CMA/CA one year ago (on May 15, 2000) with a current residence elsewhere (in a different CMA/CA or outside a CMA/CA) in Canada (on May 15 2001) are out-migrants from that CMA/CA. Persons whose current residence is within a CMA/CA (on May 15, 2001) with a place of residence one year ago elsewhere in Canada (in a CMA/CA or outside a CMA/CA) are in-migrants to that CMA/CA.

For the corresponding current CMA/CA of residence and a definition of CMA/CA, refer to the variable Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA) in the section on geography.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

City or town where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 2000, one year before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual municipality or census subdivision (CSD) of residence on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 24

Responses: For the one-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence one year ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. This code consists of two digits for the province/territory, followed by two digits for the census division, and ending with three digits for the census subdivision.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they "Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada" one year ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the municipality and province. The city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve corresponds to the census subdivision (CSD).

The CSD of residence 1 year ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the census subdivision of residence 1 year ago is the same as the current census subdivision of residence. Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current CSD of residence and a definition of CSD, refer to the variable Census Subdivision (CSD) in the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Census Subdivision Type of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census subdivision (CSD) type classification of the CSD (Indian reserve, village, town, township, city or municipality) where the person usually resided on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24, CSD type of 2001 Census classification

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The type indicates the municipal status of a census subdivision. Census subdivisions are classified into various types, according to official designations adopted by provincial or federal authorities. For a listing of CSD types, see Table 6 in the section on geography.

For more details on CSD type, see “Remarks” in the section on geography.

The CSD type of residence 1 year ago reflects the current 2001 Census boundaries and municipal status.

This variable will allow analysis of migration flows to and from CSDs of various types. For example, data on mobility and migration may be retrieved for Indian reserves, northern villages and hamlets.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Components of Migration (In- and Out-)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

People who moved from one city or town to another in Canada between May 15, 2000 and May 15, 2001 are “internal migrants”. People who came from another country between May 15, 2000 and May 15, 2001, to live in Canada, are “external migrants”. The components of migration divide “migrants” into three categories based on whether:

- they lived in the same province on May 15, 2001, as they did on May 15, 2000 (intraprovincial migrants);
- they lived in a different province on May 15, 2001, from the one they lived in on May 15, 2000 (interprovincial migrants);
- they lived outside Canada on May 15, 2000, one year before Census Day (external migrants).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Derived variable referring to the types of migrants.

Intraprovincial migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were living in a different census subdivision than the one at which they resided one year earlier, in the same province.

Interprovincial migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were living in a different census subdivision than the one at which they resided one year earlier, in a different province.

External migrants are movers who were living in Canada on Census Day, but who were living outside Canada one year earlier.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Different types of **internal migration** are derived based on various aggregations of census subdivisions (CSDs) (e.g. to census divisions, census metropolitan areas). **In-migration**, **out-migration** and **net internal migration** can be produced from the database.

In-migration is defined as a movement into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) from elsewhere in Canada, within the 12 months prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **in-migrants**.

Out-migration is defined as a movement out of a CSD (or CSD aggregation) to elsewhere in Canada, within the 12 months prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **out-migrants**.

Net internal migration refers to the number of in-migrants into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) minus the number of out-migrants from the same CSD (or CSD aggregation) within the 12 months prior to Census Day.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Country of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual country of residence on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 24

Responses: For the one-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the “country” of residence 1 year ago. This write-in response is subsequently converted to a three-digit code corresponding to the place of birth classification. Responses of a continent, such as Africa or Europe, were coded as continent.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they “Lived outside Canada” (i.e. external migrants) were asked to indicate the name of their country of residence 1 year earlier according to that country’s present boundaries. Country of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to internal migrants, non-migrants and non-movers.

There is no corresponding “current country of residence” variable since persons residing in Canada one year ago, but not on Census Day, are not counted.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Information indicating whether the person lived in the same residence on Census Day (May 15, 2001), as he or she did one year before (May 15, 2000). This means that we have “movers” and “non-movers”. There are different types of “movers”: people who moved within the same city or town (non-migrants), people who moved to a different city or town (internal migrants), and people who came from another country to live in Canada (external migrants).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the relationship between a person’s usual place of residence on Census Day and his or her usual place of residence one year earlier. A person is classified as a **non-mover** if no difference exists. Otherwise, a person is classified as a **mover** and this categorization is called Mobility Status (1 Year Ago). Within the category of movers, a further distinction is made between **non-migrants** and **migrants**; this difference is called **migration status**.

Non-movers are persons who, on Census Day, were living at the same address as the one at which they resided one year earlier.

Movers are persons who, on Census Day, were living at a different address than the one at which they resided one year earlier.

Non-migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were living at a different address, **but** in the same census subdivision (CSD) as the one they lived in one year earlier.

Migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were residing in a different CSD one year earlier (**internal migrants**) or who were living outside Canada one year earlier (**external migrants**).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable is derived from the following response categories: Lived at the same address as now; Lived at a different address, **but** in the same census subdivision (CSD) as now; Lived in a different CSD in Canada (respondent provides name of CSD [municipality] and province or territory); Lived outside Canada (respondent gives name of the country).

In 1991, unlike the Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago variable, place of residence one year ago was restricted to the provincial level. In 1996, the geographic coverage for the place of residence one year ago was identical to that for five years ago. For further details on migration status, see Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

For information on the historical comparability of Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago from 1961 on, see Appendix I.

With respect to **external migration, immigrants** – persons who were residing outside Canada one year earlier, but within Canada on Census Day – are counted. This is not to be confused with “landed immigrants”; see Immigration: Year of Immigration. When external migrants report their country of residence one year ago, they report the country based on current geographic boundaries.

Emigrants – persons residing in Canada one year ago, but not on Census Day – are not counted.

Different types of **internal migration** are derived based on various aggregations of CSDs (e.g. to census divisions, census metropolitan areas). **In-migration, out-migration, net internal migration, migration streams** and **origin-destination matrices** can be produced from the database.

In-migration is defined as a movement into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) from elsewhere in Canada, within the 12 months prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **in-migrants**.

Out-migration is defined as a movement out of a CSD (or CSD aggregation) to elsewhere in Canada, within the 12 months prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **out-migrants**.

Net internal migration refers to the number of in-migrants into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) minus the number of out-migrants from the same CSD (or CSD aggregation), within the 12 months prior to Census Day.

Migration stream refers to a body of migrants having a common CSD (or CSD aggregation) of origin and a common CSD (or CSD aggregation) of destination.

Origin-destination matrix refers to data on migrants, cross-classified by area of origin (CSD or CSD aggregation) and area of destination (CSD or CSD aggregation) to form a matrix of streams, or a set of pairs of streams, each pair representing movement in opposite directions.

The concept of “migrants” is defined at the CSD level. For geographic levels below the CSD, such as enumeration areas (EAs) and census tracts (CTs), the distinction between the migrant and non-migrant population refers to the corresponding CSD of the EA or CT. For example, migrants within a CT are those persons who moved from a different CSD, while non-migrants are those who moved within the same CSD, although they moved in from a different CT in the same CSD or moved within the same CT.

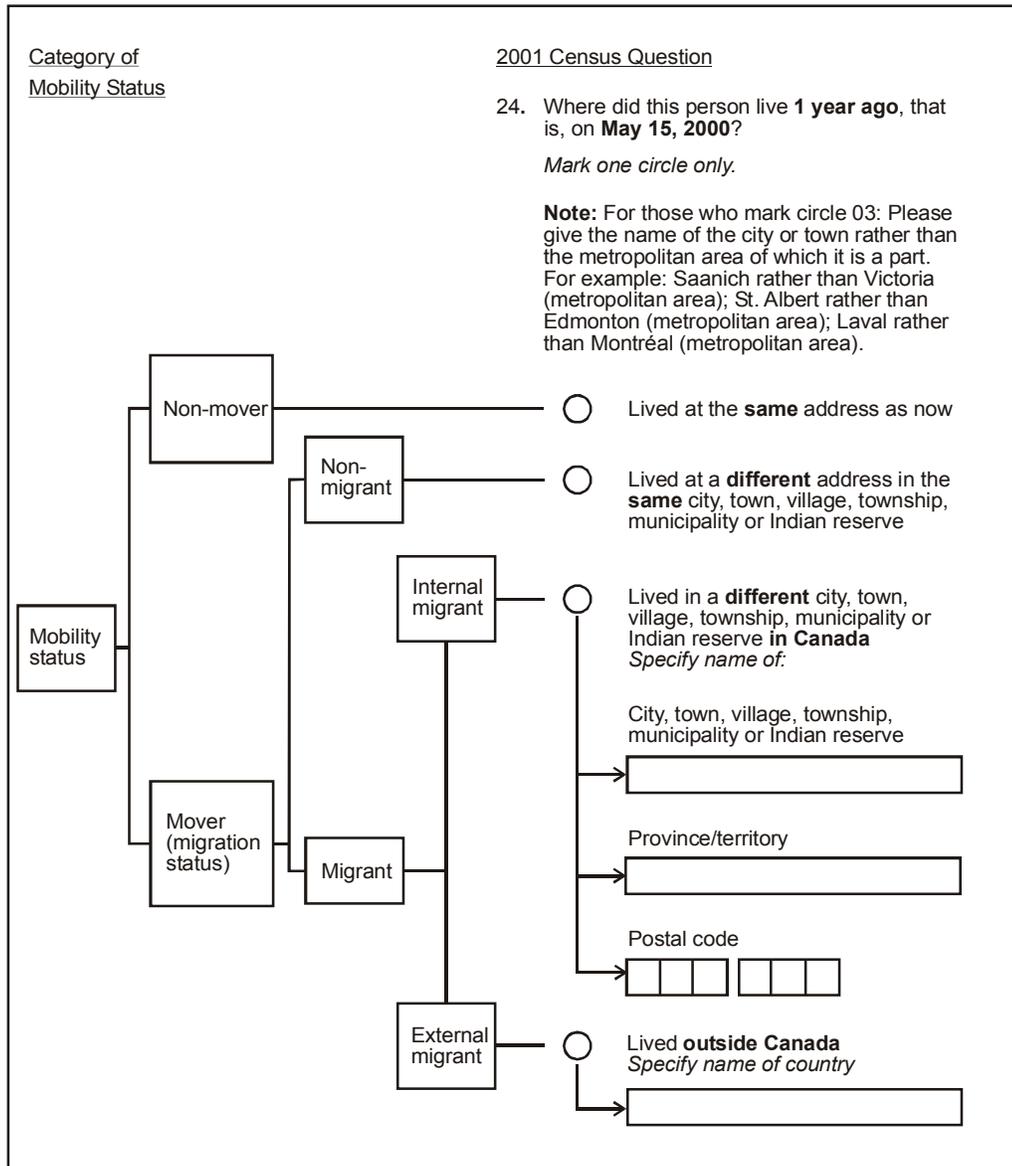
When tabulating the usual place of residence one year ago by current place of residence, all geographic areas reflect their 2001 boundaries, even when referred to as places of residence in 2000. This applies to all boundary changes between censuses (e.g. census metropolitan areas, census divisions and census subdivisions).

For further details, see the following Mobility 1 variables: Census Division of Residence 1 Year Ago, Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 1 Year Ago, Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago, Census Subdivision Type of Residence 1 Year Ago, Country of Residence 1 Year Ago, Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago, Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence, Province or Territory of Residence 1 Year Ago and Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 1 Year Ago. See also Figure 10 and the section on geography for corresponding current places (e.g. province and census division) of residence and geographic definitions.

It should be noted that data are not published for all possible mobility and migration classifications, but are available upon special request, subject to confidentiality constraints.

The reader is directed to Figure 11, where the relationship between the 2001 Census question on place of residence 1 year ago and the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) conceptual framework is illustrated.

Figure 11. Relationship Between the Category of Mobility Status and the 2001 Census Question on Place of Residence 1 Year Ago



Mobility: Mobility 1: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the current population of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24, population counts

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 population size of the census subdivision where the person usually resided one year ago on May 15, 2000.

The size of the CSD is based on the 2001 Census population. It is possible to have CSDs where persons resided one year ago with zero population in 2001.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the CSD of residence 1 year ago is the same as the current CSD of residence. Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For a definition of Census Subdivision (CSD), refer to the section on geography.

See also the corresponding variable Mobility 1: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence, the "Remarks" under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the 2001 population of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24, population counts

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 population size of the census subdivision where the person currently resides on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Some CSD population sizes are zero.

For a definition of Census Subdivision (CSD), refer to the section on geography.

See also the corresponding variable Mobility 1: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 1 Year Ago, the "Remarks" under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Province or Territory of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual province or territory of residence on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 24

Responses: For the one-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence one year ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. The two-digit province/territory code is a substring of the seven-digit SGC code.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they "Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada" one year ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the municipality and province.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the province or territory of residence 1 year ago is the same as the current province or territory of residence. Province/Territory of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current province or territory of residence, refer to the variable Province or Territory in the section on geography.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 1: Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 1 Year Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the rural or urban classification of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (1 Year Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 1 year of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 24, rural/urban classification

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 rural or urban classification of the CSD where the person usually resided on May 15, 2000, one year prior to Census Day.

The assignment of either rural or urban place of residence one year ago is based on the 2001 rural/urban classification of the CSD of residence 1 year ago. While the majority of CSDs are classified as **either** rural **or** urban, some CSDs have mixed rural/urban components. In these cases, rural or urban place of residence one year ago is assigned proportionately to migrants according to the 2001 ratio of rural to urban population of the “mixed” CSD that they lived in one year ago.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the CSD of residence 1 year ago is the same as the current CSD of residence. Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 1 Year Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For a definition of Rural Area (RA) and Urban Area (UA), see the section on geography.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 1: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 1 Year Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Census Division of Residence 5 Years Ago**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

County, regional county municipality, regional district, etc., where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 1996, five years before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual census division (CD) of residence on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 25

Responses: For the five-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence five years ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. The four-digit census division code is a substring of the seven-digit SGC code. The four-digit code corresponds to a two-digit province/territory code, followed by a two-digit census division code.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they "Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada" five years ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the place and province. The city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve corresponds to the census subdivision (CSD), and it belongs to only one census division (CD).

The CD of residence 5 years ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the census division of residence 5 years ago is the same as the current census division of residence. Census Division of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current CD of residence and a definition of CD, refer to the variable Census Division (CD) in the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

City with a population of 100,000 or more inhabitants (census metropolitan area) or city with a population of 10,000 to 99,999 inhabitants (census agglomeration) where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 1996, five years before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census metropolitan area (CMA), census agglomeration (CA) or non-CMA/CA where the person usually resided on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This is a derived variable which provides a CMA/CA code for persons whose census subdivision (CSD) of residence five years ago is a CMA/CA component, or a value of zero (0) if it is not. For information on the linkage of CMA/CA names to codes and CSD components, refer to the *Standard Geographical Classification SGC 2001, Volumes I and II*, Catalogue Nos. 12-571-XPB and 12-572-XPB (March 2002).

As with census subdivisions (CSDs) and census divisions (CDs), the CMA/CA of residence 5 years ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

Migrants whose CSD of residence five years ago is within the same CMA/CA as the current CSD (based on 2001 Census boundaries) are classified as intra-CMA/CA migrants. Migrants whose current CSD of residence (on May 15, 2001) is in a different CMA/CA of residence from that of five years ago are classified as inter-CMA/CA migrants. Persons who resided in a CMA/CA five years ago (on May 15, 1996) with a current residence elsewhere (in a different CMA/CA or outside a CMA/CA) in Canada (on May 15, 2001) are out-migrants from that CMA/CA. Persons whose current residence is within a CMA/CA (on May 15, 2001) with a place of residence five years ago elsewhere in Canada (in a CMA/CA or outside a CMA/CA) are in-migrants to that CMA/CA.

For the corresponding current CMA/CA of residence and a definition of CMA/CA, refer to the variable Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA) in the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago
Part A – Plain Language Definition

City or town where the enumerated person lived on May 15, 1996, five years before Census Day.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual municipality or census subdivision (CSD) of residence on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 25

Responses: For the five-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence five years ago. This write-in response is subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. This code consists of two digits for the province/territory, followed by two digits for the census division, and ending with three digits for the census subdivision.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they "Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada" five years ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the municipality and province. The city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve corresponds to the census subdivision (CSD).

The CSD of residence 5 years ago reflects the 2001 Census boundaries.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the census subdivision of residence 5 years ago is the same as the current census subdivision of residence. Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current CSD of residence and a definition of CSD, refer to the variable Census Subdivision (CSD) in the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Census Subdivision Type of Residence 5 Years Ago
Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the census subdivision (CSD) type classification of the CSD (Indian reserve, village, town, township, city or municipality) where the person usually resided on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25, CSD type of 2001 Census classification

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The type indicates the municipal status of a census subdivision. Census subdivisions are classified into various types, according to official designations adopted by provincial or federal authorities. For a listing of CSD types, see Table 6 in the section on geography.

For more details on CSD type, see “Remarks” in the section on geography.

The CSD type of residence 5 years ago reflects the current 2001 Census boundaries and municipal status.

This variable will allow analysis of migration flows to and from CSDs of various types. For example, data on mobility and migration may be retrieved for Indian reserves, northern villages and hamlets.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Components of Migration (In- and Out-)

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

People who moved from one city or town to another in Canada between May 15, 1996 and May 15, 2001 are “internal migrants”. People who came from another country between May 15, 1996 and May 15, 2001, to live in Canada, are “external migrants”. The components of migration divide “migrants” into three categories based on whether:

- they lived in the same province on May 15, 2001, as they did on May 15, 1996 (intraprovincial migrants);
- they lived in a different province on May 15, 2001, from the one they lived in on May 15, 1996 (interprovincial migrants);
- they lived outside Canada on May 15, 1996, five years before Census Day (external migrants).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Derived variable referring to the types of migrants.

Intraprovincial migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were living in a different census subdivision than the one in which they resided five years earlier, in the same province.

Interprovincial migrants are movers who, on Census Day were living in a different census subdivision than the one in which they resided five years earlier, in a different province.

External migrants are movers who were living in Canada on Census Day, but who were living outside Canada five years earlier.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Different types of **internal migration** are derived based on various aggregations of CSDs (e.g. to CDs, CMAs). **In-migration**, **out-migration** and **net internal migration** can be produced from the database.

In-migration is defined as a movement into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) from elsewhere in Canada, within the five years prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **in-migrants**.

Out-migration is defined as a movement out of a CSD (or CSD aggregation) to elsewhere in Canada, within the five years prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **out-migrants**.

Net internal migration refers to the number of in-migrants into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) minus the number of out-migrants from the same CSD (or CSD aggregation), within the five years prior to Census Day.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Country of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual country of residence on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 25

Responses: For the five-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the “country” of residence five years ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a three-digit code corresponding to the place of birth classification. Responses of a continent, such as Africa or Europe, were coded as continent.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they “Lived outside Canada” (i.e. external migrants) were asked to indicate the name of their country of residence five years earlier according to that country’s present boundaries. Country of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to internal migrants, non-migrants and non-movers.

There is no corresponding “current country of residence” variable since persons residing in Canada five years ago, but not on Census Day, are not counted.

See also “Remarks” under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Information indicating whether the person lived in the same residence on Census Day (May 15, 2001), as he or she did five years before (May 15, 1996). This means that we have “movers” and “non-movers”. There are different types of “movers”: people who moved within the same city or town (non-migrants), people who moved to a different city or town (internal migrants), and people who came from another country to live in Canada (external migrants).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the relationship between a person’s usual place of residence on Census Day and his or her usual place of residence five years earlier. A person is classified as a **non-mover** if no difference exists. Otherwise, a person is classified as a **mover** and this categorization is called Mobility Status (5 Years Ago). Within the movers category, a further distinction is made between **non-migrants** and **migrants**; this difference is called **migration status**.

Non-movers are persons who, on Census Day, were living at the same address as the one at which they resided five years earlier.

Movers are persons who, on Census Day, were living at a different address than the one at which they resided five years earlier.

Non-migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were living at a different address, **but** in the same census subdivision (CSD) as the one they lived in five years earlier.

Migrants are movers who, on Census Day, were residing in a different CSD five years earlier (**internal migrants**) or who were living outside Canada five years earlier (**external migrants**).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable is derived from the following response categories: Lived at the same address as now; Lived at a different address, **but** in the same census subdivision (CSD) as now; Lived in a different CSD in Canada (respondent provides name of CSD [municipality] and province or territory); Lived outside Canada (respondent gives name of the country).

For information on historical comparability of Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago from 1961 on, see Appendix I.

With respect to **external migration, immigrants** – persons who were residing outside Canada five years earlier, but within Canada on Census Day – are counted. This is not to be confused with “landed immigrants”; see Immigration: Year of Immigration. When external migrants report their country of residence five years ago, they report the country based on current geographic boundaries.

Emigrants – persons residing in Canada five years ago, but not on Census Day – are not counted.

Different types of **internal migration** are derived based on various aggregations of CSDs (e.g. to CDs, CMAs). **In-migration, out-migration, net internal migration, migration streams** and **origin-destination matrices** can be produced from the database.

In-migration is defined as a movement into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) from elsewhere in Canada, within the five years prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **in-migrants**.

Out-migration is defined as a movement out of a CSD (or CSD aggregation) to elsewhere in Canada, within the five years prior to Census Day. Persons who made such a move are called **out-migrants**.

Net internal migration refers to the number of in-migrants into a CSD (or CSD aggregation) minus the number of out-migrants from the same CSD (or CSD aggregation), within the five years prior to Census Day.

Migration stream refers to a body of migrants having a common CSD (or CSD aggregation) of origin and a common CSD (or CSD aggregation) of destination.

Origin-destination matrix refers to data on migrants, cross-classified by area of origin (CSD or CSD aggregation) and area of destination (CSD or CSD aggregation) to form a matrix of streams, or a set of pairs of streams, each pair representing movement in opposite directions.

The concept of “migrants” is defined at the CSD level. For geographic levels below the CSD, such as enumeration areas (EAs) and census tracts (CTs), the distinction between the migrant and non-migrant population refers to the corresponding CSD of the EA or CT. For example, migrants within a CT are those persons who moved from a different CSD, while non-migrants are those who moved within the same CSD, although they moved in from a different CT in the same CSD or moved within the same CT.

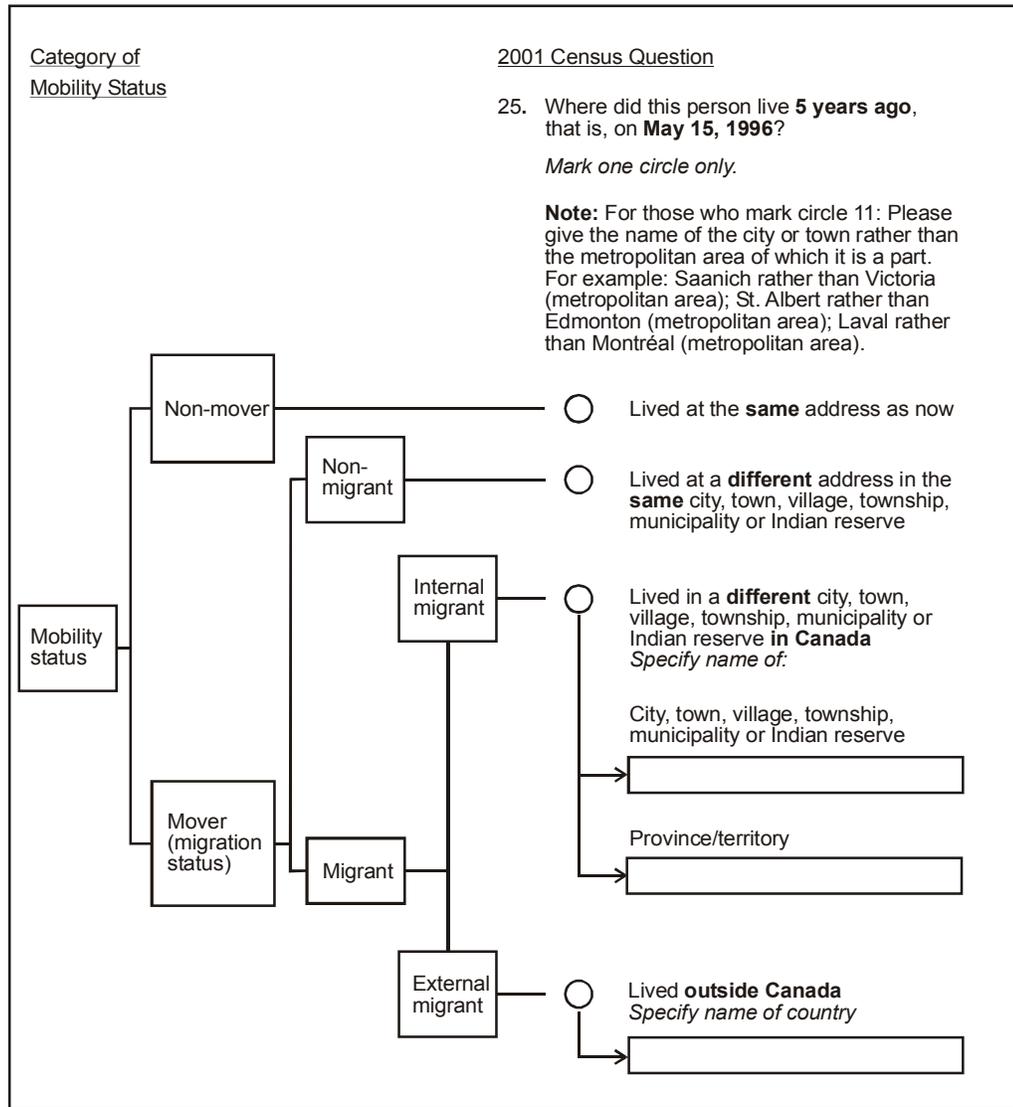
When tabulating usual place of residence five years ago by current place of residence, all geographic areas reflect their 2001 boundaries, even when referred to as places of residence in 1996. This applies to all boundary changes between censuses (e.g. census metropolitan areas, census divisions and census subdivisions).

For further details, see the following Mobility 5 variables: Census Division of Residence 5 Years Ago, Census Metropolitan Area or Census Agglomeration of Residence 5 Years Ago, Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago, Census Subdivision Type of Residence 5 Years Ago, Country of Residence 5 Years Ago, Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago, Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence, Province or Territory of Residence 5 Years Ago and Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 5 Years Ago. See also Figure 10 and the section on geography for corresponding current places (e.g. province and census division) of residence and geographic definitions.

It should be noted that data are not published for all possible mobility and migration classifications, but are available upon special request, subject to confidentiality constraints.

The reader is directed to Figure 12, where the relationship between the 2001 Census question on place of residence 5 years earlier and the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) conceptual framework is illustrated.

Figure 12. Relationship Between the Category of Mobility Status and the 2001 Census Question on Place of Residence 5 Years Ago



Mobility: Mobility 5: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the current population of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25, population counts

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 population size of the census subdivision where the person usually resided five years ago on May 15, 1996.

The size of the CSD is based on the 2001 Census population. It is possible to have CSDs where persons resided five years ago with zero population in 2001.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the CSD of residence 5 years ago is the same as the current CSD of residence. Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For a definition of Census Subdivision (CSD), refer to the section on geography.

See also the corresponding variable Mobility 5: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence, the "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Population Size of Current Census Subdivision of Residence**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the 2001 population of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25, population counts

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 population size of the census subdivision where the person currently resides on Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Some CSD population sizes are zero.

In censuses previous to 1986, population size was grouped into size categories.

For a definition of Census Subdivision (CSD), refer to the section on geography.

See also the corresponding variable Mobility 5: Population Size of Census Subdivision of Residence 5 Years Ago, the "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Province or Territory of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person's usual province or territory of residence on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 25

Responses: For the five-year ago mobility question, respondents were asked to write the name of the "municipality and province" of residence five years ago. This write-in response has been subsequently converted to a seven-digit code according to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) – see the section on geography. The two-digit province/territory code is a substring of the seven-digit SGC code.

Remarks: Respondents who indicated that they "Lived in a different city, town, village, township, municipality or Indian reserve in Canada" five years ago (i.e. internal migrants) provided the name of the municipality and province.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the province or territory of residence 5 years ago is the same as the current province or territory of residence. Province/Territory of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For the corresponding current province or territory of residence, refer to the variable Province or Territory in the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Mobility: Mobility 5: Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 5 Years Ago

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the rural or urban classification of the municipality or census subdivision (CSD) where the person usually resided on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day. This concept applies to the Mobility Status (5 Years Ago) subuniverse only.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadians (military and government personnel) in households outside Canada

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 25, rural/urban classification

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This derived variable refers to the 2001 rural or urban classification of the CSD where the person usually resided on May 15, 1996, five years prior to Census Day.

The assignment of either rural or urban place of residence five years ago is based on the 2001 rural/urban classification of the CSD of residence 5 years ago. While the majority of CSDs are classified as **either** rural **or** urban, some CSDs have mixed rural/urban components. In these cases, rural or urban place of residence five years ago is assigned proportionately to migrants according to the 2001 ratio of rural to urban population of the "mixed" CSD in which they lived in five years ago.

For non-movers and non-migrants, the CSD of residence 5 years ago is the same as current CSD of residence. Rural/Urban Classification of Place of Residence 5 Years Ago is not applicable to external migrants.

For a definition of Rural Area (RA) and Urban Area (UA), see the section on geography.

See also "Remarks" under Mobility 5: Mobility Status – Place of Residence 5 Years Ago and Figure 10.

Place of Birth: *Father***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the country where the respondent's father was born.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 32 (a)

Responses: Born in Canada; Born outside Canada – Specify country

Place of birth of father outside Canada is a write-in response. See Appendix J for places of birth collected in the 2001 Census.

In 2001, a write-in space for country of birth was provided for those whose father was born outside Canada. Those whose father was born in Canada were instructed to mark the mark-in circle "Born in Canada".

Remarks: Respondents were asked to indicate the place of birth of their father according to the boundaries in existence on Census Day, May 15, 2001.

A question on the birthplace of parents was last asked in the 1971 Census.

Place of Birth: *Generation Status*

New – February 19, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Generation status of the respondent, i.e. "1st", "2nd" or "3rd +" generation, refers to whether the respondent or the respondent's parents were born in or outside Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 9 and 32

Responses: Born in Canada – Specify province or territory; Born outside Canada – Specify country

Place of birth of parents outside Canada is a write-in response. See Appendix J for places of birth collected in the 2001 Census.

In 2001, a write-in space for country of birth was provided for those whose parents were born outside Canada. Those whose parents were born in Canada were instructed to mark the mark-n circle "Born in Canada".

Remarks: Respondents were asked to indicate their place of birth, as well as the place of birth of their parents, according to the boundaries in existence on Census Day, May 15, 2001.

A question on the birthplace of parents was last asked in the 1971 Census.

Place of Birth: Mother

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the country where the respondent's mother was born.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 32 (b)

Responses: Born in Canada; Born outside Canada – Specify country

Place of birth of mother outside Canada is a write-in response. See Appendix J for places of birth collected in the 2001 Census.

In 2001, a write-in space for country of birth was provided for those whose mother was born outside Canada. Those whose mother was born in Canada were instructed to mark the mark-in circle "Born in Canada".

Remarks: Respondents were asked to indicate the place of birth of their mother according to the boundaries in existence on Census Day, May 15, 2001.

A question on the birthplace of parents was last asked in the 1971 Census.

Place of Birth: Respondent

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to specific provinces or territories for respondents who were born in Canada, or to specific countries if born outside Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 9

Responses: Born in Canada – Specify province or territory; Born outside Canada – Specify country
Place of birth, whether inside Canada or outside Canada, is a write-in response. See Appendix J for a comparison of places of birth collected in the 2001, 1996 and 1991 Censuses.

Remarks: Respondents were asked to indicate their place of birth according to the boundaries in existence on Census Day, May 15, 2001. For example, respondents born in an area which, at the time of their birth, was part of the Northwest Territories but which is now part of the territory of Nunavut were asked to write “Nunavut”.

The 2001 Census was the first time since the 1941 Census where the Canadian provinces and territories were specified in a write-in response as opposed to mark-in responses.

Population Group

Modified on February 19, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the population group to which the respondent belongs.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents and persons who reported “Yes” to Question 18 (Aboriginal Peoples)

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 19

Responses: Response categories included 11 mark-in circles and one write-in space. Respondents were asked to mark or specify one or more of the following:

- White
- Chinese
- South Asian (e.g., East Indian, Pakistani, Sri Lankan, etc.)
- Black
- Filipino
- Latin American
- Southeast Asian (e.g., Cambodian, Indonesian, Laotian, Vietnamese, etc.)
- Arab
- West Asian (e.g., Afghan, Iranian, etc.)
- Japanese
- Korean
- Other – Specify

Remarks: In 2001, a note on the census questionnaire informed respondents that this information is collected to support programs which promote equal opportunity for everyone to share in the social, cultural and economic life of Canada.

In addition, the *2001 Census Guide* provided the following instructions:

Population group should not be confused with citizenship or nationality.

For persons who belong to more than one group, mark all the circles that apply. Do **not** report “bi-racial” or “mixed” in the space provided.

Three of the population groups included on the 2001 Census questionnaire were followed by examples in parentheses. Examples were provided for only a few of the population groups to serve as guidelines and to help respondents who may be more familiar with one term instead of another (e.g. East Indian instead of South Asian, Vietnamese instead of Southeast Asian, Iranian instead of West Asian).

For further information, refer to the definition of Visible Minorities.

Presence of Children

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of children in private households by age groups.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample),* 1986 (1/5 sample),* 1981 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over in private households

Question No.: Not directly captured. This is a derived variable which resides on the census retrieval database.

Responses: The values for this variable are as follows:

No child present

At least one child under 2 years, none over 5 years

At least one child under 2 years, at least one child over 5 years

None under 2 years, at least one child 2-5 years, none over 5 years

None under 2 years, at least one child 2-5 years, at least one child over 5 years

None under 6 years, at least one child 6-14 years

None under 15 years, at least one child 15-24 years

None under 25 years, at least one child 25 years or older

Remarks: 1. The term “children” refers to blood, step- or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as to grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their

own sons and/or daughters, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, sons and daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s).

In the 2001 Census, several changes were made to the census family concepts. For additional information, see the Census Family Composition and Census Family Status definitions in the Family Universe.

2. Historically comparable tabulations containing data on presence of children and labour force activity dating back to the 1971 Census, for females 15 years and over in private households, are possible. Similar data are possible for males dating back to 1996. Contact census labour market analysts for further information.
- * In the 1981, 1986 and 1991 Censuses, this variable was derived only for females 15 years and over in private households. In the 1996 and 2001 Censuses, this variable was derived for both females and males 15 years and over in private households.

Relationship to Household Reference Person (Person 1)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the relationship of household members to the household reference person (Person 1). A person may be **related** to Person 1 through blood, marriage, common-law or adoption (e.g. spouse, common-law partner, son or daughter, father or mother) or **unrelated** (e.g. lodger, room-mate or employee).

Censuses: 2001,* 1996,* 1991, 1986, 1981,** 1976,*** 1971****

Reported for: Total population

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 6

Responses: Person 1

Related to Person 1 – spouse, opposite-sex common-law partner, same-sex common-law partner, son or daughter, father or mother, brother or sister, son-in-law or daughter-in-law, father-in-law or mother-in-law, brother-in-law or sister-in-law, grandfather or grandmother, grandchild, nephew or niece, cousin, uncle or aunt; other relatives of Person 1 (not identified elsewhere) and their spouses, opposite-sex and same-sex common-law partners, sons or daughters, or grandchildren

Unrelated to Person 1 – lodger, room-mate, employee, owner/manager, and their spouses, opposite-sex and same-sex common-law partners, sons or daughters, or grandchildren; Hutterite, Hutterite spouse, Hutterite son or daughter, Hutterite grandchild, institutional resident

- Remarks:**
- * In the 2001 Census, the write-in responses for Question 6 (Relationship to Person 1) on the Forms 2A and 3A (2A only in 1996) were not captured, but were classified as “other write-ins”. The write-in responses on Forms 2B, 2C, 2D and 3B (Forms 2B, 2C, 2D and 3 in 1996) were captured as reported by respondents. Unlike censuses prior to 1996, the published output on families will be produced from the sample database.
 - ** In the 1981 Census, the term used to identify the household reference person was changed from “**head of household**” to “**Person 1**”. Person 1 may be any one of the following:
 - either spouse in any married couple living in the dwelling;
 - either partner in a common-law relationship;
 - the parent, where one parent only lives with his or her child(ren) of any age. See the definition of Census Family in the Family Universe for changes to the concept of children.

If none of the above applies, any adult member of the household may be identified as Person 1.
 - *** In the 1976 Census, the head of household was defined as:
 - either the husband or the wife;
 - the parent (where there was one parent only), with never-married children;
 - any member of a group sharing a dwelling equally.
 - **** In the 1971 Census, the head of household was defined as:
 - the husband rather than the wife;
 - the parent (where there was one parent only), with unmarried children;
 - any member of a group sharing a dwelling equally.

Religion

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to specific religious denominations, groups or bodies, as well as to sects, cults, or other religiously defined communities or systems of belief.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 22

Responses: See Appendix L for the classification structure and its comparability to 1991 and to 1981.

Remarks: Respondents were instructed to report a specific denomination or group, even if they were not practising members of their group. For infants or children, respondents were instructed to report the denomination or group in which they will be raised. In most cases, this would normally be the religion of their parents (or guardians). Persons who had no connection or affiliation with any religious group or denomination were instructed to mark the circle "No religion". However, if respondents considered terms such as "atheist" or "agnostic" to be applicable to them, they were instructed to specify them in the write-in area of the question.

In 1991 and 2001, responses to the religion questions were in the form of a write-in, with a mark-in circle for "No religion". This format may result in slight historical differences when comparing data on religion with censuses prior to 1991.

Schooling: Degree in Medicine, Dentistry, Veterinary Medicine or Optometry

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Document showing that the person has completed a program of study in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry, no matter what other advanced degrees (that is, master's degrees or doctorates other than honorary doctorates) he or she has.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the possession of a degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry, regardless of whether higher educational qualifications (i.e. master's or earned doctorate degrees) were held or not.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 30, cells 08, 09 and 10

Responses: No medical degree; Medical degree (M.D., D.D.S., D.M.D., D.V.M., O.D.); Medical and master's degrees; Medical and earned doctorate degrees

Remarks: This derived variable complements the Schooling: Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma variable by providing additional counts of medical degrees for persons with both medical and either master's or earned doctorate degrees. Thus, this variable provides a more complete measure of the total medical resources in Canada than that provided by the counts in the derived variable Schooling: Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma. The additional counts for persons with either a master's and a medical degree, or an earned doctorate and a medical degree would, for example, apply to persons in occupations such as in natural science or medical engineering research, and also university teaching.

When cross-classifying this variable with the Schooling: Major Field of Study (MFS) variable, it should be noted that, for the medical and master's degree combination, the major field relates to the medical degree. However, for the medical and earned doctorate combination, the major field relates to the doctorate.

Schooling: Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Information indicating the person's most advanced degree, certificate or diploma.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the highest degree, certificate or diploma obtained.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample)*, 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample),** 1971 (1/3 sample),*** 1961****

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 30

Responses: No degree, certificate or diploma; Secondary (high) school graduation certificate or equivalent; Trades certificate or diploma; College certificate or diploma; University certificate or diploma **below** bachelor level; Bachelor's degree; University certificate or diploma **above** bachelor level; Degree in medicine, dentistry, veterinary medicine or optometry; Master's degree; Earned doctorate

Remarks: This is a derived variable obtained from the educational qualifications question, which asked for **all** degrees, certificates or diplomas to be reported. Although the sequence is more or less hierarchical, it is nonetheless a general rather than an absolute gradient measure of academic achievement.

The following qualifications are to be noted: (a) a secondary (high) school graduation certificate is classified as junior or senior matriculation, general or technical-commercial; (b) a trades certificate or diploma is obtained through apprenticeship (journeyman's) training and/or in-school training in trades-level vocational and pre-vocational courses at community colleges, institutes of technology, and similar institutions where the minimum entrance requirement was less than secondary (high) school, junior or senior matriculation, or its equivalent; (c) a college certificate or diploma is obtained in a community college (both through transfer and semi-professional career programs), a CEGEP (both general and professional), an institute of technology, or any other non-degree-granting educational institution. Also included in this category are teaching certificates awarded by provincial departments of education, with the exception of teachers' qualifications at the bachelor level obtained at university-affiliated faculties of education; (d) university certificates or diplomas are normally connected with professional associations in fields such as accounting, banking or insurance. If a bachelor's degree is a normal prerequisite for a university certificate or diploma course, then the latter is classified as a university certificate above the bachelor level.

* Prior to 2001, the college sector was referred to as the "postsecondary non-university sector". The term was changed to "college" to reflect more accurately the majority of the institutions in this sector, which includes non-degree-granting institutions such as community colleges, CEGEPs, private business colleges and technical institutes.

** In 1976, "trades certificate or diploma" and "university certificate or diploma **above** bachelor level" were not included.

*** In 1971, this question related only to university degrees, certificates or diplomas. The responses in 1971 were: No university degree, certificate or diploma; University certificate or diploma (below bachelor level); Bachelor's degree; First professional degree; Master's or equivalent, or earned doctorate.

**** In 1961, "University degree" only was obtained without classification by type.

Schooling: Highest Grade of Elementary or Secondary Schooling

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Final year of elementary school or secondary (high) school that the person attended (whether completed or not), no matter what other education he or she has.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the highest grade or year of elementary or secondary (high) school **attended** according to the province where the education was obtained, or in the event this education was received outside Canada, the equivalent level of schooling according to the province or territory of residence.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample),* 1971 (1/3 sample),** 1961***

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 26

Responses: Never attended school or attended kindergarten only **OR** highest grade or year (1 to 13) of secondary and/or elementary school

Remarks: Persons who were enrolled at the time of the census reported the grade or year they were attending. Levels of schooling as expressed in grades (or years) vary from one province or territory to another and also over the years.

If elementary or secondary schooling was obtained by private instruction, correspondence or part-time attendance at class, then the equivalent grade or year in the regular day-time program was reported. Persons in ungraded or "subject promotion" school settings had the option of reporting an estimated grade level or the number of actual years they had been attending school.

* In 1976, the highest level of secondary schooling in the province of Quebec was reported as Grade 12, in contrast to Grade 11 in 1981 and 1986. Also, in 1976 as well as in 1971 and 1961, "no schooling" and "kindergarten" were reported as separate categories.

** In 1971, the sample data for the elementary or secondary level were reported for the total population 5 years of age and over.

*** In 1961, the data were also reported for the total population 5 years of age and over, and grades or years on the enumeration documents were shown as: no schooling; kindergarten; elementary 1 to 4; elementary 5+; and secondary 1; 2; 3; 4; 5.

Schooling: Highest Level of Schooling

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the highest grade or year of elementary or secondary (high) school attended, or to the highest year of university or college education completed. University education is considered to be a higher level of schooling than college education. Also, the attainment of a degree, certificate or diploma is considered to be at a higher level than years completed or attended without an educational qualification.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample)*, 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample),** 1971 (1/3 sample),** 1961***

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 26, 27, 28 and 30

Responses: The highest level of schooling is depicted in the 2001 Census output in a variety of forms. The general listing is as follows:

Elementary-secondary only

Never attended school or attended kindergarten only

Grades 1-4

Grades 5-8

Grades 9-10

Grades 11-13

Secondary (high) school graduation certificate

Trades certificate or diploma

College education only

Without college or trades certificate or diploma

With trades certificate or diploma

With college certificate or diploma

University

University, without university degree

Without college education

Without certificate, diploma or degree

With trades certificate or diploma

With university certificate or diploma below bachelor level

With college education

Without certificate, diploma or degree

With trades certificate or diploma

With college certificate or diploma

With university certificate or diploma below bachelor level

University, with university degree
 With bachelor or first professional degree
 With university certificate above bachelor level
 With master's degree
 With earned doctorate

Remarks: This variable, described as the **Highest Level of Schooling**, implies a hierarchy of educational attainment; however, in a number of instances, the levels are not entirely hierarchical. For example, the placement of "Trades certificate or diploma" as a higher level of schooling than "Secondary (high) school graduation certificate" is justified on the basis of the fact that this educational qualification is obtained primarily for employment/occupational purposes by persons who were, on the whole, beyond the secondary (high) school age level at the time. However, a sizeable proportion of this group did not obtain their secondary (high) school graduation certificate which would, strictly speaking, be "out of line" in the hierarchy. In any event, placing this whole category below secondary would not necessarily resolve the problem, since at least some part of this group does have secondary (high) school graduation. It is for this reason that the data for trades (and college) certificates are separately disaggregated in the variable Schooling: Trades and College Certificate or Diploma.

Another example in which the hierarchical element of this variable would be slightly askew is in the cases of persons who have completed both university and college education. A person who attended university and college, but possessed no degrees, certificates or diplomas, would nonetheless be situated at a "higher" level than a person who has a college education **only**, but with a certificate or diploma.

- * Prior to 2001, the college sector was referred to as the "postsecondary non-university sector". The term was changed to "college" to reflect more accurately the majority of the institutions in this sector, which includes non-degree-granting institutions such as community colleges, CEGEPs, private business colleges and technical institutes.
- ** In 1976 and 1971, this variable was denoted as "Level of Schooling". In 1971, it was defined as the "highest grade or year of elementary, secondary school or university ever attended and whether or not additional training in the form of vocational or postsecondary non-university was present". In 1976, the definition was slightly revised to emphasize **completion** (rather than attendance) beyond the secondary level: "Level of schooling" referred to the highest grade or year of elementary/secondary school attended, or the highest year of postsecondary non-university or university completed by the person.
- *** In 1961, the elementary, secondary and university levels were combined directly in one question, and the question referred to the "highest grade or year of schooling ever **attended**", not necessarily completed. The variable itself was called "Highest Grade Attended".

**Schooling: Major Field of Study (MFS) –
Census Historical**

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Main subject area of the person's highest degree, certificate or diploma after high school. This refers to the subject in which the person obtained the most advanced degree, certificate or diploma that he or she holds at the postsecondary level.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the predominant discipline or area of learning or training of a person's highest postsecondary degree, certificate or diploma. The major field of study classification structure consists of 10 broad or major categories: educational, recreational and counselling services; fine and applied arts; humanities and related fields; social sciences and related fields; commerce, management and business administration; agricultural, biological, nutritional, and food sciences; engineering and applied sciences; applied science technologies and trades; health professions and related technologies; and mathematics, computer and physical sciences. This structure is, in turn, subdivided into over 100 "minor" classification categories and about 980 "unit" groups.

In the previous censuses, there were approximately 450 MFS codes. In 2001, there are over 900. This expansion was undertaken as a response to the adaptation by Statistics Canada of the U.S. Classification of Instructional Programs (or CIP) as the standard system for measuring Canada's educational output. The expanded code set will be used to create a concordance between the MFS and CIP. The major field of study data from the 2001 Census will use the 450 MFS codes, not the expanded set.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample) – vocational training and apprenticeship only

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with a postsecondary degree, certificate or diploma, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Coded variable: Question 31

Responses: See Appendix M for the classification structure.

Remarks: The classification structure of the MFS variable can be used either independently or in conjunction with the Schooling: Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma variable. When the latter is used with MFS, it should be noted that each of the postsecondary qualifications ranging from the trades certificate or diploma to the earned doctorate displays a differing pattern or distribution. Therefore, varying disaggregations of MFS can be employed based primarily on the numerical representativeness of unit groups within each level of qualification.

When the medical degree level of qualification is cross-classified with MFS, it is advisable to use the separate variable Schooling: Degree in Medicine, Dentistry, Veterinary Medicine or Optometry rather than the code value for highest degree. The reason for this is that the former variable indicates a medical degree regardless of whether a master's or earned doctorate was also held. This variable also shows persons with combined medical and earned doctorate degrees.

The “field of study” concept also incorporates the notion of the subfield or specialization. Respondents were instructed in the *2001 Census Guide* which accompanied the questionnaire to be as specific as possible in indicating a subfield or subcategory of specialization within a broad discipline or area of training, especially for graduate studies or other advanced training. The degree to which respondents answered according to this criterion is reflected in the frequency of counts for the MFS “unit” groups. In general, higher degrees of specialization tend to be reported for master’s, medical and earned doctorate degrees.

Schooling: Major Field of Study – Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP_MFS)

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The 2001 Census Major Field of Study variable has been expanded from its previous 450-code structure to over 900 codes. The majority of these additional codes represent instructional programs delineated in the U.S. Department of Education’s National Center for Education Statistics Classification of Instructional Programs (2000 edition or CIP_2000). CIP_2000 is a classification benchmark that serves to facilitate the comparison of data on educational stocks and flow between the three countries that are signatories to the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA) – the United States, Canada and Mexico. The expanded MFS code set will be used to create a concordance between the MFS and CIP. The major field of study data from the 2001 Census will continue to use the MFS 450-code structure.

Census: 2001 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with completed trades and postsecondary degrees, certificates or diplomas, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 31

Responses: The Classification of Instructional Programs (CIP-MFS) Concordance at the Major Field of Study Detailed Level is under development and will not be available for inclusion in the *2001 Census Dictionary*. It will be available from Statistics Canada at a later date, as part of the *2006 Census Dictionary*.

Remarks: The application of CIP_2000 to the 2001 Census MFS response data will be based on the final empirical weighted frequencies on the census database. The final determination of the classification code structure will be constrained by Statistics Canada’s data dissemination policies related to sampling variability and respondent confidentiality.

Schooling: Major Field of Study – International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED_MFS)

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

In November 1997, the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) presented a formal revision to their 1976 edition of the International Standard Classification of Education (ISCED 97). In light of this, the historical census MFS data classification, originally adapted from ISCED 76, was reformatted to allow for time-series analyses within the new ISCED structure. The ISCED has been designed as an instrument suitable for assembling, compiling and presenting educational statistics both within countries and internationally. In addition to the United Nations, the ISCED classification system is supported by other international agencies, such as the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) and the Statistical Office of the European Communities (EUROSTAT).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over with completed trades and postsecondary degrees, certificates or diplomas, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 31

Responses: The International Standard Classification of Education (1999 version) with Harmonized Major Field of Study Codes is under development and will not be available for inclusion in the *2001 Census Dictionary*. It will be available from Statistics Canada at a later date, as part of the *2006 Census Dictionary*.

Remarks: Since the introduction of the 1997 ISCED revision, further work on elaborating the classification has been undertaken by EUROSTAT in close cooperation with UNESCO and the OECD. The variable classification represents the latest revisions undertaken by EUROSTAT in December 1999, in which some 20 additional new codes appear, bringing the total number of unit codes to 80 (compared to 60 in the ISCED 97). This expansion has been conducted in such a fashion that the new structure can be “collapsed” back to the original 60-code structure. The harmonized ISCED_MFS classification represents statistically significant categories in Canada between 1986 and 2001. Modifications or additions to the ISCED_MFS can be undertaken in future applications.

Schooling: School Attendance**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to either full-time or part-time (day or evening) attendance at school, college or university during the nine-month period between September 2000 and May 15, 2001. Attendance is counted only for courses which could be used as credits towards a certificate, diploma or degree.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1976 (1/3 sample),* 1971 (1/3 sample),** 1961***

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 29

Responses: No, did not attend in the past nine months; Yes, full time; Yes, part time, day or evening

Remarks: Attendance is excluded for courses taken for leisure, recreation or personal interest. Attendance is considered to be full time if the person was taking 75% or more of the normal course load in the grade or year in which the person is registered. Short-term courses of six weeks or less taken during the day are considered to be part-time attendance. If the person attended both full time and part time during the reference period, then only full-time attendance is to be recorded.

- * A significant response error bias in the 1976 school attendance data renders any comparisons for secondary school attendance inappropriate, particularly in the 15-19 age group; however, 1976 estimates for university and postsecondary non-university attendance were not affected.
- ** In 1971, the term “school or university” was used rather than “educational institution” and the phrase “at any time” was not employed. Information on the kind of institution attended was not requested. This information was reported for the total population.
- *** In 1961, data for part-time attendance were not collected. The question was: “Since last September, did you attend school or university? Yes (any regular day-time attendance); No”. This information was reported for the total population. The 1961 concept of school attendance did not include attendance at such institutions as technical institutes, community colleges, teachers’ colleges, CEGEPs, schools of nursing, trade schools and business schools.

Schooling: *Secondary (High) School Graduation Certificate*

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Document showing that the person has graduated from high school or the equivalent, no matter what other degrees, certificates or diplomas he or she has.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the possession of a secondary (high) school graduation certificate or its equivalent, regardless of whether or not other educational qualifications were held.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 27, 28 and 30

Responses: Total
 Without high school graduation certificate
 Without further training
 With further training
 With trades certificate or diploma
 With college certificate or diploma
 With high school graduation certificate
 Without further training
 With further training

Remarks: This is a summary variable that was first published in 1986 Census output (see Table 7, Catalogue No. 93-110) and that essentially separates the population into those persons without and with a secondary (high) school graduation certificate or its equivalent. Further information is provided on whether further training was undertaken or not. This variable was derived using the Schooling: Trades and College Certificates or Diplomas variable in conjunction with the Schooling: Years of University and Schooling: Years of College Education variables. Persons who reported some years of university were assumed to have a secondary (high) school graduation certificate or its equivalent.

* This variable was not published in 1981, but can be reconstructed from the 1981 database in the form of special tabulations using standard algorithms.

Schooling: Total Years of Schooling

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Total number of years successfully completed at elementary school, high school, university and college.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total sum of the years (or grades) of schooling at the elementary, high school, university and college levels.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample),* 1976 (1/3 sample),* 1971 (1/3 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 26, 27 and 28

Responses: Single years 0 to 33 or more

Remarks: This variable is shown primarily in summary data aggregations (such as 0, 1-4, 5-8, 9-10, 11-13, 14-17 and 18 and more) and also in the form of second-order derivatives, such as average and median years of schooling.

* In the 1981, 1976 and 1971 Censuses, this variable was not published. However, the variable can be derived from the database using special tabulations.

Schooling: Trades and College Certificates or Diplomas

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Document showing that the person has graduated from a trades school or completed some college program, or both, no matter what other degrees, certificates or diplomas he or she has.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the possession of either a trades certificate or diploma, or college certificate or diploma, or both, regardless of whether other educational qualifications are held or not. This variable also indicates whether or not a secondary (high) school graduation certificate was reported.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)*

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 30, cells 02, 03 and 04

Responses: Neither trades nor college certificate; Trades certificate, without secondary (high school) certificate; College certificate, without secondary (high school) certificate; Both trades and college certificates, without secondary (high school) certificate; Trades certificate, with secondary (high school) certificate; College certificate, with secondary (high school) certificate; Both trades and college certificates, with secondary (high school) certificate

Remarks: This derived variable indicates all of the possible combinations of responses in conjunction with trades and college certificates or diplomas and of the presence or absence of the secondary (high) school graduation certificate. This information is very useful in indicating the possible overlap and the interrelations between the two areas.

A trades certificate is usually obtained through apprenticeship or journeyman's training over several years, in trade occupations such as welding, plumbing and carpentry; this may also be accompanied by periods of in-school training in trade schools, community colleges or other such institutions.

Alternatively, trades certificates may also be acquired exclusively through in-school (as opposed to on-the-job) training at trade or vocational schools, employment centres, or trades divisions of community colleges. A college certificate or diploma is obtained from institutions which do not grant degrees, such as nursing schools, community colleges, CEGEPs, institutes of technology or private business colleges.

* In 1971, a special series of questions and data were related to Apprenticeship and Vocational Training. Data for trades certificates for subsequent years are not directly comparable to the 1971 vocational course data, which were defined as full-time courses of three months' duration or longer. In addition, the 1971 data allowed for the distinction between apprenticeship and full-time vocational training, and indicated the length and the date of completion of the training.

Schooling: University Certificate Above Bachelor Level

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Document showing that the person has completed a university program higher than a bachelor's degree, no matter what other degrees, certificates or diplomas he or she has.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the possession of a university certificate or diploma above the bachelor level, regardless of whether other educational qualifications are held or not. Normally, this type of certificate is obtained following a first degree in the same field of study or following a master's or first professional degree.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 30, cell 07

Responses: No certificate or diploma above bachelor level; Certificate or diploma above bachelor level

Remarks: This derived variable provides a more complete count of all persons with university certificates above the bachelor level, regardless of what other qualifications were obtained. Diplomas or certificates obtained following a first degree in the same field of study (e.g. a diploma in education) are counted in the Schooling: Highest Degree, Certificate or Diploma variable. However, these types of certificates or diplomas are also granted following either a master's or first professional degree (e.g. in medicine). In these cases, the higher degrees take precedence in the highest degree variable, and no count is available for persons with these higher degrees **and** the university certificate **above** the bachelor level. Examples of such certificates can be found in university programs or courses in medical specializations, or in applied engineering and high technology areas.

Schooling: Years of College Education

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of years of education successfully completed at a school other than elementary school, high school or university. This includes, for example, years of education at community colleges or CEGEPs (Quebec general and professional colleges), private business colleges, trade schools and technical institutes.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total number of completed years (or less than one year of completed courses) of training at educational institutions which do not grant degrees and are not at the elementary or secondary (high) school level.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample)*, 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample),** 1976 (1/3 sample),*** 1971 (1/3 sample)****

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 28

Responses: None; Less than 1 year (of completed courses); 1 year; 2 years; 3 years; 4 years; 5 years; 6 years; 7 years; 8 years or more of completed courses

Remarks: Schooling in all institutions other than universities, or secondary (high) or elementary schools, is included here, whether or not these institutions require a secondary (high) school graduation certificate for entrance. Leisure or recreation courses are not intended to be included.

As in the 1996, 1991 and 1986 Censuses, the Belles-Lettres and Rhétorique levels of classical colleges in Quebec are intended to be included as “1 year” and “2 years” of “other non-university” education respectively.

The “number of academic years successfully completed” is reported, regardless of the actual length of time it may have taken. If other training was received by correspondence or through part-time (day or evening) attendance, then the accumulated credits are to be converted to the equivalent number of years in the regular full-time program. CEGEP (general) and CEGEP (professional) courses are both included in this category.

In 1976, university transfer courses of community colleges were intended to be counted at the university level. Since 1981, these courses have been indicated at the “other non-university” level. No explicit reference was therefore made to convert “university transfer courses” taken at community colleges to the university level. The reason for this is that there are no Canada-wide standards for defining “university transfer courses” and differences exist within provinces and territories as well. The defining feature of education in this area is thus the institution where the education was obtained (i.e. CEGEPs and community colleges are non-university institutions).

* Prior to 2001, the college sector was referred to as the “postsecondary non-university sector”. The term was changed to “college” to reflect more accurately the majority of the institutions in this sector, which includes non-degree-granting institutions such as community colleges, CEGEPs, private business colleges and technical institutes.

** In 1981, the Belles-Lettres and Rhétorique levels of classical colleges in Quebec were to be included as “1 year” and “2 years” of “university” education respectively.

*** In 1976, CEGEP (general) courses were intended to be included at the university level; most respondents, however, were not consistent in the application of this definition. The responses in 1976 were: None; 1 year or less; 2 years; 3 years or more.

**** In 1971, this area was referred to as “schooling since secondary”. The responses were: None; 1; 2; 3+ for “other than university”. In 1961, this category was not included.

Schooling: Years of University

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of years of education successfully completed at university.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total number of completed years (or less than one year of completed courses) of education at educational institutions which confer a degree, certificate or diploma upon successful completion of a program of studies.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample),* 1976 (1/3 sample),** 1971 (1/3 sample),*** 1961***

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents and employees

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 27

Responses: None; Less than 1 year (of completed courses); 1 year; 2 years; 3 years; 4 years; 5 years; 6 years; 7 years; 8 years; 9 years; 10 years; 11-15 years

Remarks: The number of years refers to academic years completed, regardless of the actual length of time it may have taken. Two semesters with the normal course load are considered equivalent to one academic year. If university training was completed through correspondence or through part-time (day or evening) study, then the accumulated credits are to be converted to the equivalent number of years in the regular full-time university program.

As in the 1996, 1991 and 1986 Censuses, the Philo I and Philo II levels of classical colleges in Quebec are intended to be included as “1 year” and “2 years” of “university” education respectively.

Persons who received teacher training in a faculty of education associated with a university are to indicate such training at the university level. Otherwise, if the teacher training either presently or in past years was in a non-university affiliated setting, then such training is considered “college” schooling.

* In 1981, the Philo I and Philo II levels of classical colleges in Quebec were to be included as “3 years” and “4 years” of “university” education respectively.

** In 1976, university transfer and CEGEP (general) courses were intended to be included at the university level. In the case of CEGEP (general), this definition was not consistently applied by respondents. Responses in 1976 were: None; 1 year or less; 2 years; 3 years; 4 years; 5 years; 6 years or more.

*** In 1971, the responses were: None; 1; 2; 3; 4; 5; 6+. In 1961, the responses referred to the highest year attended, not necessarily completed. Possible responses were: 1; 2; 3; 4+; Degree. In both 1971 and 1961, there were no explicit instructions related to university transfer courses.

Unpaid Work: Hours Spent Doing Unpaid Housework

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of hours that the person spent doing housework, maintaining the house or doing yard work without getting paid for doing so. For example, this includes time spent preparing meals, mowing the lawn, or cleaning the house, for oneself or for relatives, friends or neighbours. The time spent on this activity is divided into blocks of hours (none, less than 5 hours, 5 to 14 hours, 15 to 29 hours, 30 to 59 hours, and 60 hours or more). Only hours spent on the activity during the week before Census Day (May 6 to 12, 2001) are counted.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of hours persons spent doing unpaid housework, yard work or home maintenance in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001). It includes hours spent doing unpaid housework for members of one's own household, for other family members outside the household, and for friends or neighbours.

Unpaid housework does not include volunteer work for a non-profit organization, a religious organization, a charity or community group, or work without pay in the operation of a family farm, business or professional practice.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 33 (a)

Responses: None; Less than 5 hours; 5 to 14 hours; 15 to 29 hours; 30 to 59 hours; 60 hours or more

Remarks: Since 1996, the census has asked a question on the amount of time spent on each of three unpaid work activities: unpaid housework, unpaid child care, and unpaid care to seniors. In answering this question, respondents were asked to report all time spent on each activity, even if two or more activities took place at the same time. For example, a respondent who spent one hour preparing a meal, while at the same time looking after his or her children, would report one hour in Question 33 (a) and one hour in Question 33 (b).

Unpaid Work: Hours Spent Looking After Children, Without Pay

Modified on February 19, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of hours that the person spent looking after children without getting paid for doing so. For example, this includes time spent taking care of one's own children or looking after the children of relatives, friends or neighbours. The time spent on this activity is divided into blocks of hours (none, less than 5 hours, 5 to 14 hours, 15 to 29 hours, 30 to 59 hours, and 60 hours or more). Only hours spent on the activity during the week before Census Day (May 6 to 12, 2001) are counted.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of hours persons spent looking after children without pay. It includes hours spent providing unpaid child care for members of one's own household, for other family members outside the household, for friends or neighbours or for other family members outside the household in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Unpaid child care does not include volunteer work for a non-profit organization, a religious organization, a charity or community group, or work without pay in the operation of a family farm, business or professional practice.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 33 (b)

Responses: None; Less than 5 hours; 5 to 14 hours; 15 to 29 hours; 30 to 59 hours; 60 hours or more

Remarks: Since 1996, the census has asked a question on the amount of time spent on each of three unpaid work activities: unpaid housework, unpaid child care, and unpaid care to seniors. In answering this question, respondents were asked to report all time spent on each activity, even if two or more activities took place at the same time. For example, a respondent who spent one hour preparing a meal, while at the same time looking after his or her children, would report one hour in Question 33 (a) and one hour in Question 33 (b).

Unpaid Work: Hours Spent Providing Unpaid Care or Assistance to Seniors

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of hours that the person spent providing care or assistance to elderly people without getting paid for doing so. This includes time spent giving personal care to an elderly relative, helping elderly neighbours with their shopping, and so on. The time spent on this activity is divided into blocks of hours (none, less than 5 hours, 5 to 9 hours, 10 to 19 hours, and 20 hours or more). Only hours spent on the activity during the week before Census Day (May 6 to 12, 2001) are counted.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of hours persons spent providing unpaid care or assistance to seniors of one's own household, to other senior family members outside the household, and to friends or neighbours in the week (Sunday to Saturday) prior to Census Day (May 15, 2001).

Unpaid care or assistance to seniors does not include volunteer work for a non-profit organization, religious organization, charity or community group, or work without pay in the operation of a family farm, business or professional practice.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Population 15 years of age and over, excluding institutional residents

Question No.: Direct variable: Question 33 (c)

Responses: None; Less than 5 hours; 5 to 9 hours; 10 to 19 hours, 20 hours or more

Remarks: Since 1996, the census has asked a question on the amount of time spent on each of three unpaid work activities: unpaid housework, unpaid child care, and unpaid care to seniors. In answering this question, respondents were asked to report all time spent on each activity, even if two or more activities took place at the same time. For example, a respondent who spent one hour taking an elderly parent to an appointment, while at the same time looking after his or her children, would report one hour in Question 33 (b) and one hour in Question 33 (c).

No formal definition of seniors was provided on the census questionnaire. The following definition appeared in the *2001 Census Guide*: Seniors include all persons aged 65 years and over and some individuals close to age 65 who suffer from age-related infirmities.

In 1996, there were only four answer categories : None; Less than 5 hours; 5 to 9 hours; 10 hours or more.

Usual Place of Residence

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dwelling in which a person lives most of the time. For people who have more than one dwelling, **usual place of residence** refers to the dwelling where they live for the largest part of the year.

Part B – Detailed Definition

In general, the usual place of residence is the dwelling in Canada where a person lives most of the time. Individuals are assigned a geographic location for collection, processing and dissemination, upon the basis of their usual place of residence.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Population: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The concept of usual place of residence is necessary to ensure that residents of Canada are counted once and only once. This concept of usual place of residence means that the Canadian census is a “de jure” census, as opposed to a “de facto” census. Thus, individuals are counted at their usual place of residence, regardless of where they are found on Census Day. The “de jure” method has been used since 1871.

In most cases, enumerating Canada's population at their usual place of residence is straightforward, and simply involves listing all usual residents of the dwelling on Census Day by following the step-by-step instructions for completing the census questionnaire. However, there are a number of situations where the process is not intuitive, and special rules have been created in order to define an individual's usual place of residence.

1. **Persons with more than one residence**

This category includes all persons who have more than one dwelling, in Canada, that could be considered by them as their usual place of residence. In general, the usual place of residence is the place where a person spends the major part of the year. If the time spent at each residence is equal or the person is not sure which one to choose, the residence where he or she stayed overnight on Census Day (between May 14 and 15, 2001) should be considered as his or her usual place of residence.

However, there are two exceptions to this general rule:

- (a) Sons or daughters who live somewhere else while attending school, but return to live with their parents part of the year, should consider the residence they share with their parents as their usual place of residence, even if they spend most of the year elsewhere.
- (b) Husbands, wives or common-law partners who live away from their families while working, but return to their families regularly (for example, on weekends), should consider the residence they share with their spouse or partner as their usual place of residence, even if they spend most of the year elsewhere.

2. **Persons in institutions** (such as a hospital, a home for the aged, a prison or a correctional centre)

Persons with no other usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada, or persons who have been in one or more institutions for a continuous period of six months or longer, are to be considered as usual residents of the institution.

3. **Residents with no usual place of residence**

Residents who do not have a usual place of residence should be enumerated in the dwelling where they stayed overnight between May 14 and May 15, 2001 on Census Day.

4. **Persons residing outside Canada**

Persons residing outside Canada, who do not have a permanent place of residence within Canada occupied by one or more members of their family, were asked to provide the address they use for election purposes or their last permanent address within Canada. This information is then used to determine a geographic location for defining usual place of residence.

Visible Minorities

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Under the *Employment Equity Act*, members of visible minorities are persons, other than Aboriginal persons, who are not white in race or colour.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the visible minority group to which the respondent belongs. The *Employment Equity Act* defines visible minorities as “persons, other than Aboriginal peoples, who are non-Caucasian in race or non-white in colour”.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Total population, excluding institutional residents and persons who reported “Yes” to Question 18 (Aboriginal Peoples)

Question No.: Derived variable: Question 19

Responses: Chinese, South Asian, Black, Filipino, Latin American, Southeast Asian, Arab, West Asian, Japanese, Korean, Visible minority, n.i.e., Multiple visible minority, All others

Remarks: In 2001, a note on the census questionnaire informed respondents that this information is collected to support programs which promote equal opportunity for everyone to share in the social, cultural and economic life of Canada.

In addition, the *2001 Census Guide* provided the following instructions:

For persons who belong to more than one group, mark all the circles that apply. Do **not** report “bi-racial” or “mixed” in the space provided.

The 1996 Census was the first time a question on the population group was asked in the census and used to derive counts for visible minorities. Prior to 1996, data on visible minorities were derived from responses to the ethnic origin question, in conjunction with other ethnocultural information, such as language, place of birth and religion.

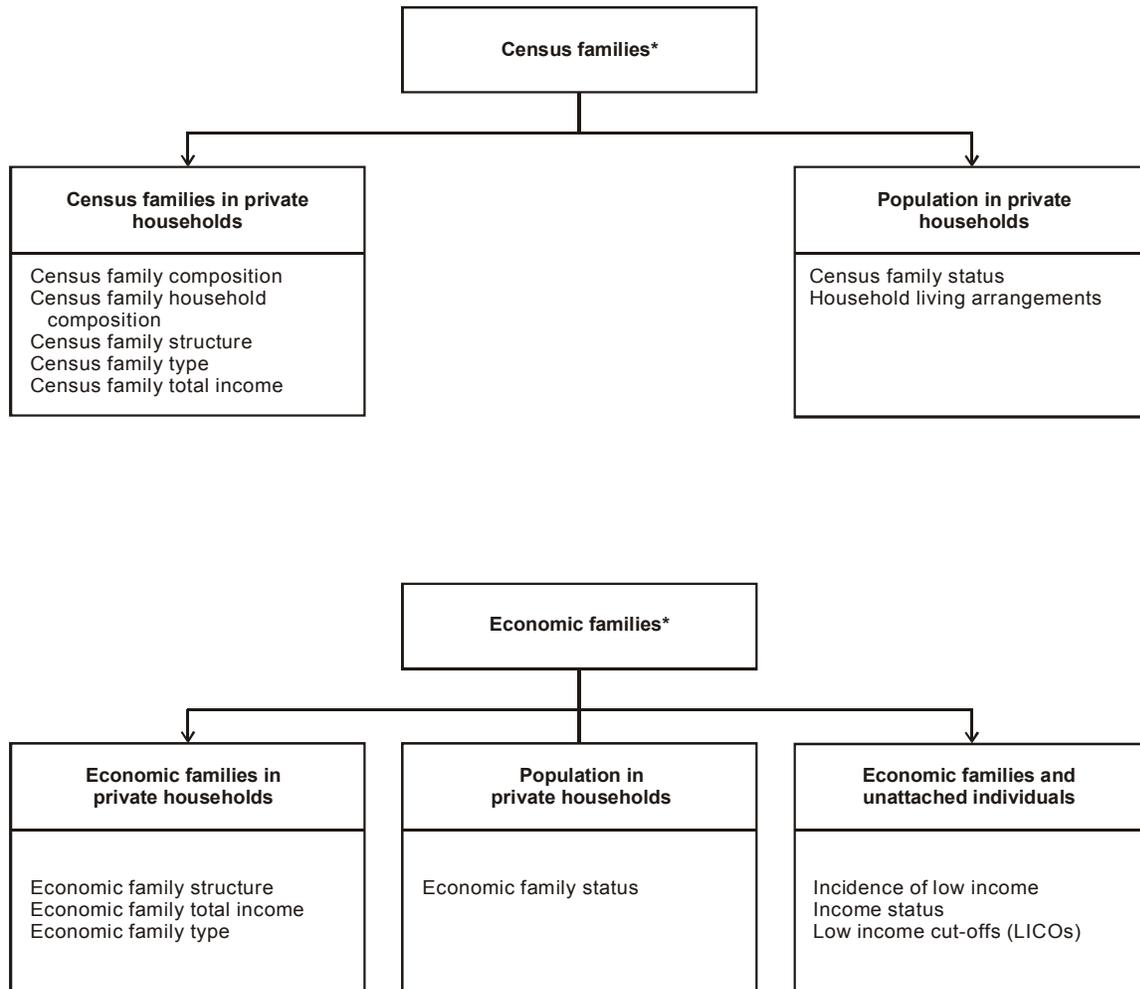
The mark-in response categories listed in the 2001 population group question, with the exception of “White”, were based on the visible minority groups identified by the *Employment Equity Technical Reference Papers*, published by Employment and Immigration Canada in 1987, and used for federal employment equity programs. After “White”, population groups were listed in order of the frequency (largest number) of visible minority counts derived from the 1996 Census. The 1996 Arab/West Asian mark-in response category was split into two separate categories in 2001.

Three of the population groups included on the 2001 Census questionnaire were followed by examples in parentheses. Examples were provided for only a few of the population groups to serve as guidelines and to help respondents who may be more familiar with one term instead of another (e.g. East Indian instead of South Asian, Vietnamese instead of Southeast Asian, Iranian instead of West Asian). The examples were listed in alphabetical order and were based on ethnic groups reported in the 1996 Census.

Introduction in the Family Universe

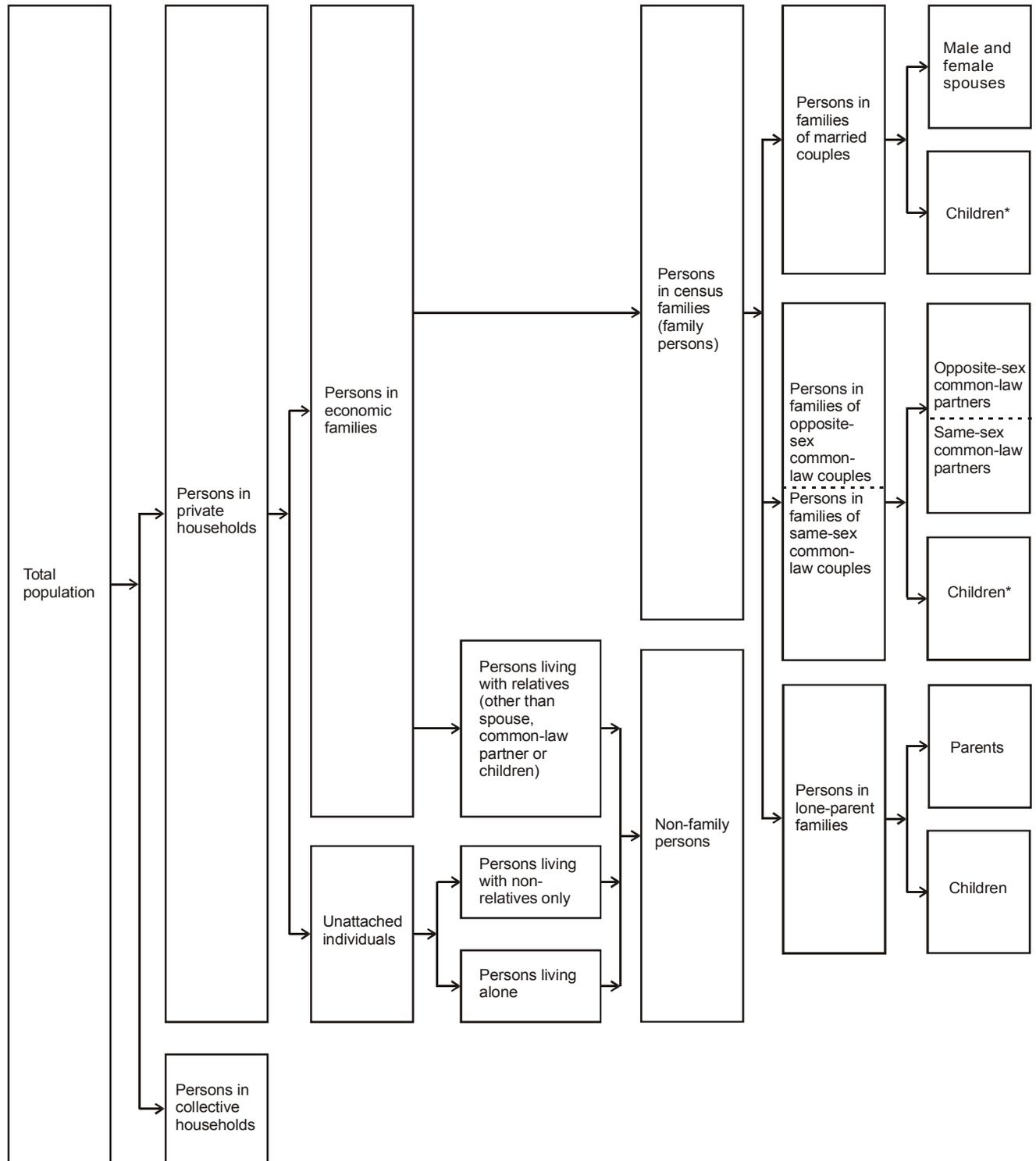
Within the **Family Universe**, two general subuniverses are identified: census families and economic families (see Figures 13 and 14). The related variables provide characteristics of families and of individuals in private households.

Figure 13. 2001 Census and Economic Family Universes and Subuniverses



* Includes families enumerated outside Canada.

Figure 14. Economic and Census Family Membership and Family Status



* May or may not be present.

Census Family

Modified on December 14, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a married couple (with or without children of either or both spouses), a couple living common-law (with or without children of either or both partners) or a lone parent of any marital status, with at least one child living in the same dwelling. A couple living common-law may be of opposite or same sex. "Children" in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971,* 1966,* 1961*

Reported for: Population in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada)**

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: **Children** refer to blood, step- or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age or marital status) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their own children, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, the sons or daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s). When sons or daughters study or have a summer job elsewhere but return to live with their parent(s) during the year, these sons and daughters are considered members of the census family of their parent(s).

For the 2001 Census, several changes were made to the census family concept:

- Two persons living in a same-sex common-law relationship, along with any of their children residing in the household, will be considered a census family.
- Children in a census family can have been previously married (as long as they are not currently living with a spouse or common-law partner). Previously, they had to be "never-married".
- A grandchild living in a three-generation household where the parent (middle generation) is never-married will, contrary to previous censuses, now be considered as a child in the census family of his or her parent, provided the grandchild is not living with his or her own spouse, common-law partner, or child. Traditionally, the census family usually consisted of the two older generations.
- A grandchild of another household member, where a middle-generation parent is not present, will now be considered as a child in the census family of his or her grandparent, provided the grandchild is not living with his or her own spouse, common-law partner, or child. Traditionally, such a grandchild would not be considered as the member of a census family.

In the 2001 Census, the write-in responses for Question 6 (Relationship to Person 1) on the Forms 2A and 3A (2A only in 1996) were not captured, but were classified as “Other write-ins”. The write-in responses on Forms 2B, 2C, 2D and 3B (Forms 2B, 2C, 2D and 3 in 1996) were captured as reported by respondents. Unlike for censuses prior to 1996, the published output on families will be produced from the sample database.

In censuses prior to 1991, the families of married couples and those of opposite-sex common-law couples together constituted “**husband-wife families**” and appeared as such in most census family tables.

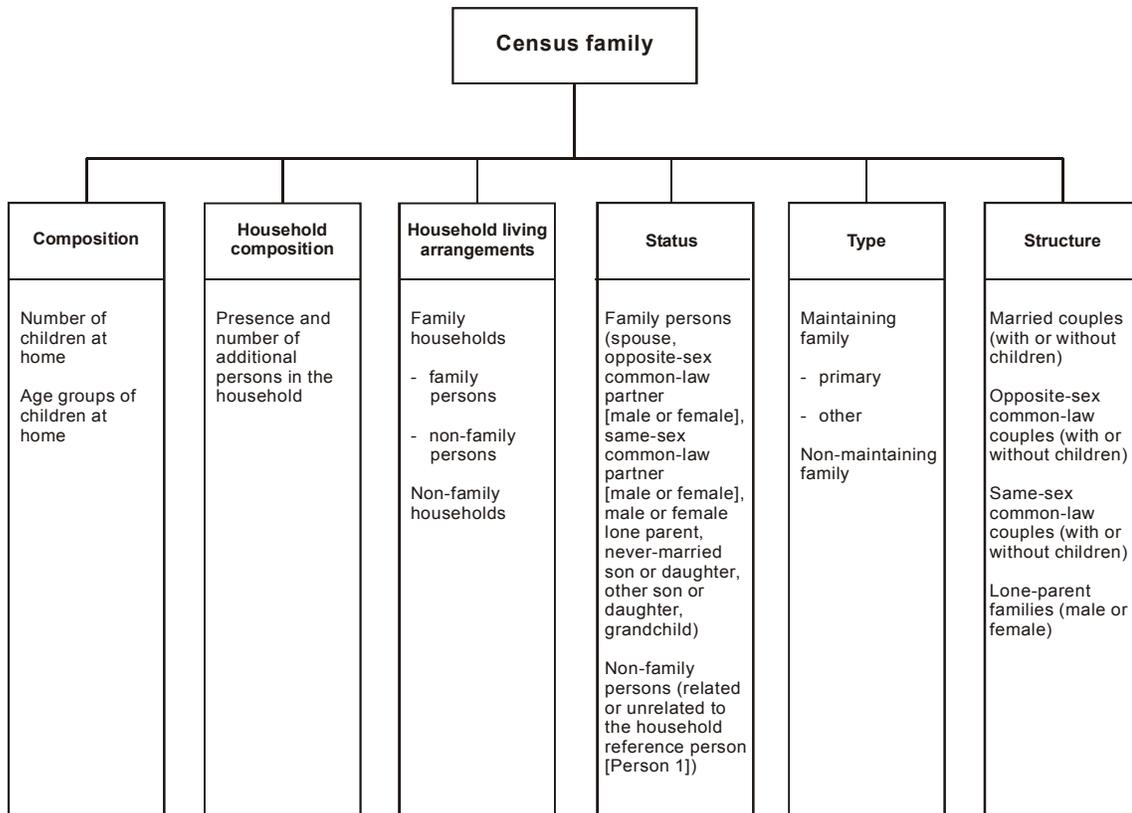
The census family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status and relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

Figure 15 provides an overview of the census family variables.

* In censuses prior to 1976, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

** Prior to 2001, census families were defined in Hutterite collective households as well.

Figure 15. Overview of the Census Family Variables



Census Family Composition

Modified on September 12, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Classification of census families (a census family is composed of a married couple or a couple living common-law, with or without children, or of a lone parent living with at least one child in the same dwelling) by the number or age group, or both, of children living at home. A couple living common-law may be of opposite or same sex. "Children" in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of census families according to the number and/or age groups of children at home.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971*

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: **Families by Number of Children at Home**

Families are classified to indicate those without children at home through to those with, for example, five or more.

Families by Age Groups of Children at Home

Families with children at home can be classified to indicate those with, for example:

- all children aged 18 or over;
- at least one aged 18 or over and at least one aged 17 or under;
- all children aged 17 or under.

This last category may be further subdivided to show, for example, the following age groups of children at home:

- All under 6 years
 - All 6-14 years
 - All 15-17 years
 - Some under 6 and some 6-14 years
 - Some under 6 and some 15-17 years
 - Some 6-14 and some 15-17 years
 - Some under 6, some 6-14 and some 15-17 years
- ("Some" refers to at least one child in each specified age group.)

Remarks: Different age groups in addition to those described above may appear in some tables.

In censuses prior to 1991, census family composition referred to the number and/or age groups of children at home. For the 1991 and 1996 Censuses, the reference was to never-married sons and/or daughters; these persons could be of any age. This change in terminology does not affect historical comparability. For the 2001 Census, the concept of children includes sons and daughters who have been married, provided they do not have a spouse, common-law partner or child living in the household. As well, grandchildren in households with no parents present are now considered children in the census family of their grandparent(s).

In the 1971 Census, figures were published according to the number of children under 25 years of age only.

* In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Census Family Household Composition

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of census families according to the presence and number of **additional persons** in the household.

Additional persons refer to any household member who is not a member of the census family being considered. These additional persons may be either members of another census family or non-family persons.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable is designed to provide data on household composition from the census family perspective.

Census Family Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Classification of persons according to whether or not they are members of a census family and the status they have in the census family (a census family is composed of a married couple or two persons living common-law, with or without children, or of a lone parent living with at least one child in the same dwelling). A person can be a spouse, a common-law partner, a lone parent, a child or a non-family person.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of the population according to whether or not the persons are members of a census family. (See Figure 14.)

Family persons refer to household members who belong to a census family. They, in turn, are further classified as follows:

Spouses refer to persons of opposite sex who are legally married to each other and living in the same dwelling.

Common-law partners are two persons of opposite sex or of the same sex who are not legally married to each other, but live together as a couple in the same dwelling.

Lone parent refers to a mother or a father, with no spouse or common-law partner present, living in a dwelling with one or more children.

Children refer to blood, step- or adopted sons and daughters (regardless of age or marital status) who are living in the same dwelling as their parent(s), as well as grandchildren in households where there are no parents present. Sons and daughters who are living with their spouse or common-law partner, or with one or more of their own children, are not considered to be members of the census family of their parent(s), even if they are living in the same dwelling. In addition, those sons and daughters who do not live in the same dwelling as their parent(s) are not considered members of the census family of their parent(s). The category of **children** can be further distinguished as follows:

Never-married sons and/or daughters in a census family, as used in censuses prior to 2001.

Other sons and/or daughters in a census family who would not have been included in the census family of their parents according to the previous concept.

Grandchildren living in the same household as their grandparent(s), with no parents present.

Non-family persons refer to household members who do not belong to a **census family**. They may be **related** to Person 1 (e.g. Person 1's sister, brother-in-law, cousin, grandparent), or **unrelated** to Person 1 (e.g. lodger, room-mate, employee). A person living alone is always a non-family person.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976,* 1971**

Reported for: Population in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Male spouse; male opposite-sex common-law partner; male same-sex common-law partner; female spouse; female opposite-sex common-law partner; female same-sex common-law partner; male lone parent; female lone parent; never-married son or daughter; other son or daughter; grandchild; non-family person

Remarks: Census Family Status is used in preference to Household Living Arrangements when additional detail is required for persons who are part of a census family, and/or when the distinction between persons living in family households versus non-family households is not important.

Common-law partners may be of any marital status **other than** “legally married and not separated”.

* As of the 1976 Census, unrelated wards, foster and guardianship children, whether or not pay was received, are classified and tabulated as lodgers rather than as children in families (as had been the previous census practice).

** The published data for census family status for 1971, 1976, 1981 and 1986 are comparable, although census family status as defined in the *Dictionary of the 1971 Census terms* (Catalogue No. 12-540) corresponds to the definition of census family structure used from the 1976 to 2001 Censuses.

In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Census Family Structure

Modified on September 12, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of census families into **married couples** (with or without children of either or both spouses), **common-law couples** (with or without children of either or both partners), and **lone-parent families** by sex of parent. A couple living common-law may be of opposite or same sex. “Children” in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: As of 2001, the term “**couple families**” will be used when referring inclusively to families of married couples and families of common-law couples. In censuses prior to 1991, the term “**husband-wife families**” used in census products covered both the families of married couples and those of opposite-sex common-law couples. Data on opposite-sex common-law couples have been available only since 1981.

Census Family Type

Modified on September 12, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Classification of census families (a census family is composed of a married couple or two persons living common-law, with or without children, or of a lone parent living with at least one child in the same dwelling) according to whether or not a family member is responsible for making payments for the rent, mortgage, taxes or electricity. A couple living common law may be of opposite or same sex. “Children” in a census family include grandchildren living with their grandparent(s) but with no parents present.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of census families according to whether or not any family member is responsible for household payments, i.e. rent, or mortgage, or taxes, or electricity.

Primary maintaining family refers to the census family of which the primary household maintainer (i.e. the first person identified as being responsible for household payments) is a member.

In cases where no person in the household is responsible for such payments, no primary maintaining family is identified, although Person 1 is considered as the household maintainer for classification purposes. In the context of census family type, the family of this Person 1 is considered as a non-maintaining family.

Other maintaining family refers to any census family which contains a household maintainer other than the primary household maintainer.

Non-maintaining family refers to any census family which does not contain any person who is responsible for household payments.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981,* 1976, 1971

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.) In addition to the information used to determine families, this concept uses responses to Question H1.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Due to changes in the questionnaire design and data capture for Question H1, the method of identifying the primary household maintainer in the 2001 and 1996 Censuses differs slightly from that of 1991. These changes may affect families and households where two or more persons contribute towards shelter expenses. As a result, the characteristics of the primary maintaining families may not be strictly comparable to those released in the 1991 Census.

A major conceptual modification was introduced for the Household Maintainer(s) variable for the 1991 Census: for the first time, respondents in private households were able to identify more than one person as being responsible for the shelter expenses. The maximum allowable number was six.

In the 1986 and 1981 Censuses, the “family type” classification identified primary and secondary families. The primary maintaining family is equivalent to the primary families of 1986 and 1981. Other maintaining and non-maintaining families combined are equivalent to the secondary families of 1986 and 1981.

The classification into primary maintaining, other maintaining and non-maintaining families applies to family persons only.

* In 1981, the criterion for determining family type was changed. A new question was added to the census questionnaire to determine a person responsible for paying the rent, or mortgage, or taxes, or electricity, and was used to identify primary and secondary families. For 1986, this criterion was maintained.

In previous censuses, the primary family was defined as the family of the head of the household.

Economic Family

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a group of two or more persons who live in the same dwelling and are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law or adoption.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971*

Reported for: Population in private households**

Question Nos.: This concept is based on information provided in the responses to Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.) It is a derived variable.

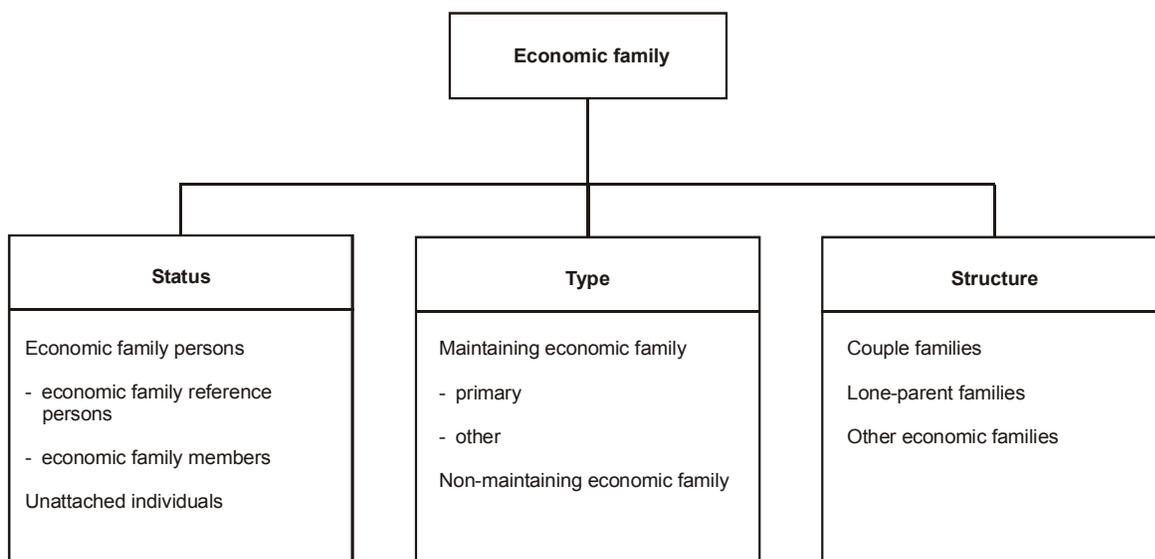
Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The economic family concept requires only that family members be related by blood, marriage, common-law*** or adoption. By contrast, the census family concept requires that family members be either a male or female spouse, a male or female common-law partner, a male or female lone parent, or a child with a parent present. The concept of economic family may therefore refer to a larger group of persons than does the census family concept. For example, a widowed mother living with her married son and daughter-in-law would be treated as a non-family person under the definition of a census family. That same person would, however, be counted as a member of an economic family along with her son and daughter-in-law. Two or more related census families living together also constitute **one** economic family as, for example, a man and his wife living with their married son and daughter-in-law. Two or more brothers or sisters living together, apart from their parents, will form an economic family, but not a census family, since they do not meet the requirements for the latter. All census family persons are economic family persons.

The economic family and its associated classifications and variables are derived according to the responses to the questions on sex, date of birth, marital status, common-law status, and relationship to Person 1. In addition, consideration is given to the order in which household members are listed on the questionnaire.

- * In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.
- ** Prior to 2001, economic families were defined in Hutterite collective households as well.
- *** Note that as of 2001, same-sex partners are considered to be common-law partners. Thus they are considered **related** and members of the same economic family.

Figure 16. Overview of the Economic Family Variables



Economic Family Status

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of the population according to whether or not the persons are members of an economic family. (See Figure 13.)

Economic family persons refer to two or more household members who are related to each other by blood, marriage, common-law or adoption, and thereby constitute an economic family.

They can be further classified as follows:

Economic family reference persons

In each economic family, one person is designated as the reference person. For purposes of presentation of historically comparable low-income statistics, the following designations have been made. The male spouse or partner is designated as the reference person in couple families. In lone-parent families, the male or female lone parent is the reference person. In same-sex couple families where one of the partners is the reference person, the first person in the couple listed on the questionnaire is the economic family reference person. In all other economic families, either a male or female non-census family person is designated as the reference person.

Economic family members

Persons other than the reference person (as described above) who belong to the same economic family are classified as spouses or opposite-sex partners, male or female same-sex partners, never-married sons or daughters, other sons or daughters or other economic family members.

Unattached individuals refer to household members who are not members of an economic family. Persons living alone are always included in this category.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971*

Reported for: Population in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Economic Family Structure

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of economic families into those of **couple families**, **lone-parent families** and **other economic families**.

Couple families are those in which a member of either a married or common-law couple is the economic family reference person.

Lone-parent families are those in which either a male or female lone parent is the economic family reference person.

Other economic families are those in which a non-census family person is the economic family reference person.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986,* 1981*

Reported for: Economic families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: While there is only one household reference person per household, there may be more than one economic family in a household, and each one will contain an economic family reference person.

* In the 1986 and 1981 Censuses, economic families of married couples and economic families of common-law (opposite-sex) couples together constituted husband-wife economic families.

Economic Family Type

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of economic families according to whether or not any family member is responsible for household payments, i.e. rent, or mortgage, or taxes, or electricity.

Primary maintaining economic family refers to the economic family of which the primary household maintainer (i.e. the first person identified as being responsible for household payments) is a member.

Other maintaining economic family refers to any economic family which contains a household maintainer other than the primary household maintainer.

Non-maintaining economic family refers to any economic family which does not contain any person who is responsible for household payments.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981,* 1976, 1971**

Reported for: Economic families in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6. (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.) In addition to the information used to determine families, this concept uses responses to Question H1.

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Due to changes in the questionnaire design and data capture for Question H1, the method of identifying the primary household maintainer in the 2001 and 1996 Censuses differs slightly from that of 1991. These changes may affect families and households where two or more persons contribute towards shelter expenses. As a result, the characteristics of the primary maintaining families may not be strictly comparable to those released in the 1991 Census.

See also “Remarks” under Census Family Type.

A major conceptual modification was introduced for the Household maintainer(s) variable for the 1991 Census: for the first time, respondents in private households were able to identify more than one person as being responsible for the shelter expenses. The maximum allowable number is six.

Certain family households will not have a primary maintaining family, for example, when the primary household maintainer is an unattached individual, or resides elsewhere. Accordingly, any economic family in such a household will be classified as an other maintaining or non-maintaining economic family.

In previous censuses, the primary economic family was defined as the economic family of the head of the household. While we anticipate that, in the majority of cases, the person responsible for household payments will also be considered as the household reference person (Person 1), this will not always be the case.

* In 1981, the criterion for determining family type was changed. A new question was added to the census questionnaire to determine a person responsible for paying the rent, or mortgage, or taxes, or electricity, and was used to identify primary and secondary economic families. For 1986, this criterion was maintained.

** In 1971, published family statistics included families living in private households (including those enumerated outside Canada) and all collective households.

Household Living Arrangements

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the classification of persons in terms of whether they are **members of a family household or of a non-family household,*** and whether they are **family or non-family persons.***

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Reported for: Population in private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 (The question on Common-law status – Question 5 in 2001 – was first asked in the 1991 Census.)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable is designed to provide data on household living arrangements at the population level. It is used in preference to Census Family Status when the distinction between persons living in family households versus non-family households is important, and/or when further detail is required for persons who are not part of a census family.

It may be classified as follows:

Total persons in private households

- Total persons in family households
 - Spouses, common-law partners or lone parents
 - Children in families of married couples
 - Children in families of opposite-sex common-law couples
 - Children in families of same-sex common-law couples
 - Children in lone-parent families
 - Non-family persons
 - Living with relatives only
 - Living with relatives and other persons
 - Living with non-relatives only**
- Total persons in non-family households
 - Living with relatives only
 - Living with relatives and other persons
 - Living with non-relatives only
 - Living alone

* See also Household Type in the Household Universe section and Census Family Status.

** Since this is a family household, at least two of these non-relatives must constitute a census family.

Income: Average Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount obtained by adding up the total income of all family members or non-family persons and dividing this sum by the number of families or non-family persons.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Average income of census families or non-family persons refers to the weighted mean total income of census families or non-family persons in 2000. Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of families (e.g. husband-wife families with working wives) or non-family persons by the number of families or non-family persons in that respective group, **whether or not they reported income.**

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Census families and non-family persons 15 years of age and over

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of families (e.g. husband-wife families with working wives) by the number of families in that group, whether or not they reported income. Similarly, the average income of a group of non-family persons is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of the specified group by the number of all non-family persons 15 years of age and over in the group, whether or not they reported income.

This statistic is not resident on the database. It is calculated for any group as follows:

$$\bar{Y} = \frac{\sum(Y_i W_i)}{\sum W_i}, \text{ where}$$

\bar{Y} = Average income of the group

Y_i = Actual income of each census family/non-family person in the group

W_i = Weight of each census family/non-family person in the group

Average and median incomes of census families and non-family persons and the standard errors for average income are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, whether or not they reported income.

Income: Average Income of Economic Families and Unattached Individuals 15 Years of Age and Over**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Dollar amount obtained by adding up the total income of all family members or unattached individuals and dividing this sum by the number of families or unattached individuals.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Average income of economic families or unattached individuals refers to the weighted mean total income of economic families or unattached individuals in 2000. Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of families (e.g. husband-wife families with working wives) or unattached individuals by the number of families or unattached individuals in that respective group, **whether or not they reported income.**

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of families (e.g. husband-wife families with working wives) by the number of families in that group, whether or not they reported income. Similarly, the average income of a group of unattached individuals is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of the specified group by the number of all unattached individuals 15 years of age and over in the group, whether or not they reported income.

See “Remarks” under Income: Average Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over for the method of calculation used to derive this statistic.

Income: Census Family Total Income**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The total income of a census family is the sum of the total incomes of all members of that family.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: For details on the components of total income and on the intercensal comparability of the concept, reference period, coverage and methodology for income data, see "Remarks" under Income: Total Income in the Population Universe section.

Income: Economic Family Total Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The total income of an economic family is the sum of the total incomes of all members of that family.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Economic families in private households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: For details on the components of total income and on the intercensal comparability of the concept, reference period, coverage and methodology for income data, see "Remarks" under Income: Total Income in the Population Universe section.

Income: Highest Income Recipient in the Census Family

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the individual with the highest total income in the census family.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Census families in private households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: For details on the components of total income, see “Remarks” under Income: Total Income in the Population Universe section. For details on the census family status of individuals, see Census Family Status.

Income: Highest Income Recipient in the Economic Family

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the individual with the highest total income in the economic family.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Economic families in private households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: For details on the components of total income, see “Remarks” under Income: Total Income in the Population Universe section. For details on the economic family status of individuals, see Economic Family Status.

Income: Incidence of Low Income

Modified on April 22, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Percentage of economic families or unattached individuals who spend 20% more than average on food, shelter and clothing.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The incidence of low income is the proportion or percentage of economic families or unattached individuals in a given classification below the low income cut-offs. These incidence rates are calculated from unrounded estimates of economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over in private households

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Percentage values

- Remarks:**
1. Incidence of low income can also be derived for census families, non-family persons and the population in private households. See *Low Income Statistics for Census Families and Households*, Staff Report No. 1991-1, Labour and Household Surveys Analysis Division, Statistics Canada.
 2. Incidence rates are calculated from estimates of families and unattached individuals after rounding is applied.
 3. See also Income: Low Income Cut-offs (LICOs) and Income: Income Status.
 4. This statistic is not resident on the database.

Income: Income Status

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the position of an economic family or an unattached individual 15 years of age and over in relation to Statistics Canada's low income cut-offs (LICOs).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over in private households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: ABOVELINE; BELOWLINE; NOTAPPCBL

Remarks: 1. The three derived code values indicate the following for each economic family/unattached individual.

ABOVELINE: The total income of the economic family or unattached individual was not below the low income cut-off point.

BELOWLINE: The total income of the economic family or unattached individual was below the low income cut-off point.

NOTAPPCBL: The low income concept does not apply to the economic family or unattached individual.

2. For the purposes of low income statistics, economic families and unattached individuals in the Yukon Territory, Northwest Territories and Nunavut and on Indian reserves were excluded. The low income cut-offs are based on certain expenditure-income patterns which are not available from survey data for the entire population.
3. Although this variable is derived for economic families and unattached individuals, it can be applied to census families, non-family persons and the population in private households. See *Low Income Statistics for Census Families and Households*, Staff Report No. 1991-1, Labour and Household Surveys Analysis Division, Statistics Canada.
4. See also Income: Incidence of Low Income and Income: Low Income Cut-offs (LICOs).

Income: Low Income Cut-offs (LICOs)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Income levels at which families or unattached individuals spend 20% more than average on food, shelter and clothing.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Measures of low income known as low income cut-offs (LICOs) were first introduced in Canada in 1968 based on 1961 Census income data and 1959 family expenditure patterns. At that time, expenditure patterns indicated that Canadian families spent about 50% of their total income on food, shelter and clothing. It was arbitrarily estimated that families spending 70% or more of their income (20 percentage points more than the average) on these basic necessities would be in “straitened” circumstances. With this assumption, low income cut-off points were set for five different sizes of families.

Subsequent to these initial cut-offs, revised low income cut-offs were established based on national family expenditure data from 1969, 1978, 1986 and 1992. These data indicated that Canadian families spent, on average, 42% in 1969, 38.5% in 1978, 36.2% in 1986 and 34.7% in 1992 of their total income on basic necessities. Since 1992, data from the expenditure survey have indicated that this proportion has remained fairly stable. By adding the original difference of 20 percentage points to the basic level of expenditure on necessities, new low income cut-offs were set at income levels differentiated by family size and degree of urbanization. Since 1992, these cut-offs have been updated yearly by changes in the consumer price index.

The following is the 2000 matrix of low income cut-offs:

Low Income Cut-offs for Economic Families and Unattached Individuals, 2000

Family size	Size of Area of Residence				
	500,000 or more	100,000 to 499,999	30,000 to 99,999	Small urban regions	Rural (farm and non-farm)
1	18,371	15,757	15,648	14,561	12,696
2	22,964	19,697	19,561	18,201	15,870
3	28,560	24,497	24,326	22,635	19,738
4	34,572	29,653	29,448	27,401	23,892
5	38,646	33,148	32,917	30,629	26,708
6	42,719	36,642	36,387	33,857	29,524
7+	46,793	40,137	39,857	37,085	32,340

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample)

Reported for: Economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over in private households

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks:

1. See also Income: Income Status and Income: Incidence of Low Income.
2. Since its initial publication, Statistics Canada has clearly and consistently emphasized that the LICOs are not measures of poverty. Rather, LICOs reflect a consistent and well-defined methodology that identifies those who are substantially worse-off than average. These measures have enabled Statistics Canada to report important trends, such as the changing composition of those below the LICOs over time.

Income: Median Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount that marks the midpoint of a distribution of census families, or non-family persons, ranked by size of family income (or total income of non-family persons).

Part B – Detailed Definition

The median income of a specified group of census families or non-family persons 15 years of age and over is that amount which divides their income size distribution into two halves. That is, the incomes of the first half of the families or non-family persons are below the median, while those of the second half are above the median. Median incomes of census families and non-family persons are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, **whether or not they reported income.**

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Census families and non-family persons 15 years of age and over

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: 1. This statistic is not resident on the database. For an income size distribution, the median is estimated as follows:

$$M = L_m + c_m (d / f_m), \text{ where}$$

M = Median value

L_m = Lower boundary of the income group in which

$$\frac{N}{2} = \frac{\sum W_i}{2} \text{ falls, where}$$

N = Number of census families/non-family persons in the category for whom the distribution is being shown

W_i = Weight of each census family/non-family person in the category

c_m = Size (range) of the median income group

d = Number of census families/non-family persons necessary from the median income group to reach the middle

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{N}{2} - \sum_i^{m-1} f_i$$

f_m = Frequency or total (weighted) census families/non-family persons in the median income group

2. Average and median incomes of census families and non-family persons and the standard errors for average income are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, whether or not they reported income.

Income: Median Income of Economic Families and Unattached Individuals 15 Years of Age and Over

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount that marks the midpoint of a distribution of economic families, or unattached individuals, ranked by the size of family income (or total income of unattached individuals).

Part B – Detailed Definition

The median income of a specified group of economic families or unattached individuals 15 years of age and over is that amount which divides their income size distribution into two halves. That is, the incomes of the first half of the families or unattached individuals are below the median, while those of the second half are above the median. Median incomes of economic families and unattached individuals are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, **whether or not they reported income.**

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Economic families and unattached individuals 15 years of age and over

Question No.: Derived statistic

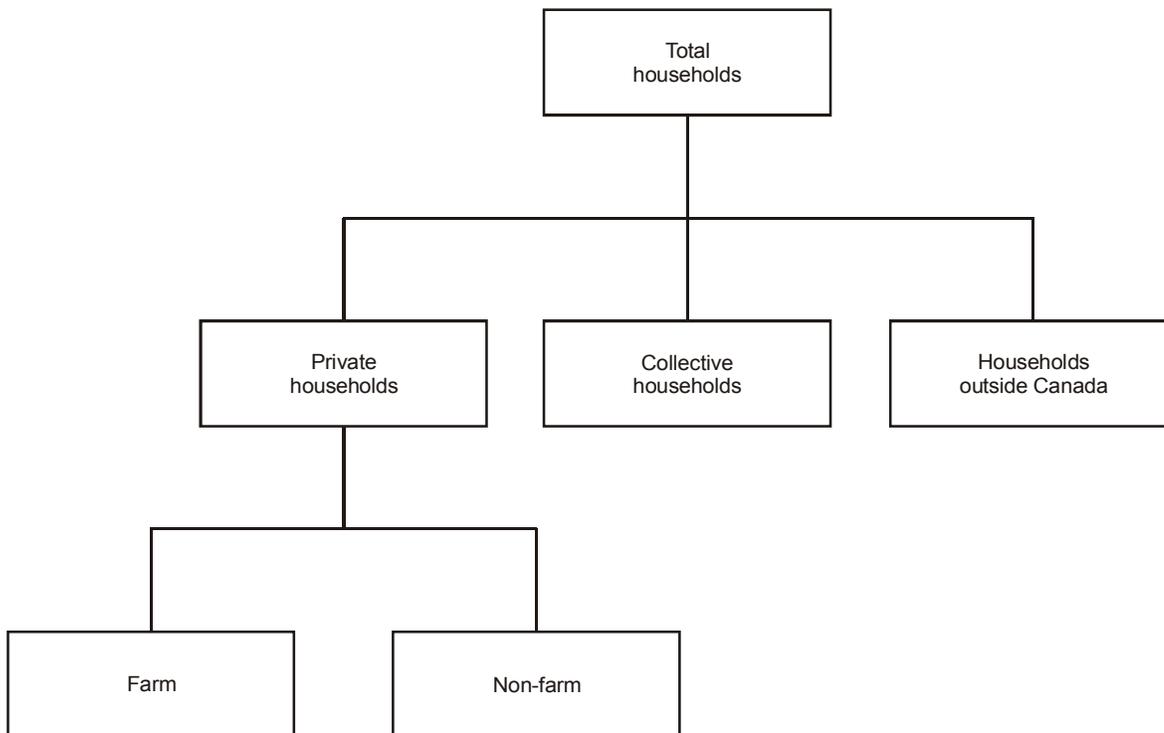
Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: See "Remarks" under Income: Median Income of Census Families and Non-family Persons 15 Years of Age and Over for the method of calculation used to derive this statistic.

Introduction to the Household Universe

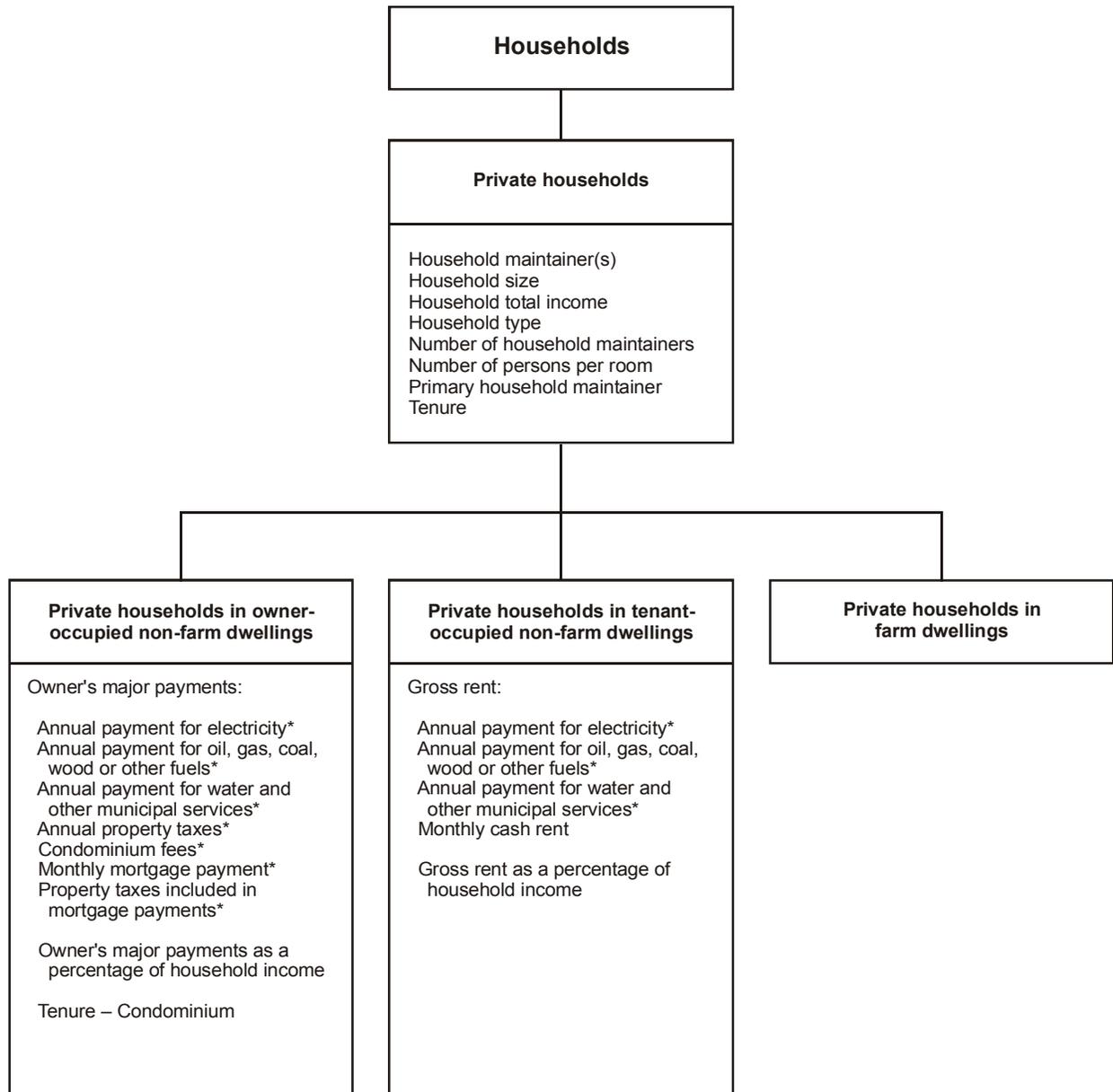
The **Household Universe** is composed of subuniverses and variables (see Figures 17 and 18) which pertain to the person or the group of persons (other than temporary or foreign residents) who occupy a dwelling. Household variables are distinct from dwelling variables, in that the latter ones pertain to dwelling characteristics, **not** to persons occupying dwellings.

Figure 17. 2001 Household Universe



Refer to Figure 18 for a graphic representation of the household subuniverses for which variables are available.

Figure 18. Household Universe and Subuniverses



* These shelter cost components are aggregated to form owner's major payments and gross rent. Individually, they are not published but may be obtained through special request.

Annual Payment for Electricity

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for electricity.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample),* 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H6 (a)

Responses: None; Included in rent or other payments; Dollar value

Remarks: See “Remarks” under the definitions Owner’s Major Payments and Rent, Gross.

Before the 1991 Census, the response categories “None” and “Included in rent or other payments” were grouped into a single category.

* In 1961 and 1971, data were collected for the variable Average Monthly Payment for Electricity for tenant households only.

Annual Payment for Oil, Gas, Coal, Wood or Other Fuels

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for oil, gas, coal, wood or other fuels.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample),* 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H6 (b)

Responses: None; Included in rent or other payments; Dollar value

Remarks: See “Remarks” under the definitions Owner’s Major Payments and Rent, Gross.

Before the 1991 Census, the response categories “None” and “Included in rent or other payments” were grouped into a single category.

- * In 1961 and 1971, data were collected for the variables Average Monthly Payment for Gas and Average Yearly Payment for Oil, Coal, Wood or Kerosene for tenant households only.

Annual Payment for Water and Other Municipal Services

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to yearly payments (last 12 months) for water and other municipal services.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample),* 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Private households in non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H6 (c)

Responses: None; Included in rent or other payments; Dollar value

Remarks: See “Remarks” under the definitions Owner’s Major Payments and Rent, Gross.

Before the 1991 Census, the response categories “None” and “Included in rent or other payments” were grouped into a single category.

- * In 1961 and 1971, data were collected for the variable Average Monthly Payment for Water for tenant households only.

Annual Property Taxes

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to yearly property taxes (municipal and school) for an owner-occupied dwelling.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (c)

Responses: None or dollar value

Remarks: Includes local improvement taxes as well, even if billed separately.

See "Remarks" under the definition Owner's Major Payments.

Condominium Fees

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to monthly payments for maintenance and various condominium services.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied non-farm dwellings which form part of a registered condominium

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (f)

Responses: None or dollar value

Remarks: See "Remarks" under the definition Tenure – Condominium.

Household

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy the same dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. It may consist of a family group (census family) with or without other non-family persons, of two or more families sharing a dwelling, of a group of unrelated persons, or of one person living alone. Household members who are temporarily absent on Census Day (e.g. temporary residents elsewhere) are considered as part of their usual household. For census purposes, every person is a member of one and only one household. Unless otherwise specified, all data in household reports are for private households only.

Households are classified into three groups: **private households**, **collective households** and **households outside Canada**.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Not applicable

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: See the definition Household Outside Canada.

Household, Collective

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons who occupy a collective dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. Data for collective households with foreign and/or temporary residents only are not shown.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Reported for: Collective households

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: See the definition Dwelling, Collective in the Dwelling Universe section.

Household Maintainer(s)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the person or persons in the household who pay the rent, or the mortgage, or the taxes, or the electricity, etc., for the dwelling. If no person in the household is responsible for such payments, Person 1 is considered to be the only household maintainer.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991, 1986, 1981

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Derived variable: Question H1

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: A major conceptual modification was introduced in this variable for the 1991 Census: for the first time, respondents in private households were able to identify more than one person as responsible for the shelter expenses. The maximum allowable number is six.

In the 1981 and 1986 Censuses, only one person could be counted as the household maintainer. Comparisons with the 1991 Census can be made using the Primary Household Maintainer variable.

In order for a person identified as being responsible for the household payments to be considered as the household maintainer, that person must be 15 years of age or older and be related to Person 1 in terms other than as a lodger or an employee (or as a member of a lodger's or an employee's census family).

Household Outside Canada

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons residing together outside Canada on government, military or diplomatic postings. Only limited data are available for these households.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Households outside Canada

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: In 1971, the term “**households abroad**” was used. Prior to the 1971 Census, these households were included in the count of private households, and housing data were imputed to them. In 1971, they were included in the count of private households to which housing data were **not** imputed. Since 1976, both households outside Canada and their dwellings have been excluded from the counts of private households and occupied private dwellings.

Household, Private

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Person or group of persons occupying the same dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a person or a group of persons (other than foreign residents) who occupy a private dwelling and do not have a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: See the definition Household Outside Canada.

The number of private households is equal to the number of occupied private dwellings in the 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976 Censuses (see the definition Dwelling, Occupied Private in the Dwelling Universe section).

Household Size

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Number of persons occupying a private dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of persons in a **private household**.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Collective households and households outside Canada were not taken into account in the calculations used to establish household size.

Household Type

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Category to which a person living alone or a group of persons occupying the same dwelling belong. There are two categories: **non-family households** and **family households**.

A **non-family household** consists either of one person living alone or of two or more persons who share a dwelling, but do not constitute a family (e.g. a couple with or without children).

Family households are divided into two subcategories: **one-family households** and **multiple-family households**.

A **one-family household** consists of a single family (e.g. a couple with or without children). A **multiple-family household** is made up of two or more families occupying the same dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the basic division of private households into **family** and **non-family households**. **Family household** refers to a household that contains at least one census family, that is, a married couple with or without children, or a couple living common-law with or without children, or a lone parent living with one or more children (lone-parent family). **One-family household** refers to a single census family (with or without other non-family persons) that occupies a private dwelling. **Multiple-family household** refers to a household in which two or more census families (with or without additional non-family persons) occupy the same private dwelling.

Non-family household refers to either one person living alone in a private dwelling or to a group of two or more people who share a private dwelling, but who do not constitute a census family.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: Private households

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: In the 2001 Census products, one of the most detailed legends of the variable is as follows:

- All households
 - Family households
 - One-family households
 - All couples
 - Married couples
 - Without children
 - Without additional persons
 - With children
 - Without additional persons
 - Common-law couples
 - Without children
 - Without additional persons
 - With children
 - Without additional persons
 - Lone-parent families
 - Without additional persons
 - Multiple-family households
 - Non-family households
 - One person only
 - Two or more persons

Income: Average Income of Households

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount obtained by adding up the total income of all household members and dividing this sum by the number of households.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Average household income refers to the weighted mean total income of households in 2000. Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of households (e.g. two-person households) by the number of households in that respective group, **whether or not they reported income**.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Households

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: Average income is calculated from unrounded data by dividing the aggregate income of a specified group of households (e.g. family households) by the number of households in that group, whether or not they reported income.

This statistic is not resident on the database. It is calculated for any group as follows:

$$\bar{Y} = \frac{\sum(Y_i W_i)}{\sum W_i}, \text{ where}$$

\bar{Y} = Average income of the group

Y_i = Actual income of each household in the group

W_i = Weight of each household in the group

Average and median incomes of households and the standard errors for average income are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, whether or not they reported income.

Income: Household Total Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The total income of a household is the sum of the total incomes of all members of that household.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Households

Question No.: Derived variable

Responses: Positive or negative dollar value or nil

Remarks: For details on the components of total income and on the intercensal comparability of the concept, reference period, coverage and methodology for income data, see "Remarks" under Income: Total Income in the Population Universe section.

Income: Median Income of Households

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dollar amount that marks the midpoint of a distribution of households ranked by the size of household income.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The median income of a specified group of households is that amount which divides their income size distribution into two halves. That is, the incomes of the first half of households are below the median, while those of the second half are above the median. Median incomes of households are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, **whether or not they reported income**.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Households

Question No.: Derived statistic

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: This statistic is not resident on the database. For an income size distribution, the median is usually estimated as follows:

$$M = L_m + c_m (d / f_m), \text{ where}$$

M = Median value

L_m = Lower boundary of the income group in which

$$\frac{N}{2} = \frac{\sum W_i}{2} \text{ falls, where}$$

N = Number of households in the category for which the distribution is being shown

W_i = Weight of each household in the category

c_m = Size (range) of the median income group

d = Number of households necessary from the median income group to reach the middle

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{N}{2} - \sum_i^{m-1} f_i$$

f_m = Frequency or total (weighted) households in the median income group

Average and median incomes of households and the standard errors for average income are normally calculated for all units in the specified group, whether or not they reported income.

Monthly Mortgage Payment

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to regular monthly mortgage or debt payments for the dwelling.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (a)

Responses: None or dollar value

Remarks: In cases where mortgage payments are made in other than monthly instalments (e.g. once or twice a year or every three months), all payments made in that year are added and then divided by 12, to obtain the average monthly amount paid.

See "Remarks" under the definition Owner's Major Payments.

Number of Household Maintainers**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Number of persons in a household who pay the rent or mortgage, or the taxes, or the electricity bills, and so on, for the dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of persons of the same household who have been identified as household maintainers.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Derived variable: Question H1

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable may have the following values:

- One maintainer
- Two maintainers
- Three maintainers
- Four maintainers
- Five maintainers
- Six maintainers

Number of Persons Per Room

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Measure that indicates whether the persons occupying a dwelling are living in crowded conditions. It is calculated by dividing the number of persons living in a dwelling by the number of rooms in the dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of persons per room in a dwelling. (See the definition of Rooms.)

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Derived variable: Question H3 (a)

Responses: 0.5 or less; 0.6-1.0; 1.1-1.5; 1.6-2.0; 2.1 or more

Remarks: Not applicable

Owner's Major Payments

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Average monthly total of all shelter expenses paid by households that own their dwelling. The **owner's major payments** include, for example, the mortgage payment and the costs of electricity, heat and municipal services.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total average monthly payments made by owner households to secure shelter.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample),* 1981 (1/5 sample)**

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions H6 (a), (b), (c), H8 (a), (c) and (f)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Owner's major payments include payments for electricity, oil, gas, coal, wood or other fuels, water and other municipal services, monthly mortgage payments, property taxes (municipal and school) and, for 1991, 1996 and 2001, condominium fees.

No data are available on the individual components of this variable; only the total of the main expenses is published.

These data are not available for Band housing on Indian reserves, since this variable does not apply to this type of dwelling (see "Remarks" under the definition Tenure).

* In 1986, no distinction was made between Band housing and other types of tenure on Indian reserves. For this reason, all reserve dwellings were grouped under the "On reserve" category, and no data were published for these areas.

** In 1981, reserve dwellings were included in the universe for this variable.

Owner's Major Payments or Gross Rent as a Percentage of Household Income

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Percentage of a household's average total monthly income which is spent on shelter-related expenses. Those expenses include the monthly rent (for tenants) or the mortgage payment (for owners) and the costs of electricity, heat, municipal services, etc. The percentage is calculated by dividing the total shelter-related expenses by the household's total monthly income and multiplying the result by 100.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the proportion of average monthly 2000 total household income which is spent on owner's major payments (in the case of owner-occupied dwellings) or on gross rent (in the case of tenant-occupied dwellings). This concept is illustrated below:

(a) Owner-occupied non-farm dwellings:

$$\frac{\text{Owner's major payments}}{\text{(2000 total annual household income) / 12}} \times 100 = \text{___}\%$$

(b) Tenant-occupied non-farm dwellings:

$$\frac{\text{Gross rent}}{\text{(2000 total annual household income) / 12}} \times 100 = \text{___}\%$$

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner- or tenant-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions 51, H6 (a), (b), (c), H7, H8 (a), (c) and (f)

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The response categories used in the census products are as follows: less than 15%; 15-19%; 20-24%; 25-29%; 30-34%; 35-39%; 40-49%; 50% and over.

Excludes households who reported a loss in their total household income, or had no income in 2000. The category "Less than 15%" includes households with income who incurred no owner's major payments/gross rent.

See "Remarks" under the definitions Owner's Major Payments and Rent, Gross.

Primary Household Maintainer

Part A – Plain Language Definition

First person in the household identified as the one who pays the rent or the mortgage, or the taxes, or the electricity bill, and so on, for the dwelling.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The first person in the household identified as being the household maintainer.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Derived variable: Question H1

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: This variable identifies the first household maintainer entered in Question H1. This will normally be the person who contributes the greatest amount towards the payments for shelter expenses; in the case of a household where two people share these expenses equally, the first person listed in Question H1 is chosen as the main household maintainer.

Due to changes in questionnaire design and data capture, the method of identifying the primary household maintainer in 2001 and 1996 differs slightly from that of 1991. These changes may affect households where two or more persons contribute towards shelter expenses. As a result, the characteristics of the primary household maintainer in 2001 and 1996 may not be strictly comparable to those released in the 1991 Census.

In the 1981 and 1986 Censuses, only one person could be counted as being the household maintainer. Comparisons with the 2001, 1996 and 1991 Censuses can be carried out using the Primary Household Maintainer variable.

Property Taxes Included in Mortgage Payments

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether property taxes (municipal and school) are included in the total regular monthly mortgage or debt payments for a dwelling.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (b)

Responses: Yes; No

Remarks: See “Remarks” under the definition Owner’s Major Payments.

Rent, Gross**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Average monthly total of all shelter expenses paid by tenant households. **Gross rent** includes the monthly rent and the costs of electricity, heat and municipal services.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the total average monthly payments paid by tenant households to secure shelter.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample),* 1981 (1/5 sample),** 1971 (1/3 sample),** 1961 (1/5 sample)**

Reported for: Private households in tenant-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question Nos.: Derived variable: Questions H6 (a), (b), (c) and H7

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Gross rent includes payments for electricity, oil, gas, coal, wood or other fuels, water and other municipal services, and monthly cash rent.

No data are available on the individual components of this variable (except for the monthly cash rent). Only data on the total of the main rental expenses (gross rent) are published.

These data are not available for Band housing on Indian reserves, since this variable does not apply to this type of dwelling (see “Remarks” under the definition Tenure).

- * In 1986, no distinction was made between Band housing and other types of tenure on Indian reserves. For this reason, all reserve dwellings were grouped under the "On reserve" category, and no data were published for these areas.
- ** In 1961, 1971 and 1981, reserve dwellings were included in the universe for this variable.

Rent, Monthly Cash

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the regular monthly cash rent paid by tenant households.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in tenant-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H7

Responses: None or dollar value

Remarks: Also included are parking fees paid with the rent, if any.

See "Remarks" under the definition Rent, Gross.

Tenure

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether some member of the household owns or rents the dwelling, or whether the dwelling is Band housing (on an Indian reserve or settlement).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991, 1986,* 1981,** 1976,** 1971,** 1966,** 1961 (1/5 sample)**

Reported for: Private households

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H2

Responses: Owned; Rented; Band housing

Remarks: A dwelling is classified as “owned” even if it is not fully paid for, such as one which has a mortgage or some other claim on it. The dwelling may be situated on rented or leased land or be part of a condominium (whether registered or unregistered).

A dwelling is classified as “rented” even if it is provided without cash rent or at a reduced rent, or if the dwelling is part of a cooperative. For census purposes, in a cooperative, all members jointly own the cooperative and occupy their dwelling units under a lease agreement.

For historical and statutory reasons, shelter occupancy on reserves does not lend itself to the usual classification by standard tenure categories. Therefore, a special category, Band housing, has been created for 1991 Census products. Band housing also appears in the 1996 and 2001 Census products.

* In 1986, dwellings on Indian reserves were all classified in the “On reserve” category.

In some publications or through special tabulations, it is possible to obtain comparable data for 1986 and 1991 by grouping together the data referring to Indian reserves or settlements.

** In 1961, 1966, 1971, 1976 and 1981, dwellings on Indian reserves were classified as being “owned” or “rented”.

Tenure – Condominium

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether or not the dwelling is part of a registered condominium.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample),* 1981 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Private households in owner-occupied private non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (e)

Responses: Yes; No

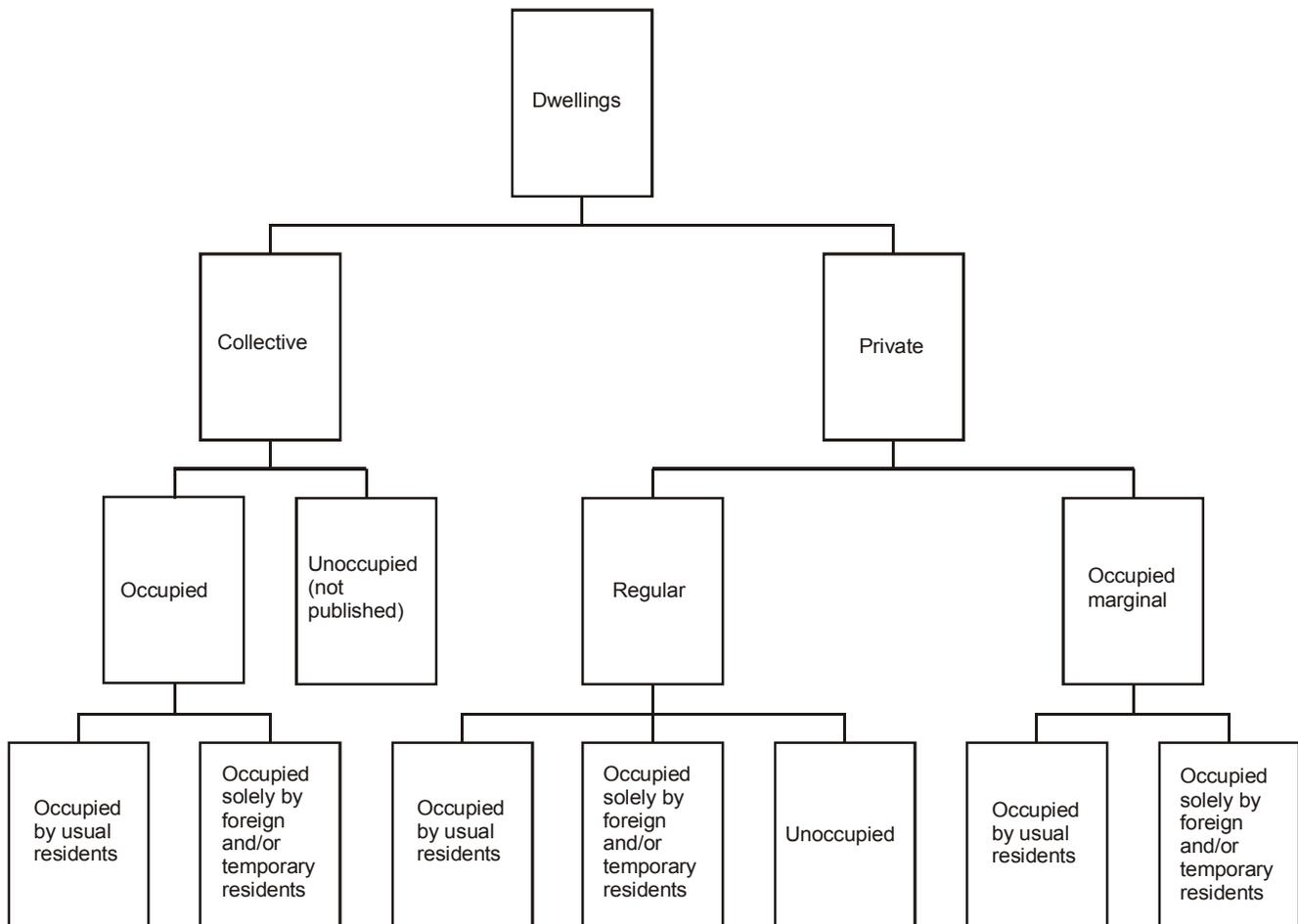
Remarks: A condominium is a residential complex in which dwellings are owned individually while land is held in joint ownership with others.

* In 1986, the variable Tenure – Condominium did not include dwellings on reserves.

Introduction to the Dwelling Universe

The **Dwelling Universe** is composed of subuniverses and variables (see Figure 19) which pertain to characteristics of dwellings in Canada. Dwellings are distinct from households. Dwelling characteristics refer to the physical attributes of a set of living quarters, whereas household characteristics pertain to the person or the group of persons (other than temporary or foreign residents) who occupy a dwelling.

Figure 19. 2001 Dwelling Universe



Bedrooms

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to all rooms designed and furnished as bedrooms and used mainly for sleeping purposes, even though the use may be occasional (e.g. spare bedroom).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H3 (b)

Responses: 0; 1; 2; 3; 4; 5 or more

Remarks: Rooms used for one purpose during the day and as bedrooms at night (for example, a living room used as a bedroom during the night) are not included as bedrooms.

By definition, one-room dwellings or bachelor apartments have zero bedrooms.

Condition of Dwelling

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to whether, in the judgement of the respondent, the dwelling requires any repairs (excluding desirable remodelling or additions).

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)*

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H5

Responses: No, only regular maintenance is needed; Yes, minor repairs are needed; Yes, major repairs are needed

Remarks: **Regular maintenance** refers to painting, furnace cleaning, etc.

Minor repairs refer to the repair of missing or loose floor tiles, bricks or shingles, defective steps, railing or siding, etc. **Major repairs** refer to the repair of defective plumbing or electrical wiring, structural repairs to walls, floors or ceilings, etc.

- * In 1961, the responses for the question on the condition of dwelling were: that the dwelling was in good condition, was in need of minor repairs or was in need of major repairs. The “condition of dwelling” was determined by the census enumerator.

Dwelling

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a set of living quarters in which a person or a group of persons resides or could reside.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Dwelling, Collective

Modified on April 15, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Dwelling used for commercial, institutional or communal purposes, such as a hotel, a hospital or a work camp.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a dwelling of a commercial, institutional or communal nature. It may be identified by a sign on the premises or by a census representative speaking with the person in charge, a resident, a neighbour, etc. Included are lodging or rooming houses, hotels, motels, tourist homes, nursing homes, hospitals, staff residences, communal quarters (military bases), work camps, jails, missions, group homes, and so on. Collective dwellings may be occupied by usual residents or solely by foreign and/or temporary residents.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Collective Dwelling Types

Hotels, Motels and Tourist Homes

Commercial establishments generally purpose-built to provide temporary accommodation for persons on business or pleasure trips.

Lodging and Rooming Houses

Commercial establishments (which may originally have been private dwellings) having furnished rooms for rent. They may be identified by a sign or by a census representative speaking with a person in charge, a resident, a neighbour, etc.

Shelters for Persons Lacking a Fixed Address

Establishments for persons lacking a fixed address, including accommodation centres for persons lacking a fixed address, shelters for persons who are homeless, and shelters for street youth or youth in crisis.

Other Shelters and Lodging and Rooming With Assistance Services

Establishments for residents who need shelter or assistance, including shelters for women, community- or privately run transition houses, and halfway houses for ex-inmates or persons on conditional release.

School Residences and Residences for Training Centres

One or more buildings that usually accommodate students attending an educational institution or training centre, such as boarding schools, colleges and universities. These buildings may be located on or off the grounds of the institution and, at the time of the census, may accommodate non-students.

YM/YWCAs, Hostels and Other Establishments With Temporary Accommodation Services

Buildings or other facilities providing accommodation to transient persons or persons with no fixed address, or temporary accommodation for persons on pleasure trips. (These establishments may also contain usual residents, if such individuals consider themselves as not having **any** usual place of residence.)

Campgrounds and Parks

Facilities providing accommodation to transient persons or persons with no fixed address, or temporary accommodation for persons on pleasure trips.

Work Camps, Staff Residences and Oil Rigs at Sea

Accommodation provided to employees of an industry, such as mining, logging or hydro construction, and generally located in a remote area. A work camp usually consists of bunkhouses, tents, trailers, etc.

Religious Establishments

Establishments, such as convents or seminaries, which provide accommodation to members of a religious group.

Establishments for Children and Minors

Institutions providing accommodation to orphans or children who are wards of the court, or to children needing shelter or assistance services.

Nursing Homes

Nursing homes are long-term care facilities that provide a range of services for elderly residents going from moderate and periodic assistance up to regular continuous nursing supervision.

Residences for Senior Citizens

Residences for senior citizens provide minimal assistance and supervision for elderly residents who are independent in most activities of daily living.

General Hospitals and Hospitals With Emergency

Institutions providing medical or surgical diagnosis and treatment to the ill or injured. Included are general hospitals, maternity hospitals, ambulatory centres, etc.

Other Hospitals and Related Institutions

Institutions providing diagnosis and treatment of a limited number of diseases or injuries, or providing a wide range of services to persons within a specific age group. Included are psychiatric hospitals, chronic care hospitals, children's hospitals, hospitals for the elderly, cancer treatment centres, etc.

Treatment Centres and Institutions for Persons With a Disability

Institutions providing care and treatment to the physically handicapped.

Hutterite Colonies

A group of people of the Hutterite religion who live in dwellings that belong to the community and use their land for agricultural purposes.

Correctional and Penal Institutions

Federal or provincial penal institutions where institutional residents (mostly adults) are confined for an extended period of time and where some form of rehabilitation program exists.

Establishments for Delinquents and Young Offenders

Institutions or homes for the secure or open custody of minors who are awaiting trial, are under court order, or who have been convicted of an offence.

Jails

Municipal or county institutions where institutional residents (mostly adults) are detained for a short period of time. A jail may be operated by a police force, by a municipality or by a provincial authority.

Military Bases

Communal buildings on a military base in Canada belonging to the Canadian Armed Forces.

Other

Dwellings that meet the criteria of the collective dwelling definition, but do not fall into any specified type. Included are race tracks, outfitter camps, carnival and circus camps, non-religious communes, etc.

Merchant Vessels Over 1,000 Tons*

Merchant vessels over 1,000 tons whose occupants, on Census Day, reported no place of residence other than the ship on which they served.

Canadian Armed Forces Vessels at Sea or in Port and Coast Guard Vessels*

Canadian Armed Forces vessels and coast guard vessels whose occupants, on Census Day, are enumerated at sea or in port.

Remarks: Only data for **occupied collective dwellings** are published and limited information is available.

* The population of Canadian merchant, naval and coast guard vessels is assigned to special collective enumeration areas in port areas. The overall number of such enumeration areas is one per port.

Dwelling, Occupied Marginal**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

An occupied private dwelling which, because it was not built, maintained or converted for year-round use, does not meet the two conditions for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements). To be included in the census, the marginal dwelling must be permanently occupied by a person or a group of persons who have no other usual place of residence. Examples of occupied marginal dwellings are non-winterized cottages or cabins and unconverted barns or garages.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981*

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * The 2001 occupied marginal dwellings and the 1996, 1991 and 1986 marginal dwellings and dwellings under construction correspond to the 1981 variable “Dwelling, seasonal/marginal”.

Dwelling, Occupied Private

Part A – Plain Language Definition

A separate set of living quarters which has a private entrance either directly from outside or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway leading to the outside, and in which a person or a group of persons live permanently.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling in which a person or a group of persons is permanently residing. Also included are private dwellings whose usual residents are temporarily absent on Census Day. Unless otherwise specified, all data in housing products are for occupied private dwellings, rather than for unoccupied private dwellings or dwellings occupied solely by foreign and/or temporary residents.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: The number of occupied private dwellings is equal to the number of private households in the 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976 Censuses (see the definition of Household, Private in the Household Universe section).

Dwelling, Owner-occupied Private, Non-farm

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling, other than one situated on a farm and occupied by a farm operator, which is owned or being bought by some member of the household.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: A dwelling is classified as “owned” even if it is not fully paid for, such as one which has a mortgage or some other claim on it.

The dwelling may be situated on rented or leased land or be part of a condominium (whether registered or unregistered). For the definition of condominium, see Tenure – Condominium in the Household Universe section.

Dwelling, Private

Part A – Plain Language Definition

A set of living quarters designed for or converted for human habitation in which a person or group of persons reside or could reside. In addition, a private dwelling must have a source of heat or power and must be an enclosed space that provides shelter from the elements, as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a separate set of living quarters with a private entrance either from outside or from a common hall, lobby, vestibule or stairway inside the building. The entrance to the dwelling must be one that can be used without passing through the living quarters of someone else. The dwelling must meet the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy:

- (a) a source of heat or power (as evidenced by chimneys, power lines, oil or gas pipes or meters, generators, woodpiles, electric lights, heating pumps, solar heating panels, etc.);
- (b) an enclosed space that provides shelter from the elements (as evidenced by complete and enclosed walls and roof, and by doors and windows that provide protection from wind, rain and snow).

The census classifies private dwellings into **regular private dwellings** and **occupied marginal dwellings**. Regular private dwellings are further classified into three major groups: **occupied dwellings** (occupied by usual residents), **dwellings occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents** and **unoccupied dwellings**. Marginal dwellings are classified as occupied by usual residents or by foreign and/or temporary residents. Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on Census Day are not counted in the housing stock.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991,* 1986,* 1981,* 1976, 1971,** 1966,** 1961**

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * The classification of private dwellings into regular private dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings appears in the 1981 Census only. For the 1996, 1991 and 1986 Censuses, the “seasonal/marginal” variable was replaced by the variables “Dwelling, Marginal” and “Dwelling Under Construction” (including conversion and extensive renovation).

** The counts of dwellings occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents do not appear in the 1971, 1966 and 1961 Censuses.

Dwelling, Private, Occupied by Foreign and/or Temporary Residents

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling occupied solely by foreign and/or temporary residents on Census Day. A **temporary resident** of a dwelling is a person who resides there on Census Day, but has a usual place of residence elsewhere in Canada. A **foreign resident** is a person whose usual place of residence is outside Canada. These dwellings are classified into **regular dwellings** and **occupied marginal dwellings**.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976*

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: * In 1976, private dwellings occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents were not classified into regular dwellings and seasonal/marginal dwellings.

Dwelling, Regular

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling which was built or converted and meets the two conditions for year-round occupancy: a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements. These dwellings are classified into **occupied dwellings**, **dwellings occupied by foreign and/or temporary residents** and **unoccupied dwellings**.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Not applicable

Dwelling, Tenant-occupied Private, Non-farm

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling, other than one situated on a farm and occupied by a farm operator, which is not owned by some member of the household.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Included are dwellings provided without cash rent or at a reduced rent, and dwellings that are part of a cooperative. For census purposes, in a cooperative, all members jointly own the cooperative and occupy their dwelling units under a lease agreement.

Dwelling, Unoccupied Private

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to a private dwelling which meets the two conditions necessary for year-round occupancy (a source of heat or power and shelter from the elements), but in which no usual, temporary or foreign resident is living on Census Day.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971,* 1966, 1961

Reported for: See Figure 19 for an illustration of the 2001 Dwelling Universe.

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: Not applicable

Remarks: Marginal dwellings that were unoccupied on Census Day are not included in the housing stock.

* In 1971, the term **vacant dwelling** was used. This referred to a dwelling, not a seasonal or vacation home, which was suitable and available for immediate occupancy, but which was not inhabited on Census Day. Newly constructed dwellings, completed and ready for occupancy, but as yet unoccupied at the census date, were counted as vacant. This did not refer, however, to dwellings whose occupants were temporarily away.

Period of Construction

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the period in time during which the building or dwelling was originally constructed.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H4

Responses: 1920 or before; 1921-1945; 1946-1960; 1961-1970; 1971-1980; 1981-1985; 1986-1990; 1991-1995, 1996-2001*

Remarks: This refers to the period in which the building was originally built, not the time of any later remodelling, additions or conversions. Respondents were asked to indicate the period of construction, to the best of their knowledge.

* Refers to the first five months of 2001.

Rooms

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the number of rooms in a dwelling. A **room** is an enclosed area within a dwelling which is finished and suitable for year-round living.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971, 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H3 (a)

Responses: 1; 2; 3;...10 or more

Remarks: Partially divided L-shaped rooms are considered to be separate rooms if they are considered as such by the respondent (e.g. L-shaped dining-room and living-room arrangements). Not counted as rooms are bathrooms, halls, vestibules and rooms used solely for business purposes.

Structural Type of Dwelling

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Characteristics that define a dwelling's structure, for example, the characteristics of a single-detached house, a semi-detached house, a row house, or an apartment or flat in a detached duplex.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the structural characteristics and/or dwelling configuration, that is, whether the dwelling is a single-detached house, an apartment in a high-rise building, a row house, a mobile home, etc.

Censuses: 2001, 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991,* 1986,* 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Occupied private dwellings

Question No.: Not applicable

Responses: **Single-detached house** – A single dwelling not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A single-detached house has open space on all sides, and has no dwellings either above it or below it.

Semi-detached house – One of two dwellings attached side by side (or back to front) to each other, but not to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). A semi-detached dwelling has no dwellings either above it or below it, and the two units together have open space on all sides.

Row house – One of three or more dwellings joined side by side (or occasionally side to back), such as a town house or garden home, but not having any other dwellings either above or below.

Apartment or flat in a detached duplex – One of two dwellings, located one above the other, but not attached to any other dwelling or structure (except its own garage or shed). The two units together have no other dwellings attached to the back, front, or sides, and have open space on all sides.

Apartment in a building that has five or more storeys – A dwelling unit in a high-rise apartment building which has five or more storeys.

Apartment without direct ground access in a building that has fewer than five storeys – A dwelling unit attached to other dwellings, commercial units or other non-residential space in a building that has fewer than five storeys. The dwelling's private entrance is not at ground level, nor can it be reached by a private or common outside stairway that leads from the ground, or raised terrace/patio, to the dwelling's private entrance.

Apartment with direct ground access in a building that has fewer than five storeys – A dwelling unit attached to other dwellings, commercial units or other non-residential space in a building that has fewer than five storeys. The dwelling's private entrance is either at ground level, or it can be reached by a private or common outside stairway that leads directly to the ground, or raised terrace/patio.

Other single-attached house – A single dwelling that is attached to another building and that does not fall into any of the other categories, such as a single dwelling attached to a non-residential structure (e.g. a store or a church) or occasionally to another residential structure (e.g. an apartment building).

Mobile home – A single dwelling, designed and constructed to be transported on its own chassis and capable of being moved to a new location on short notice. It may be placed temporarily on a foundation, such as blocks, posts or a prepared pad (which may be covered by a skirt).

Other movable dwelling – A single dwelling, other than a mobile home, used as a place of residence, but capable of being moved on short notice, such as a tent, recreational vehicle, travel trailer or houseboat.

Structural Type of Dwelling: 2001 Census Product Categories

The categories produced from the 2001 Census for structural type will be dependent on data quality.

Remarks: A **linked home** (a single house which is not attached to any other dwelling above ground) is classified as a “single-detached house”. Two dwellings, one above the other, attached to other dwellings or buildings, are classified as an “apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys” and **not** as an “apartment or flat in a detached duplex”.

Floors in apartment buildings that are used solely for parking, storage or laundry and recreational facilities are not counted as storeys.

* In 2001, 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type of dwelling was coded by census representatives in the field. The coverage was: occupied private dwellings, unoccupied private dwellings, and dwellings occupied solely by foreign and/or temporary residents.

In 1971 and 1976, the type of dwelling was reported for occupied private dwellings and vacant (unoccupied) dwellings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term “**single-detached house**” replaced “single-detached” and “single house”, as used in previous censuses.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the term “**semi-detached house**” replaced “semi-detached or double house”.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the category “**other single-attached house**” was introduced to cover types similar to the previous category “house attached to a non-residential building” and to account as well for single houses attached to multi-unit or multi-purpose buildings.

In 1996, 1991 and 1986, the type earlier known as a “duplex” was renamed an “**apartment or flat in a detached duplex**” in order to be consistent with the definition.

In 1981, the category “**apartment or multiple dwelling**” was expanded to two categories, “apartment in a building that has five or more storeys” and “apartment in a building that has fewer than five storeys”. In 1971, 1966 and 1961, the term “**apartment and flats**” was used with the subcategories “duplex” and “other”.

In 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976, the term “**movable dwelling**” referred to mobile homes and other movable dwellings.

Value of Dwelling

Modified on September 12, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Refers to the dollar amount expected by the owner if the dwelling were to be sold.

Censuses: 2001 (1/5 sample), 1996 (1/5 sample), 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample), 1981 (1/5 sample), 1971 (1/3 sample), 1961 (1/5 sample)

Reported for: Owner-occupied non-farm dwellings

Question No.: Direct variable: Question H8 (d)

Responses: Dollar value

Remarks: “Value of dwelling” refers to the value of the entire dwelling, including the value of the land it is on and of any other structure, such as a garage, which is on the property. If the dwelling is located in a building which contains several dwellings, or a combination of residential and business premises, all of which the household owns, the value is estimated as a portion of the market value that applies only to the dwelling in which the household resides.

To be consistent with changes introduced in the 1986 Census to the “tenure” classification of dwellings on reserves, for the 2001, 1996 and 1991 Censuses and in all 2001 Census reports, the variable “Value of Dwelling” refers to non-reserve dwellings only.

Introduction to the Geography Section

This section of the dictionary defines terms related to geography concepts, infrastructure, products and services. For 2001, there are a number of new geographic concepts being introduced and there are significant changes and quality improvements to the geographic infrastructure used to create geographic products and to deliver services. These are briefly outlined in this introduction. For further details, refer to the individual definitions of terms highlighted in bold text below.

1. Geographic Areas

Census data are disseminated for a number of standard geographic areas. These areas are either administrative or statistical. Administrative areas are defined, with a few exceptions, by federal and provincial statutes. Statistical areas are defined by Statistics Canada as part of the spatial frame for disseminating census data. Figure 20 shows the hierarchy of all standard geographic units for dissemination and Table 1 shows the number of geographic units by province and territory.

2. What's New for 2001?

- **Improved coverage and quality of the digital geographic infrastructure**

There is now 100% digital geographic coverage of Canada, whereas previously, digital coverage was limited to major urban centres (that covered less than 1% of the land area and 62% of the population). The new spatial data infrastructure brings together the boundaries and related attributes of the geographic areas with roads and other cartographic features of the National Topographic Database (NTDB) and Digital Chart of the World (DCW) and streets and address range updates from Elections Canada. Links to other data holdings, such as the address register and postal code, are incorporated into the database. All the spatial information is now based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83) instead of NAD27, which was used for previous censuses. The spatial information is stored and maintained on the **National Geographic Base (NGB)** and geography products are derived from this base.

- **New standard geographic areas and classification**

The national road coverage and related geographic attributes permit the creation of a new basic geographic unit – the **block**. A block is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas.

These blocks are used to automatically generate **dissemination areas (DAs)**. The dissemination area is a small, relatively stable geographic unit composed of one or more blocks. DAs cover all the territory of Canada and replace the enumeration areas (which are still used for census collection) as the smallest standard geographic areas for which census characteristic data are disseminated.

Census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs) are widely used statistical areas composed of groups of adjacent, largely urban municipalities (census subdivisions) that have a high degree of social and economic integration. While CMAs and CAs contain approximately 78% of the population of Canada, they cover only 4% of the land area. The **census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zone (MIZ)** is a new concept applied to census subdivisions (CSDs) outside CMAs and CAs to further differentiate this vast, largely rural area of Canada. These non-CMA/CA census subdivisions are assigned to four categories according to the degree of influence (strong, moderate, weak and no influence) that CMAs and CAs collectively have on each of them. CSDs with the same degree of influence tend to be clustered into zones around the CMAs and CAs.

The new **Statistical Area Classification (SAC)** can be applied to census subdivisions (municipalities) for data dissemination purposes. SAC permits census data to be summarized for census metropolitan areas (CMAs), census agglomerations (CAs), census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zones (MIZ), and the three territories. It is expected that the application of this classification to CSD data will reveal previously hidden details and help users to study the diversity of non-CMA/CA areas of Canada.

For the first time, **urban areas** are defined using population counts and population density data from the current census, instead of from the previous census. The population density data are block-based rather than enumeration-area based as for previous censuses.

- **Impact of municipal restructuring**

The boundaries and names of municipalities (census subdivisions) can change from one census to the next because of annexations, dissolutions and incorporations. However, since the 1996 Census, the changes are more numerous and more dramatic, especially in the provinces of Quebec, Ontario and British Columbia. In general, data from the 2001 Census are available for fewer and larger census subdivisions, and historical analyses are more complex. To bridge the impact of these municipal changes on data dissemination, the 2001 Census is producing a profile for dissolved census subdivisions.

In addition, the concept of **locality** is established to maintain a record of historical place names of former census subdivisions (municipalities), former designated places and former urban areas, as well as the names of other entities, such as neighbourhoods, post offices, communities and unincorporated places.

- **Adjustment of population counts**

Statistics Canada is taking additional measures to protect the privacy of all Canadians and the confidentiality of the data they provide to us. Starting with the 2001 Census, some population counts are adjusted in order to ensure confidentiality.

Counts of the total population are rounded to a base of 5 for any block having a population of less than 15. Population counts for all standard geographic areas above the block level are derived by summing the adjusted block counts. The adjustment of block counts is controlled to ensure that the population counts for dissemination areas will always be within 5 of the actual values. The adjustment has no impact on the population counts of census divisions and large census subdivisions. Dwelling counts are unadjusted.

- **Discontinued geography concepts**

Consolidated census agglomeration, consolidated census metropolitan area, primary census agglomeration and primary census metropolitan area are discontinued as dissemination concepts for 2001.

The unincorporated place concept is discontinued, as the information is no longer collected by the census. Names of unincorporated places collected by previous censuses are included as locality names.

- **New and discontinued geography products**

Geography products for the 2001 Census reflect both the changes to geography concepts as well as the more precise geometry and more detailed cartographic features (such as water, roads and road names). For 2001, **Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs)** replace Digital Cartographic Files (DCFs), and Digital Boundary Files (DBFs) are discontinued. The **Road Network Files (RNFs)**, which cover all of Canada, replace Street Network Files (SNFs), which covered only large urban centres in Canada. The Block-face Data File (BFDF) is discontinued.

A fully digital dissemination system is introduced to make reference maps and other geographic products available in a variety of media, including the Internet. Tools are provided for users to find and view their geographic area of interest on the Internet.

3. Census Geography Products and Services

Geography products include reference and data products and digital spatial and attribute products. As well, a variety of services is available, including custom mapping, custom data extraction and the development of custom geography products.

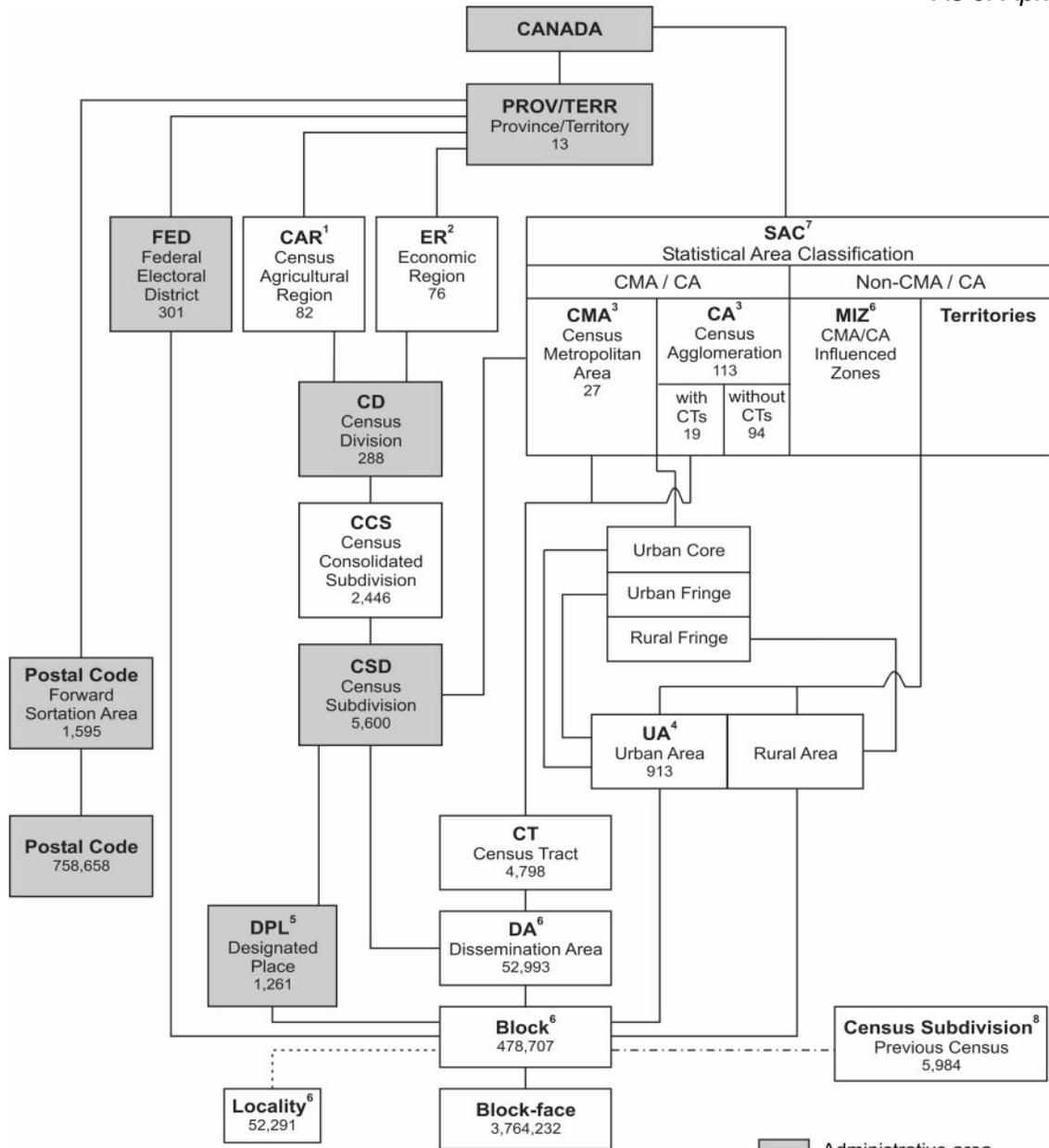
Reference maps are published to show the boundaries, names and codes of the standard geographic areas. Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs) are available for most of the standard geographic areas and are appropriate for small-to-medium-scale thematic mapping. The Road Network Files (RNFs) include the road network, street names, address ranges, shorelines and province/territory boundaries. The CBFs and RNFs enable users with geographic information systems (GIS) or other mapping software to produce their own maps or do geographic analysis.

It is important that users of geospatial data understand the principles of **coordinate system**, **map projection** and **datum**. For example, although the spatial products are disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, maps should not be generated using these spherical coordinates as they are unprojected, resulting in a map that is distorted (see Figure 33). The latitude and longitude coordinate reference system is merely a convenient way of transferring geographic data; users can then use GIS software to convert latitude/longitude coordinates to the desired map projection(s). Users should also be aware that different spatial datasets can be in the same coordinate system or projection but not in the same datum, in which case the data will not be spatially coincident. Data overlay discrepancies will thus occur if spatial data from the 2001 Census, which are now based on NAD83, are overlaid with users' data that are based on NAD27.

The Geocoding Service allows users to define their own geographic areas for census data tabulations. With the geocoding system, households and associated data are geographically linked to the corresponding block-face or block representative point. Census data for user-defined areas are then retrieved by aggregating the representative points within each user-defined area.

Figure 20. Hierarchy of Standard Geographic Units for Dissemination, 2001 Census

As of April 17, 2002



¹ Census agricultural regions in Saskatchewan are composed of census consolidated subdivisions.

² Economic regions in Ontario are composed of municipalities (census subdivisions).

³ One CMA and four CAs cross provincial boundaries.

⁴ Five UAs cross provincial boundaries.

⁵ Designated places do not cover the total area of CSDs. Eighty-two DPLs cross CSD boundaries, of which 13 also cross CD boundaries.

⁶ Census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zones (MIZ), dissemination area, block, and locality are new concepts for the 2001 Census.

⁷ The Statistical Area Classification (SAC) is a new geographic classification that allocates each CSD according to whether it is a component of a CMA, CA, a census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zone (MIZ), or the territories outside the CAs of Whitehorse and Yellowknife.

⁸ For the 2001 Census only, a best fit linkage is created between the 1996 CSDs and 2001 blocks to facilitate historical data retrieval.

- Administrative area
- Statistical area
- Linkage using point-in-polygon process
- Best fit linkage

Table 1. Geographic Units by Province and Territory, 2001 Census (as of April 17, 2002)

Geographic Unit	Canada		Nfld. Lab.	P.E.I.	N.S.	N.B.	Que.	Ont.	Man.	Sask.	Alta.	B.C.	Y.T.	N.W.T.	Nvt.
	1996	2001													
Federal electoral district (1996 Representation Order)	295*	301	7	4	11	10	75	103	14	14	26	34	1	1	1
Economic region	74	76	4	1	5	5	17	11	8	6	8	8	1	1	1
Census agricultural region	78	82	3	3	5	4	14	5	12	20	8	8	-	-	-
Census division	288	288	10	3	18	15	99	49	23	18	19	28	1	2	3
Census consolidated subdivision	2,607	2,446	87	68	43	151	1,111	318	127	301	77	157	1	2	3
Census subdivision	-	5,600	381	113	98	275	1,476	586	298	1,002	452	816	35	37	31
1996 Census Dissolutions (January 2, 1996 to January 1, 2001)	5,984	-	381	113	110	283	1,599	947	298	970	467	713	35	68	N/A
Incorporations (January 2, 1996 to January 1, 2001)	910	-	-	-	14	12	232	529	3	18	18	83	1	-	N/A
	-	526	-	-	2	4	109	168	3	50	3	186	1	-	N/A
Designated place	828	1,261	182	-	59	172	78	81	51	158	260	219	1	-	-
Census metropolitan area	25	27	1	-	1	1	<u>6</u>	<u>11</u>	1	2	2	3	-	-	-
Census agglomeration	112	113	4	2	4	<u>5</u>	<u>28</u>	<u>30</u>	3	<u>7</u>	<u>10</u>	22	1	1	-
With census tracts	18	19	-	-	-	1	3	8	-	-	3	4	-	-	-
Without census tracts	94	94	4	2	4	<u>4</u>	<u>25</u>	<u>22</u>	3	<u>7</u>	<u>7</u>	18	1	1	-
Census tract	4,223	4,798	45	-	86	71	1,263	2,013	165	101	457	597	-	-	-
Urban area	929	913	36	7	39	<u>34</u>	<u>229</u>	<u>258</u>	<u>42</u>	<u>65</u>	<u>108</u>	93	1	3	3
Locality	N/A	52,291	2,428	964	3,920	3,445	12,448	10,889	2,339	3,868	3,466	7,699	362	173	290
Dissemination area	N/A	52,993	1,231	225	1,397	1,349	12,153	18,596	2,235	2,937	5,143	7,463	117	92	55
Enumeration area	49,361	42,851	1,204	225	1,337	1,216	9,133	14,753	1,805	2,697	4,129	6,088	117	92	55
Block	N/A	478,707	8,331	2,831	15,161	13,929	108,760	128,327	30,567	56,040	60,061	53,147	674	745	134
Block-face	817,734	3,764,232	80,162	19,854	168,840	136,311	865,600	955,847	200,569	377,776	435,604	499,365	10,644	12,304	1,356
Forward sortation area	1,477	1,595	33	7	74	110	398	518	64	47	147	188	3	3	3
Postal code	680,910	758,658	7,900	2,856	23,354	55,104	188,427	254,757	23,250	21,184	70,672	109,753	884	487	30

* Federal electoral districts (1987 Representation Order)

Note: Underlined numbers indicate that those census metropolitan areas, census agglomerations and urban areas crossing provincial boundaries are counted in both provinces.

Geographic Attributes: Adjusted Counts

Part A – Plain Language Definition

After a census, Statistics Canada makes public the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings counted in a given area, for example, in a municipality. By the next census, the municipality's geographic boundaries may have changed, especially if it has annexed part of another municipality or has merged with another municipality. When a boundary change occurs between censuses, the population and dwelling counts for the geographic areas affected by the boundary change are revised (adjusted). The adjusted counts show what the counts (the total number of persons and the total number of dwellings) from the previous census would be for the current census boundaries.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Adjusted counts refer to previous census population and dwelling counts that have been adjusted (i.e. recompiled) to reflect current census boundaries, when a boundary change occurs between the two censuses.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956 (population)
2001, 1996 (dwellings)

Remarks:

When a boundary change occurs, the population and dwellings affected are determined by examining the collection documents from the previous census. The dwellings affected by the boundary change are identified from the collection maps. Once the affected dwellings have been identified, it is possible to establish the population affected. These counts are then added to the geographic area that has increased in size and subtracted from the geographic area that has decreased in size.

Boundary changes to standard geographic areas between censuses are generally flagged in census outputs. This is done to warn users doing trend or longitudinal analysis that the areas being compared have changed over time. However, by comparing the final population or dwelling counts from the previous census to the adjusted counts, the user can judge the significance of the boundary change.

In the case of new areas (e.g. census subdivision incorporations), adjusted counts are required to permit the calculation of change. For dissolutions or major boundary changes, the use of adjusted counts instead of the previous census final counts often provides a better measure of trends by removing the effect of the boundary change from the calculation.

Refer to the related definition of Census Subdivision (CSD).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Attributes: Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Category assigned to a municipality **not included** in either a census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA). (A CMA or CA is an area consisting of one or more adjacent municipalities situated around a major urban core. To form a CMA, the urban core must have a population of at least 100,000. To form a CA, the urban core must have a population of at least 10,000.) A municipality is assigned to one of four categories depending on the percentage of its residents who commute to work in the urban core of any census metropolitan area or census agglomeration.

Categories:

1. Strong MIZ: more than 30% of the municipality's residents commute to work in any CMA or CA.
2. Moderate MIZ: from 5% to 30% of the municipality's residents commute to work in any CMA or CA.
3. Weak MIZ: from 0% to 5% of the municipality's residents commute to work in any CMA or CA.
4. No MIZ: fewer than 40 or none of the municipality's residents commute to work in any CMA or CA.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zone (MIZ) is a concept that geographically differentiates the area of Canada outside census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs). Census subdivisions outside CMAs and CAs are assigned to one of four categories according to the degree of influence (strong, moderate, weak or no influence) that the CMAs and/or CAs have on them.

Census subdivisions (CSDs) are assigned to a MIZ category based on the percentage of their resident employed labour force that has a place of work in the urban core(s) of CMAs or CAs. CSDs with the same degree of influence tend to be clustered. They form **zones** around CMAs and CAs that progress through the categories from "strong" to "no" influence as distance from the CMAs and CAs increases.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

The MIZ is a new concept applied, for statistical analysis purposes, to CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. Previously all CSDs in Canada were either a component of a CMA or CA or not (outside CMAs and CAs). The MIZ provides users with a more detailed geographic identity for the CSDs outside CMAs and CAs. As with CMAs and CAs, the allocation of a CSD to a MIZ category was determined using commuting flows of the employed labour force derived from the 1991 Census place of work data.

The calculation of the commuting flows for MIZ differs somewhat from the calculation used for CSD inclusion in CMAs/CAs. The percentages of the employed labour force living in a particular CSD outside CMAs and CAs and working in the urban core of **any** CMA/CA are **combined** to determine the degree of influence that one or more CMAs/CAs have on that CSD, as follows:

1. The **strong MIZ** category includes CSDs with a commuting flow of 30% or more (at least 30% of the total employed labour force living in the CSD works in **any** CMA/CA urban core).
2. The **moderate MIZ** category includes CSDs with a commuting flow percentage between 5% and 30% (at least 5%, but less than 30% of the total employed labour force living in the municipality works in **any** CMA/CA urban core).
3. The **weak MIZ** category includes CSDs with a commuting flow percentage more than 0%, but less than 5% (more than 0%, but less than 5% of the total employed labour force living in the municipality works in **any** CMA/CA urban core).
4. The **no MIZ** category includes those CSDs with either fewer than 40 people in the resident labour force (where data suppression rules apply) or no people commuting to work in CMA/CA urban cores.

Care should be exercised if applying the MIZ concept in Nunavut, the Northwest Territories or the Yukon Territory. This is because many CSDs in these territories are very large and sparsely populated, which contributes to instability in the place of work–population relationship upon which the MIZ is constructed.

Table 3 shows the number of census subdivisions by MIZ category for Canada, provinces and territories.

For background information, consult the Statistics Canada Web site (www.statcan.ca) to download a free copy of the Geography Working Paper entitled *Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ): A Description of the Methodology*, Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE.

Refer to the related definitions of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Census Subdivision (CSD), Statistical Area Classification (SAC) and Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Attributes: Geographic Code

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Reference number given to a geographic area. Every kind of geographic area in Canada has its own type of geographic code. For example, the geographic code assigned to a town makes it possible to distinguish that town from any other towns with the same name which are located in different provinces.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A geographic code is a unique number used to identify and access standard geographic areas for the purposes of data storage, retrieval and display.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Geographic codes for most geographic areas are used in combination with the province or territory code in order to identify the specific geographic areas uniquely.

The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), Statistics Canada's official classification of geographic areas, provides unique codes for three hierarchically-related geographic areas: provinces and territories, census divisions and census subdivisions. For further details, refer to the *2001 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Manual, Volumes I and II* (Catalogue Nos. 12-571-XPB and 12-572-XPB).

For further details, refer to the description of the geographic code in the definitions of Census Agricultural Region (CAR), Census Consolidated Subdivision (CCS), Census Division (CD), Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Census Subdivision (CSD), Census Tract (CT), Designated Place (DPL), Dissemination Area (DA), Economic Region (ER), Enumeration Area (EA), Federal Electoral District (FED), Province or Territory, Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) and Urban Area (UA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Since 1981, the Standard Geographical Classification has been the sole official geographic classification system used for disseminating data for provinces/territories, census divisions and census subdivisions.

For 1976 and 1971, both the SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Prior to 1971, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Geographic Attributes: *Land Area***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Number of square kilometres contained in a given geographic area (e.g. a province, a territory, a city).

Part B – Detailed Definition

Land area is the area in square kilometres of the land-based portions of standard geographic areas.

The land area measurements are **unofficial**, and are provided for the sole purpose of calculating population density.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Land area data for the standard geographic areas reflect the boundaries in effect on January 1, 2001 (the geographic reference date for the 2001 Census of Canada). The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

The data are derived from the National Geographic Base (NGB), including selected water polygon layers. The NGB's Lambert Conformal Conic projection is transformed to the Albers Equal-area Conic projection, since the property of equal area is indispensable for calculating land area. Separate projection parameters (two standard parallels, central meridian and latitude of projection origin) are used for each province/territory, since greater accuracy is achieved by this approach. Land area is calculated using the Arc/Info[®] GIS software. The data are calculated and stored in square kilometres at the block level, and then aggregated to the higher level geographic units.

Since the NGB is a digital base using three input map scales (1:50,000, 1:250,000 and 1:1,000,000), greater land area accuracy is achieved at larger scales – that is, there is less generalization regarding the symbolization and number of hydrographic features. Land area errors may occur due to digitizing or linkage discrepancies, and when water polygons do not line up or are symbolized differently between different map scales.

Users should note that even when the boundaries of standard geographic areas did not change between the 1996 and 2001 Censuses, the land areas differ because the methodology for calculating land area changed. Land area for 1996 was manually calculated using a planimeter, and for 2001, it is calculated using software applied to the new National Geographic Base.

Refer to related definitions of Block, Geographic Reference Date, National Geographic Base (NGB) and Population Density.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, land area was manually calculated using a planimeter. Measurements were normally taken three times for each geographic unit and then averaged. The map scales generally varied between 1:50,000 and 1:250,000. In densely and sparsely populated regions of Canada, larger or smaller scales may have been used. Only discernible bodies of water found on the maps were excluded. The planimeter gave accurate readings for only small zones – and consequently, large geographic units were subdivided into smaller ones and measured individually; the individual parts were then added together.

Boundaries that changed from one census to another were not measured in their entirety. Only the land area gained or lost due to a boundary revision/update was measured, and then added to or subtracted from the original figure.

Land area measurements for census subdivisions (CSDs) were aggregated to obtain the land areas for the higher level geographic units – namely, primary census metropolitan areas/primary census agglomerations (PCMAS/PCAs), census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations (CMAs/CAs), census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs), census divisions (CDs), economic regions (ERs) and provinces/territories. Land area measurements were done separately for urban areas (UAs), designated places (DPLs) and census tracts (CTs). Data were not available for enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).

The land area data were subject to a number of errors, including measurement, coding and transcription, and processing errors – and overall, cumulative historic errors. As well, a limited number of tests revealed logical inconsistencies; for example, there were cases where the land area was greater than the total area.

Prior to 1996, some CSDs had land areas of zero (0) because their official limits were unknown.

For 1991, land area was called “net land area”.

Prior to 1976, land area data were expressed in square miles only.

Geographic Attributes: Population Density

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Population density is the number of persons per square kilometre.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

The calculation for population density is total population divided by land area. The data are available for all standard geographic areas.

Population density data support a variety of applications, such as determining the ecumene and the spatial analysis.

Refer to related definitions of Ecumene and Land Area.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, population density data were available for all standard geographic areas, except enumeration areas (EAs) and federal electoral districts (FEDs).

For 1976, population density data were expressed in both square kilometres and square miles.

Prior to 1976, population density data were expressed in square miles only.

Geographic Classifications: Standard Geographical Classification (SGC)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

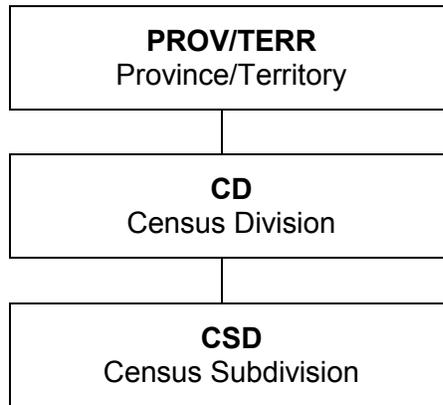
The Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) is Statistics Canada’s official classification for three types of geographic areas: **provinces and territories, census divisions (CDs)** and **census subdivisions (CSDs)**. The SGC provides unique numeric identification (codes) for these hierarchically related geographic areas.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Census subdivisions (CSDs) aggregate to census divisions (CDs) which, in turn, aggregate to province and territory (Figure 21).

Figure 21. Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Hierarchy



The hierarchical relationship is reflected in the seven-digit SGC code, for example:

PR-CD-CSD Code	Description
12 06 008	Province 12: Nova Scotia CD 06: Lunenburg County CSD 008: Mahone Bay
35 06 008	Province 35: Ontario CD 06: Ottawa Division CSD 008: Ottawa

Refer to the related definition of Census Subdivision (CSD) and to the *2001 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Manual, Volumes I and II* (Catalogue Nos. 12-571-XPB and 12-572-XPB), published by Statistics Canada.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

In 1976 and 1971, both SGC and census codes were used to disseminate census data.

In 1966 and 1961, only census codes were used to disseminate census data.

Geographic Classifications: *Statistical Area Classification (SAC)*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The Statistical Area Classification (SAC) groups census subdivisions according to whether they are a component of a census metropolitan area, a census agglomeration, a census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zone (strong MIZ, moderate MIZ, weak MIZ or no MIZ), or the territories (Northwest Territories, Nunavut and Yukon Territory). The SAC is used for data dissemination purposes.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

In using the Statistical Area Classification for census data tabulations, it is possible to sum census data automatically for census subdivisions (CSDs) as follows.

- all CSDs in census metropolitan areas (CMAs);
- all CSDs in census agglomerations (CAs);
- all CSDs in the provinces in the strong MIZ category;
- all CSDs in the provinces in the moderate MIZ category;
- all CSDs in the provinces in the weak MIZ category;
- all CSDs in the provinces in the no MIZ category;
- CSDs in the three territories (Northwest Territories, Yukon Territory and Nunavut), except those that are components of a CMA or CA located in these territories (currently the CAs of Whitehorse and Yellowknife).

Care should be exercised if applying the MIZ concept in the three territories. This is because many CSDs are very large and sparsely populated, which contributes to instability in the place of work–population relationship upon which the MIZ is constructed.

Figure 22 shows the hierarchical relationship represented by the SAC.

Figure 22. Statistical Area Classification (SAC) Hierarchy

Inside CMAs/CAs		Outside CMAs/CAs	
CMAs Census Metropolitan Areas	CAs Census Agglomerations	MIZ* CMA/CA Influenced Zones	Territories
CSD Census Subdivision			

* MIZ categories are strong, moderate, weak or no influence.

Table 2 shows the population distribution of Canada from the 1996 Census using the SAC, and Table 3 shows the number of census subdivisions in each category of the SAC for the 2001 Census.

Table 2. Population Distribution by the Statistical Area Classification, 1996 Census

Statistical Area Classification	Total Population	% of Total Population
CMA	17,864,646	61.9
CA	4,585,209	15.9
Strong MIZ	1,564,700	5.4
Moderate MIZ	2,365,175	8.2
Weak MIZ	2,078,342	7.2
No MIZ	332,604	1.2
Territories	56,085	0.2
Canada Total	28,846,761	100.0

Table 3. Number of Census Subdivisions by the Statistical Area Classification, 2001 Census
As of March 12, 2002

Province/Territory	Total CSDs	Number of Census Subdivisions						
		CMAs	CAs	Strong MIZ	Moderate MIZ	Weak MIZ	No MIZ	Territories
Newfoundland and Labrador	381	13	19	19	153	73	104	–
Prince Edward Island	113	–	24	29	44	12	4	–
Nova Scotia	98	4	18	2	19	40	15	–
New Brunswick	275	17	40	31	94	65	28	–
Quebec	1,476	199	113	256	525	168	215	–
Ontario	586	75	68	96	127	90	130	–
Manitoba	298	11	8	18	68	104	89	–
Saskatchewan	1,002	41	20	53	198	226	464	–
Alberta	452	44	44	38	77	120	129	–
British Columbia	816	67	164	24	83	118	360	–
Yukon Territory	35	–	5	–	–	–	–	30
Northwest Territories	37	–	1	–	–	–	–	36
Nunavut	31	–	–	–	–	–	–	31
Canada	5,600	471	524	566	1,388	1,016	1,538	97

Refer to the related definitions of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ), and Census Subdivision (CSD).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Files: Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs)

Modified on April 15, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs) contain boundaries of standard geographic areas, along with shorelines and lakes, at a level of detail appropriate for small- and medium-scale mapping.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs) for 2001 replace the Digital Cartographic Files (DCF) produced for the 1996 Census.

Cartographic Boundary Files are created by combining block boundaries with hydrographic features. The block boundaries extending into water bodies are “dissolved” and replaced by the shoreline. The revised block limits are aggregated to create the other levels of standard geographic areas (Figure 23).

Figure 23. Example of a Cartographic Boundary File (Provinces and Territories)

The hydrographic features in CBFs are from Natural Resources Canada – the GeoBase Hydrology, Level 0, 2000 (which is based on the National Atlas of Canada 1:1,000,000 hydrography base) and the 1:50,000 and 1:250,000 National Topographic Database (NTDB). Further adjustments are made, such as the generalization of selected hydrographic features.

CBFs are available for the following standard geographic areas:

- provinces and territories;
- federal electoral districts (FEDs), 1996 Representation Order;
- economic regions (ERs) – new for 2001 Census;
- census divisions (CDs);
- census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs);
- census subdivisions (CSDs);
- census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations (CMAs/CAs);
- census tracts (CTs);
- urban areas (UAs);
- designated places (DPLs);
- dissemination areas (DAs).

The Statistical Area Classification (SAC) is shown as an attribute of the CSD on the census subdivision CBF. Forward sortation areas (FSAs) are disseminated with postal code products.

The CBFs are available in latitude/longitude coordinates and in a limited number of formats, such as MapInfo® and Arc/Info® Interchange format. The CBFs are not distributed with software.

CBFs are intended for thematic mapping and analysis purposes. The positional accuracy does not support cadastral, surveying or engineering applications. CBFs can be used in conjunction with Road Network Files (RNFs), since both products are derived from the same sources, and features are generalized in the same manner. The roads in RNFs provide additional geographic context when used with CBFs. CBFs can be used with Census of Population, Census of Agriculture or other Statistics Canada data. Geographic codes provide the linkage between the statistical data and geographic areas.

Refer to the related definitions of Coordinate System, National Geographic Base (NGB) and Road Network Files (RNFs) and to the *Cartographic Boundary Files Reference Guide* (Catalogue No. 92F0171GIE).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For the 1996 Census, Digital Cartographic Files (DCFs) were disseminated for provinces and territories, federal electoral districts, census divisions, census consolidated subdivisions, census subdivisions, census tracts, designated places, urban areas, enumeration areas and agricultural ecumene (national).

Prior to 1996, Digital Cartographic Files were called CARTLIBs. Some of the shorelines were derived from different sources than those used for 1996. As well, designated places, enumeration areas and urban areas were not available.

Forward sortation areas (FSAs) and the urban population ecumene were only available in 1986.

In 1976 and 1981, census consolidated subdivisions and census subdivisions were not available.

Geographic Files: Digital Boundary Files (DBFs)

Digital Boundary Files are discontinued for 2001.

Censuses: 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976

Remarks:

For a description of Digital Boundary Files, refer to the *1996 Census Dictionary* (Catalogue No. 92-351-XIE).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 1991, the DBFs were used for internal purposes only and were not disseminated.

Geographic Files: Digital Cartographic Files (DCF)

Digital Cartographic Files are renamed for the 2001 Census. Refer to the definition of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs).

Geographic Files: Road Network Files (RNFs)

Modified on April 15, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The Road Network Files (RNFs) provide national coverage of roads, province/territory boundaries, and other visible features such as hydrography, as well as attribute information (for example, street names and address ranges for streets with assigned addresses). The RNFs replace the Street Network Files (SNFs), which were a similar product previously available only for the large urban centres of Canada.

Censuses: 2001 (Road Network Files – cover the entire country)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (Street Network Files – cover large urban centres only)

Remarks:

Road Network Files (RNFs) provide 100% coverage of Canada, whereas previously Street Network Files (SNFs) covered mainly large urban centres (less than 1% of the land area and 62% of the population). RNFs contain more roads, road names and address ranges than SNFs. Address ranges are generally available only in the large urban centres of Canada.

The RNFs are derived from the National Geographic Base (NGB). Much of the road network in the NGB was realigned to match Natural Resources Canada's National Topographic Database. However, since the purpose of maintaining Road Network Files (in the National Geographic Base) is to support census and other Statistics Canada activities, topological accuracy takes precedence over absolute positional accuracy. Thus the positional accuracy of the RNFs does not support cadastral, surveying or engineering applications.

The hydrographic features in the Province/Territory Cartographic Boundary File layer, which is included with the RNFs, are from Natural Resources Canada – the GeoBase Hydrology, Level 0, 2000 (which is based on the National Atlas of Canada 1:1,000,000 hydrography base) and the 1:50,000 and 1:250,000 National Topographic Database (NTDB). Further adjustments are made, such as correcting topological discrepancies (roads in water bodies) and generalizing selected hydrographic features.

The road layer in RNFs includes roads, with road names and address ranges (as arc attributes), and geographic codes to identify blocks, census subdivisions and census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations (as polygon attributes). The province/territory boundary layer incorporates hydrography with the boundaries and geographic codes. The boundaries, names and codes for the standard geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2001 (the geographic reference date for the 2001 Census of Canada).

The improved geometry of RNFs, compared to SNFs, allows users to better geographically reference Statistics Canada data. The roads in RNFs provide additional geographic context when used in conjunction with Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs). Since the RNFs are derived from the same source as the CBFs, and features are generalized in the same manner, the RNFs serve as an effective reference layer when CBF users are conducting data analysis and display.

The RNFs are disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates and in a limited number of formats, such as Arc/Info® for and MapInfo® Interchange format. The RNFs are not distributed with software.

Refer to the related definitions of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Dissemination Area (DA), National Geographic Base (NGB), and to the *Road Network File Reference Guide* (Catalogue No. 92F0157GIE).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Refer to the definition of Street Network Files (SNFs) in the *1996 Census Dictionary* (Catalogue No. 92-351-XPE or XIE).

Prior to 1996, Street Network Files were called Area Master Files (AMFs).

Geographic Files: Street Network Files (SNFs)

Street Network Files are discontinued for 2001. Refer to the definition of Road Network Files (RNFs).

Geographic Infrastructure: National Geographic Base (NGB)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The National Geographic Base (NGB) is a new database that contains roads and boundaries of standard geographic areas in one integrated layer, as well as other physical and cultural features (such as hydrography, railroads and power transmission lines) stored as separate layers.

The NGB is an internal, maintenance database that is not disseminated. It supports a wide range of census operations, such as updating the road network and address ranges, supporting the block program, delineating the boundaries of standard geographic areas (including the automated delineation of enumeration areas, urban areas and dissemination areas), and geocoding. As well, the NGB is the source for generating many geography products for the 2001 Census, such as reference maps and Cartographic Boundary Files.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

The NGB now provides 100% digital coverage of Canada, whereas previously Street Network Files were limited to the major urban centres, which covered less than 1% of the land area and 62% of the population.

The main source files for the NGB include:

- Street Network Files (SNFs) from the 1996 Census;
- National Topographic Database (NTDB) digital coverage at 1:50,000 and 1:250,000 from Natural Resources Canada, and Digital Chart of the World (DCW) coverage at 1:1,000,000;
- other digital files (NTDB with names tagged to streets) from Elections Canada.

In addition, portions of the NGB contain information obtained from a variety of other sources, including field operation activities.

Compared to the 1996 SNFs, the NGB has not only an improved road network geometry (since the SNF roads are now realigned to the NTDB road network), but also a greater number of street names and address ranges. Roads and boundaries are edge-matched at map tile limits, but other reference layers are not. Since the primary purpose of NGB is to support census activities, topological accuracy takes precedence over absolute positional accuracy.

The data are maintained and stored in the Lambert Conformal Conic projection based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). Links to other data holdings, such as the address register and postal code files, are incorporated into the database.

Given the improvements to the NGB, geography products for the 2001 Census allow users to geographically reference census data more accurately when compared to the 1996 Census products (e.g. Street Network Files, Digital Boundary Files and Digital Cartographic Files).

Refer to the related definitions of Block, Block-face, Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Coordinate System, Datum, Geocoding, Map Projection, Road Network Files (RNFs), Reference Map and Representative Point, and to related *Reference Guides* (Cartographic Boundary Files and Road Network Files) (Catalogue Nos. 92F0171GIE and 92F0157GIE).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Units: *Block*

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Area equivalent to a city block bounded by intersecting streets. These areas cover all of Canada.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A block is an area bounded on all sides by roads and/or boundaries of standard geographic areas. Blocks cover all the territory of Canada. The block is the smallest geographic area for which population and dwelling counts are disseminated.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

The block is a new basic geographic area in the National Geographic Base. Because blocks are primarily an artefact of the road network, the number of blocks and their creation is a function of how up-to-date the road network database is prior to the census. It is not possible to have a road network reflecting exactly the situation on Census Day, especially in high growth areas. For the 2001 Census, the road network is up-to-date nationally to at least Spring 1997, with more recent updates in higher growth areas.

Highway medians, ramp areas and other irregular polygons may form blocks on their own. Blocks are aggregated to build enumeration areas (EAs) and dissemination areas (DAs). They are the common link between the EA and DA, and therefore must respect the boundaries of the 2001 Census enumeration areas (that are used for data collection) as well as the boundaries of the dissemination areas. Blocks do not necessarily respect 1996 Census EA boundaries.

A natural or morphological block is split to form two or more blocks wherever a block is traversed by the boundaries of selected standard geographic areas, namely federal electoral districts (FEDs), census subdivisions (CSDs), census tracts (CTs) or designated places (DPLs). This makes it possible to aggregate block data to all standard geographic areas for dissemination.

A block may also be formed to satisfy collection requirements. For example, workload limits require that blocks be formed for large apartment buildings or collective dwellings. In these cases, blocks within blocks result. As well, where the road network is sparse or even non-existent, enumeration area boundaries may be established to constrain the coverage area for the Census Representative. In these situations, the block respects the boundary of the enumeration area.

Starting with the 2001 Census, households and their associated population and dwelling counts are geographically referenced to the block at the time of collection. However, the linkage to the block-face level is a post-collection activity for areas having streets with address ranges. With the introduction of the block program, user-defined areas can be delineated with increased precision.

Only population and dwelling counts are disseminated by the block (with the dissemination area being the smallest standard geographic area for which characteristic data are disseminated). To ensure confidentiality, population counts are adjusted for blocks having a population of less than 15.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of blocks by province and territory.

For background information, consult the Statistics Canada Web site (www.statcan.ca) to download a free copy of the Geography Working Paper entitled *Introducing the Dissemination Area for the 2001 Census: an Update* (Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE).

Refer to the related definitions of Block-face, Dissemination Area (DA), Enumeration Area (EA) and National Geographic Base (NGB).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, households and their associated population and dwelling counts were geographically referenced to the enumeration area at the time of collection.

Geographic Units: Census Agglomeration (CA)

See the definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Geographic Units: Census Agricultural Region (CAR)

Modified on May 14, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Census agricultural regions are composed of groups of adjacent census divisions. In Saskatchewan, census agricultural regions are made up of groups of adjacent census consolidated subdivisions, but these groups do not necessarily respect census division boundaries.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981

Remarks:

Census agricultural regions are not defined in the Yukon Territory, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut. Also, in Prince Edward Island, for the purpose of disseminating data, each of the three existing census divisions (counties) is treated as a census agricultural region.

In the Prairie provinces, census agricultural regions are commonly referred to as **crop districts**.

Each census agricultural region is assigned a two-digit code that is not unique between provinces. In order to identify each CAR uniquely in Canada, the two-digit province code must precede the CAR code. For example:

PR-CAR Code	CAR Name
46 03	Census Agricultural Region 3 (Man.)
59 03	Thompson–Okanagan (B.C.)

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census agricultural regions by province and territory.

Census agricultural regions are used by the Census of Agriculture for disseminating agricultural statistics.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Before 1996, census agricultural regions were called “agricultural regions”.

Geographic Units: Census Consolidated Subdivision (CCS)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A census consolidated subdivision (CCS) is a grouping of adjacent census subdivisions. Generally the smaller, more urban census subdivisions (towns, villages, etc.) are combined with the surrounding, larger, more rural census subdivision, in order to create a geographic level between the census subdivision and the census division.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966

Remarks:

Census consolidated subdivisions are defined within census divisions (CDs) according to the following criteria:

1. A census subdivision (CSD) with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres can form a CCS of its own. Census subdivisions having a land area smaller than 25 square kilometres are usually grouped with a larger census subdivision.
2. A census subdivision with a land area greater than 25 square kilometres and surrounded on more than half its perimeter by another census subdivision is usually included as part of the CCS formed by the surrounding census subdivision.
3. A census subdivision with a population greater than 100,000 according to the last census usually forms a CCS on its own.
4. The census consolidated subdivision’s name usually coincides with its largest census subdivision component in terms of land area.

The geographic code assigned to each census consolidated subdivision is the seven-digit Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) code of one of its component CSDs, usually the one with the largest land area (Figure 24 shows a hypothetical example). This assignment process also makes the CCS code unique across Canada. For example:

PR-CD-CCS Code	CCS Name
24 32 045	Plessisville (Que.)
35 32 045	Blandford-Blenheim (Ont.)

Figure 24. Example of Census Consolidated Subdivisions (CCSs) and Census Subdivisions (CSDs)

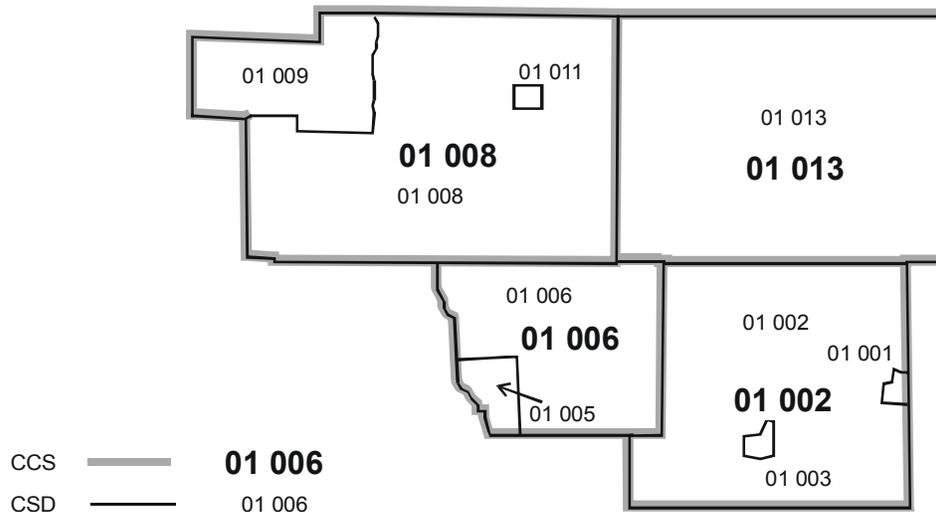


Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census consolidated subdivisions by province and territory.

CCSs are used primarily for disseminating Census of Agriculture data. They form the building block for census agricultural regions in Saskatchewan. In all other provinces, census agricultural regions are made up of census division groupings.

CCSs are relatively stable geographic units because they have infrequent boundary changes and therefore can be useful for longitudinal analysis.

Refer to the related definitions of Census Division (CD) and Census Subdivision (CSD).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For 1991, significant boundary changes were made to CCSs in Quebec when census divisions were restructured to recognize the *municipalités régionales de comté*.

For 1976, the term “census consolidated subdivision” was introduced. Prior to 1976, CCSs were referred to by the term “reference code”.

Geographic Units: Census Division (CD)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Group of neighbouring municipalities joined together for the purposes of regional planning and managing common services (such as police or ambulance services). These groupings are established under laws in effect in certain provinces and territories of Canada. For example, a **census division** might correspond to a county, a regional municipality or a regional district. In other provinces and territories where laws do not provide for such areas, Statistics Canada defines equivalent areas for statistical reporting purposes in cooperation with these provinces and territories.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Census division (CD) is the general term for provincially legislated areas (such as county, *municipalité régionale de comté* and regional district) or their equivalents. Census divisions are intermediate geographic areas between the province level and the municipality (census subdivision).

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Census divisions have been established in provincial law to facilitate regional planning, as well as the provision of services that can be more effectively delivered on a scale larger than a municipality. In Newfoundland and Labrador, Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, Yukon Territory, Northwest Territories and Nunavut, provincial/territorial law does not provide for these administrative geographic areas. Therefore, Statistics Canada, in cooperation with these provinces and territories, has created equivalent areas called census divisions for the purpose of disseminating statistical data. In the Yukon Territory, the census division is equivalent to the entire territory.

In New Brunswick, six municipalities (census subdivisions) straddle the legal county boundaries. In order to maintain the integrity of component municipalities, Statistics Canada modified the census division boundaries. Specifically, the following six municipalities straddle county boundaries; the county underlined indicates the CD in which these municipalities are completely located:

- Belledune (Restigouche/Gloucester)
- Fredericton (York/Sunbury)
- Grand Falls (Victoria/Madawaska)
- Meductic (Carleton/York)
- Minto (Sunbury/Queens)
- Rogersville (Kent/Northumberland)

Next to provinces, census divisions are the most stable administrative geographic areas, and are therefore often used in longitudinal analysis.

Census Division Type

The type indicates the legal status of the census division according to official designations adopted by provincial authorities. The exception is the CD type “census division”, which describes those units created as equivalents by Statistics Canada in cooperation with the provinces.

Table 4 shows CD types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.

Table 4. Census Division Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census

As of March 12, 2002

CD Type		Canada	Nfld. Lab.	P.E.I.	N.S.	N.B.	Que.	Ont.	Man.	Sask.	Alta.	B.C.	Y.T.	N.W.T.	Nvt.
CTY	County	57	–	3	18	15	–	21	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CU	Communauté urbaine	3	–	–	–	–	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
DIS	District	10	–	–	–	–	–	10	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
DIV	Census Division	80	10	–	–	–	3	7	23	18	19	–	–	–	–
DM	District Municipality	1	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
MRC	Municipalité régionale de comté	93	–	–	–	–	93	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
RD	Regional District	27	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	27	–	–	–
REG	Region	6	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	2	3
RM	Regional Municipality	7	–	–	–	–	–	7	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
TER	Territory	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–
UC	United Counties	3	–	–	–	–	–	3	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
TOTAL		288	10	3	18	15	99	49	23	18	19	28	1	2	3

Census Division Code

Each census division is assigned a two-digit code that is not unique to each of the provinces and territories, and is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to identify each CD uniquely in Canada, the two-digit province/territory code must precede the two-digit census division (CD) code. For example:

PR-CD Code	CD Name
13 01	Saint John County (N.B.)
24 01	Les Îles-de-la-Madeleine (Que.)

Changes to Census Divisions for the 2001 Census

In Ontario, as a result of the amalgamation of municipalities (census subdivisions), there are six cases where the census division (CD) is now composed of only one census subdivision (CSD), and one case where a CD is composed of only two CSDs. For these seven cases, the CD type and CD names are changed (Table 5). Also in Ontario, the CD type "Metropolitan Municipality (MM)" is discontinued.

Table 5. Changes to Census Division (CD) Types in Ontario, 1996 to 2001

CD Code	Former CD Type	Former CD Name	New CD Type	New CD Name	CSD Component(s)		
					CSD Code	CSD Type	CSD Name
3506	RM	Ottawa-Carleton Regional Municipality	DIV	Ottawa Division	3506008	C	Ottawa
3513	CTY	Prince Edward County	DIV	Prince Edward Division	3513020	C	Prince Edward
3516	CTY	Victoria County	DIV	Kawartha Lakes Division	3516010	C	Kawartha Lakes
3520	MM	Toronto Metropolitan Municipality	DIV	Toronto Division	3520005	C	Toronto
3525	RM	Hamilton-Wentworth Regional Municipality	DIV	Hamilton Division	3525005	C	Hamilton
3536	CTY	Kent County	DIV	Chatham-Kent Division	3536020 3536029	C R	Chatham-Kent Moravian 47
3553	RM	Sudbury Regional Municipality	DIV	Greater Sudbury Division	3553005	C	Greater Sudbury

In Quebec, several *municipalités régionales de comté* (MRCs) were affected by boundary changes:

- the CSDs of Bromptonville, V (24 42 010) and Brompton, CT (24 42 015) were taken from Le Val-Saint-François (24 42) and annexed to Sherbrooke (24 43);
- the CSD of Saint-Malo, M (24 41 005) was taken from Le Haut-Saint-François (24 41) and annexed to Coaticook (24 44);
- the CSD of Saint-Jean-Baptiste, P (24 55 070) was taken from Rouville (24 55) and annexed to La Vallée-du-Richelieu (24 57);
- the CSD of Ulverton, M (24 49 010) was taken from Drummond (24 49) and annexed to Le Val-Saint-François (24 42).

In Ontario, two counties were affected by boundary changes:

- the CSD of Murray, TP (35 14 001) was taken from Northumberland County (35 14) and annexed to the newly incorporated CSD of Quinte West, C (35 12 015) in Hastings County (35 12).

In the Northwest Territories, the CSD of Holman, HAM (61 08 095) was taken from Kitikmeot Region (61 08) and annexed to Inuvik Region (61 07).

When Nunavut came into being on April 1, 1999, three census divisions (and the 31 census subdivisions within them) were taken from the Northwest Territories and assigned to Nunavut. This change did not affect the boundaries or codes of the census divisions and census subdivisions; however, the province code changed from 61 to 62:

- 61 04 Baffin Region became 62 04 Baffin Region;
- 61 05 Keewatin Region became 62 05 Keewatin Region;
- 61 08 Kitikmeot Region became 62 08 Kitikmeot Region.

The boundaries, names and codes of CDs reflect those in effect on January 1, 2001, the **geographic reference date** for the 2001 Census of Canada. Information about any CD changes that were effective on or before the January 1, 2001 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to March 1, 2001, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definitions of Census Subdivision (CSD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Between 1991 and 1996, there were a number of significant changes to the boundaries of census divisions:

- In New Brunswick, the CSD of Belledune, VL (13 15 034) and part of the CSD of Beresford, PAR (13 15 012) were taken from Gloucester County (13 15) and annexed to Restigouche County (13 14).
- In Quebec, four MRCs experienced boundary changes when the CSD of Saint-Thomas, P (24 52 025) was taken from D’Autray (24 52) and annexed to Joliette (24 61), and the CSD of Entrelacs, M (24 77 005) was taken from Les Pays-d’en-Haut (24 77) and annexed to Matawinie (24 62).
- In Alberta, a large part of the CSD called Improvement District No. 18, ID (48 16 030) was taken from Division No. 16 (48 16) and added to the CSD of Bonnyville No. 87, MD (48 12 004) in Division No. 12 (48 12). Also, to avoid having Division No. 15 (48 15) in multiple polygons, the CSDs of Blood 148A, R (48 15 823) and Improvement District No. 4, ID (48 15 001) were deleted from Division No. 15 and assigned to Division No. 3 (48 03).
- In British Columbia, a large CD resulted when the Regional Districts of Fraser–Cheam (59 09), Central Fraser Valley (59 11) and Dewdney–Alouette (59 13) were combined to form the Fraser Valley Regional District (59 09). Finally, the southwest tip of the Kitimat–Stikine Regional District (59 49) was annexed to the Skeena–Queen Charlotte Regional District (59 47).

In 1991, the number of census divisions in Quebec increased from 76 to 99 as a result of the implementation of the *municipalités régionales de comté* (MRC) or their equivalent, e.g. *communautés urbaines*, *territoire conventionné*. This represented a completely new census division structure. In order to accommodate MRCs within the two-digit census division code of the Standard Geographical Classification, the province agreed to groupings of MRCs or their equivalents in order to confine the total number of units to 99. These MRC groupings (called census divisions) were:

- the *Administration régionale* Kativik and the *région de la Baie James*, forming the census division of Nord-du-Québec;
- the Minganie MRC and the *municipalités de la Basse-Côte-Nord*, forming the census division of Minganie–Basse-Côte-Nord;
- the Sept-Rivières MRC and the Caniapiscau MRC, forming the census division of Sept-Rivières–Caniapiscau.

Geographic Units: Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA)

Modified on December 17, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Area consisting of one or more adjacent municipalities situated around a major urban core. To form a census metropolitan area, the urban core must have a population of at least 100,000. To form a census agglomeration, the urban core must have a population of at least 10,000.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A census metropolitan area (CMA) or a census agglomeration (CA) is formed by one or more adjacent municipalities centred on a large urban area (known as the **urban core**). The census population count of the urban core is at least 10,000 to form a census agglomeration and at least 100,000 to form a census metropolitan area. To be included in the CMA or CA, other adjacent municipalities must have a high degree of integration with the central urban area, as measured by commuting flows derived from census place of work data.

If the population of the urban core of a CA declines below 10,000, the CA is retired. However, once an area becomes a CMA, it is retained as a CMA even if the population of its urban core declines below 100,000. The urban areas in the CMA or CA that are not contiguous to the **urban core** are called the **urban fringe**. Rural areas in the CMA or CA are called the **rural fringe**.

When a CA has an urban core of at least 50,000 based on census counts, it is subdivided into census tracts. Census tracts are maintained for the CA even if the population of the urban core subsequently falls below 50,000. All CMAs are subdivided into census tracts.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956, 1951, 1941

Remarks:

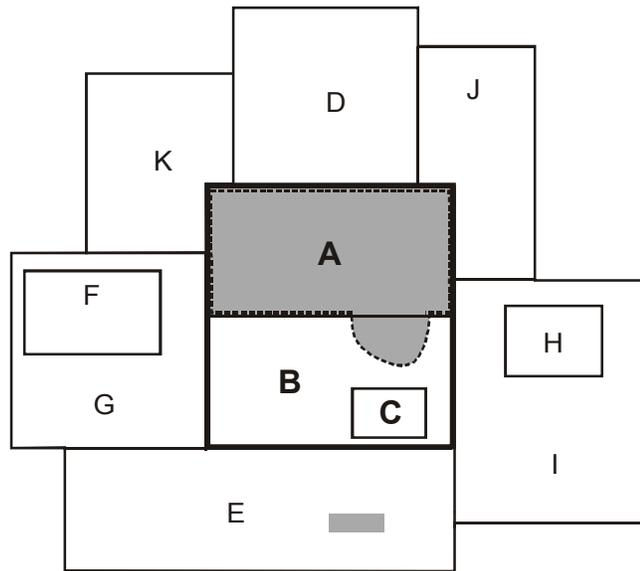
Delineation Rules for CMAs and CAs

A CMA or CA is delineated using adjacent municipalities (census subdivisions) as building blocks. These census subdivisions (CSDs) are included in the CMA or CA if they meet at least one of the following rules. The rules are ranked in order of priority. A CSD obeying the rules for two or more CMAs or CAs is included in the one for which it has the highest ranked rule. If the CSD meets rules that have the same rank, the decision is based on the population or the number of commuters involved. A CMA or CA is delineated to ensure spatial contiguity.

1. **The Urban Core Rule:** The CSD falls completely or partly inside the urban core.

A **core hole** is a CSD enclosed by a CSD that is at least partly within the urban core and must be included to maintain spatial contiguity. In Figure 25, CSDs A, B and C are included in the CMA or CA because of the urban core rule. CSD C is a core hole.

Figure 25. The Urban Core Rule

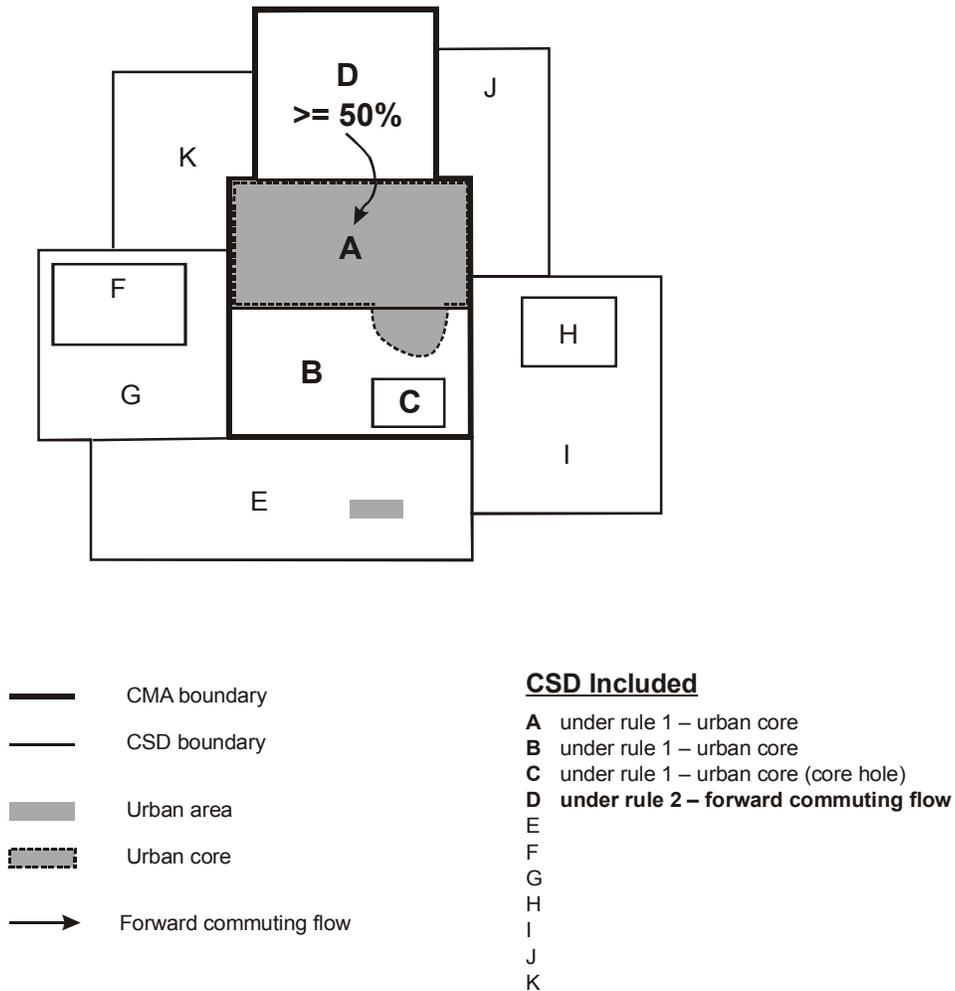


<p>— CMA boundary</p> <p>— CSD boundary</p> <p>■ Urban area</p> <p>⋯ Urban core</p>	<p>CSD Included</p> <p>A under rule 1 – urban core</p> <p>B under rule 1 – urban core</p> <p>C under rule 1 – urban core (core hole)</p> <p>D</p> <p>E</p> <p>F</p> <p>G</p> <p>H</p> <p>I</p> <p>J</p> <p>K</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. **The Forward Commuting Flow Rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 50% of the employed labour force **living** in the CSD **works** in the delineation urban core (see following note), as determined from commuting data based on the place of work question in the last decennial census (1991 Census).

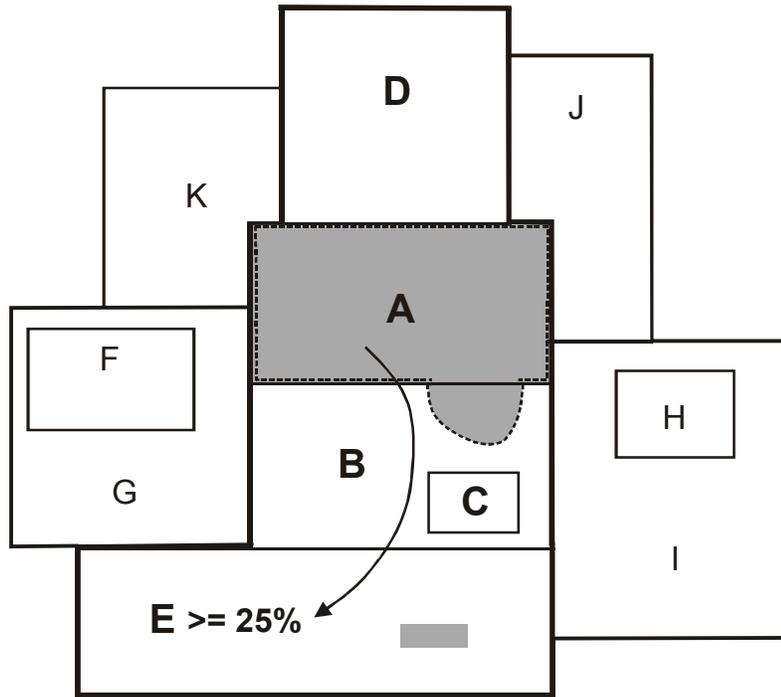
Note: For CMA and CA delineation purposes, a **delineation urban core** is created respecting CSD limits. For a CSD to be included in the delineation urban core, at least 75% of a CSD’s population must reside within the urban core. In Figure 26, CSD A is part of the delineation urban core since its entire population resides within the urban core. CSD B would also be part of the delineation urban core if at least 75% of its population resides within the urban core. For this example, we have assumed that less than 75% of the population of CSD B resides within the urban core; therefore, CSD B and its enclosed hole, CSD C, are not considered to be part of the delineation urban core.

Figure 26. The Forward Commuting Flow Rule



3. **The Reverse Commuting Flow Rule:** Given a minimum of 100 commuters, at least 25% of the employed labour force **working** in the CSD **lives** in the delineation urban core as determined from commuting data based on the place of work question in the last decennial census (1991 Census). In Figure 27, at least 25% of the employed labour force working in CSD E lives in CSD A (see Note for Rule 2).

Figure 27. The Reverse Commuting Flow Rule



- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CMA boundary CSD boundary Urban area Urban core Reverse commuting flow | <p>CSD Included</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A under rule 1 – urban core B under rule 1 – urban core C under rule 1 – urban core (core hole) D under rule 2 – forward commuting flow E under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow F G H I J K |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

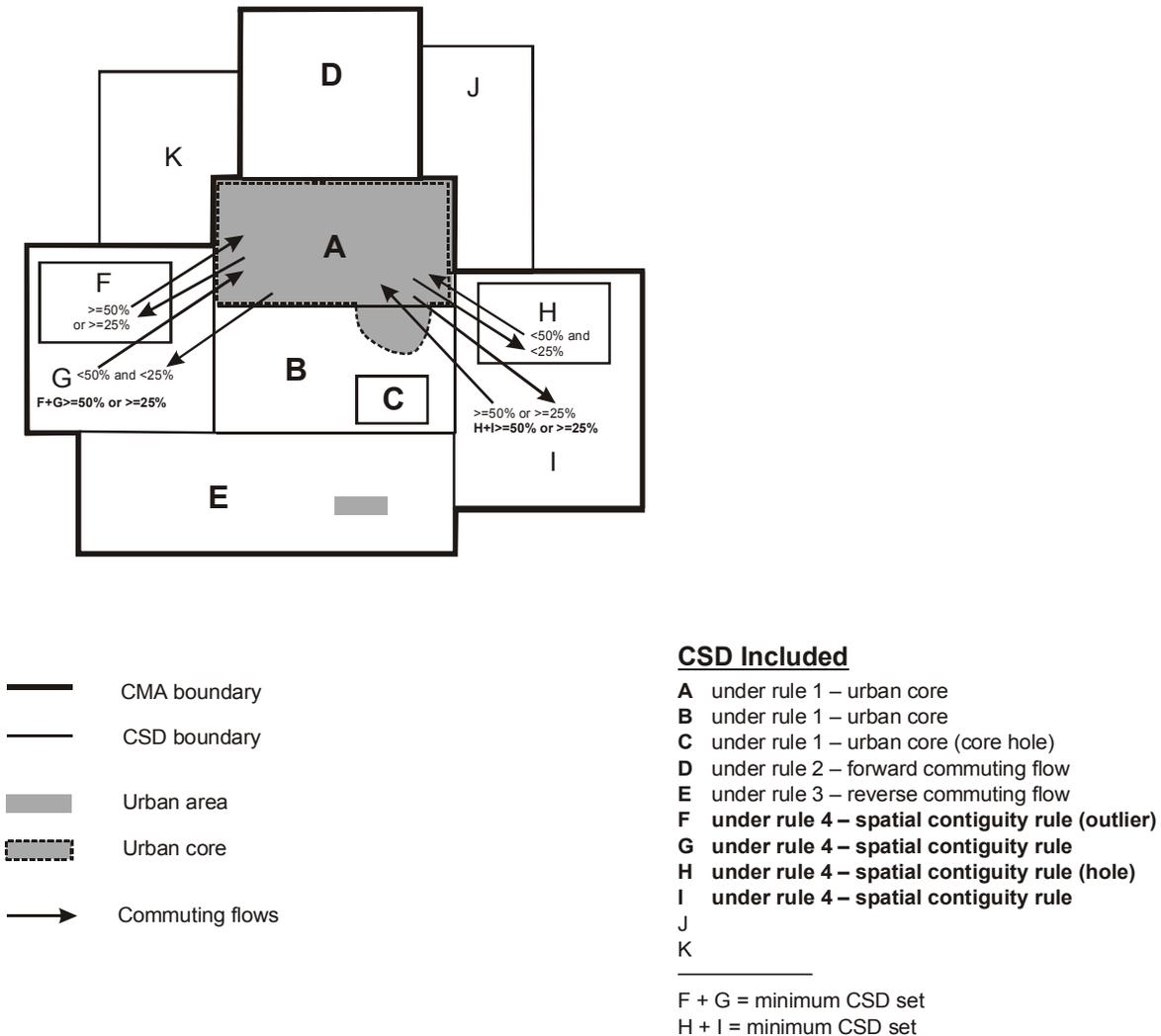
4. **The Spatial Contiguity Rule:** CSDs that do not meet a commuting flow threshold may be included in a CMA or CA, and CSDs that do meet a commuting flow threshold may be excluded from a CMA or CA.

Two situations can lead to inclusion or exclusion of a CSD in a CMA or CA for reasons of spatial contiguity. Specifically these are:

Outlier – A CSD (F in Figure 28) with sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (G in Figure 28) with insufficient commuting flows, but which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set (F + G). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse), then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

Hole – A CSD (H in Figure 28) with insufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse) is enclosed by a CSD (I in Figure 28) with sufficient commuting flows, and which is adjacent to the CMA or CA. When this situation arises, the CSDs within and including the enclosing CSD are grouped to create a minimum CSD set (H + I). The total commuting flows for the minimum CSD set are then considered for inclusion in the CMA or CA. If the minimum CSD set has sufficient commuting flows (either forward or reverse), then all of its CSDs are included in the CMA or CA.

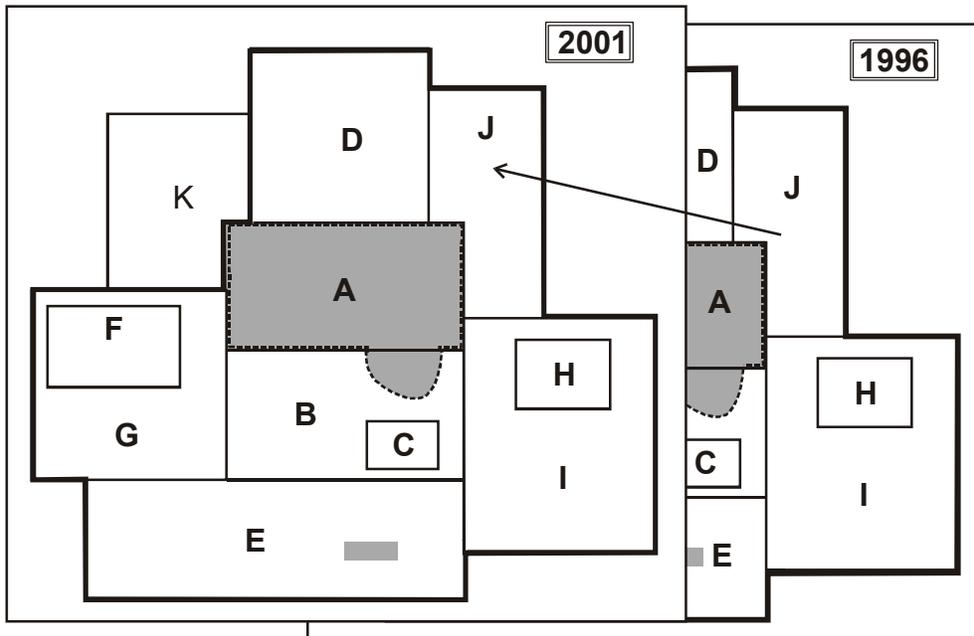
Figure 28. The Spatial Contiguity Rule



Note: CSD F (outlier) has sufficient flows – either $\geq 50\%$ forward or $\geq 25\%$ reverse commuting flows.
 CSD G has insufficient flows – has $< 50\%$ forward and $< 25\%$ reverse commuting flows.
 CSD H (hole) has insufficient flows – has $< 50\%$ forward and $< 25\%$ reverse commuting flows.
 CSD I has sufficient flows – either $\geq 50\%$ forward or $\geq 25\%$ reverse commuting flows.

- The Historical Comparability Rule:** To maintain historical comparability for CMA and larger CAs (those with census tracts in the previous census), CSDs are retained in the CMA or CA even if their commuting flow percentages fall below the commuting flow thresholds (Rules 2 and 3). See Figure 29.

Figure 29. The Historical Comparability Rule



CSD Included

- CMA boundary
- CSD boundary
- Urban area
- Urban core

- A under rule 1 – urban core
- B under rule 1 – urban core
- C under rule 1 – urban core (core hole)
- D under rule 2 – forward commuting flow
- E under rule 3 – reverse commuting flow
- F under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule (outlier)
- G under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule
- H under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule (hole)
- I under rule 4 – spatial contiguity rule
- J **under rule 5 – historical comparability**
- K

An exception to the historical comparability rule is made in cases where CSDs have undergone changes to their boundaries, such as annexations. To determine whether to keep or exclude a CSD, place of work data are retabulated for the CSD with boundary changes, and a decision to include or exclude the CSD is made according to the previous rules.

- Manual adjustments:** A CMA or CA represents an area that is economically and socially integrated. However, there are certain limitations to the extent by which this ideal can be met. Since the CSDs that are used as building blocks in CMA and CA delineation are administrative units, their boundaries are not always the most suitable with respect to CMA and CA delineation. There are always situations where the application of the above rules creates undesirable outcomes, or where the rules cannot be easily applied. In these circumstances, a manual override is sometimes applied to ensure that the integrity of the program is retained. For example, in Sherbrooke CMA, the CSD of Compton Station, SD, which is in two parts, is included to maintain spatial contiguity.

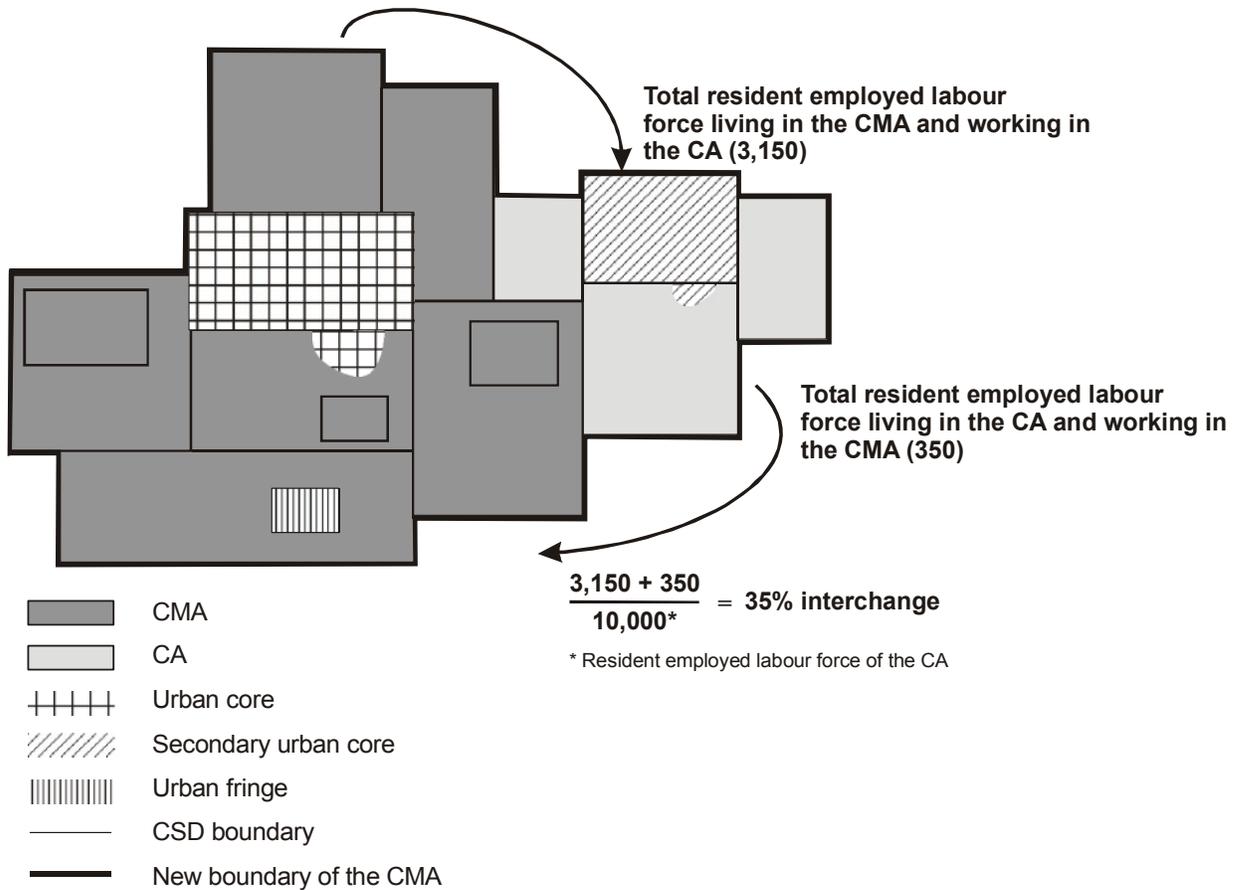
7. **Merging Adjacent CMAs and CAs:** A CA adjacent to a CMA can be merged with the CMA if the total percentage commuting interchange between the CA and CMA is equal to at least 35% of the employed labour force living in the CA, based on place of work data from the decennial census. The total percentage commuting interchange is the sum of the commuting flow in both directions between the CMA and the CA as a percentage of the labour force living in the CA (i.e. resident employed labour force).

$$\frac{\text{Total resident employed labour force living in the CA and working in the CMA} + \text{Total resident employed labour force living in the CMA and working in the CA}}{\text{Resident employed labour force of the CA}} \times 100\%$$

If more than one CA is adjacent to the same CMA, each CA is assessed separately with the CMA. Several CAs may be merged with one CMA. If the total percentage commuting interchange is less than 35%, the CMA and CA are not merged.

After a CA is merged with a CMA, the urban core of the former CA is called the **secondary urban core** of the CMA.

Figure 30. Example of a Merged Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration



Names and Coding Structure

CMA and CA **names** are usually based on the principal urban area or census subdivision (as of the census reference date) within the CMA or CA. Each CMA and CA is assigned a three-digit **code** that identifies it uniquely in Canada. The first digit is the same as the second digit of the province code in which the CMA or CA is located. If a CMA or CA spans a provincial boundary, then the province code assigned represents the province with the greater proportion of urban core population. Codes for CMAs or CAs in the Yukon Territory and the Northwest Territories begin with the same digit as for those CMAs or CAs located in British Columbia. There are currently no CMAs or CAs in Nunavut.

CMA/CA Code	CMA/CA Name
001	St. John's CMA (Nfld.Lab.)
215	Truro CA (N.S.)
462	Montréal CMA (Que.)
995	Yellowknife CA (N.W.T.)

If data for provincial parts are required, it is recommended that the two-digit province code precede the CMA/CA code for those CMAs/CAs that cross provincial boundaries. For example:

PR-CMA/CA Code	CMA/CA Name
24 505	Ottawa–Hull CMA (Que.)
35 505	Ottawa–Hull CMA (Ont.)
47 840	Lloydminster CA (Sask.)
48 840	Lloydminster CA (Alta.)

Changes to the Number of CMAs and CAs for the 2001 Census

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations by province and territory.

Two CAs from the previous census became CMAs: Kingston, Ontario and Abbotsford, British Columbia.

Seven new CAs were created: Amos, Que., Amherstburg, Ont., Caledon, Ont., Petawawa, Ont., Brooks, Alta., Squamish, B.C. and Parksville, B.C. However, the Amherstburg CA was then merged with the Windsor CMA due to its high commuting interchange with that CMA, and similarly the Caledon CA was merged with the Toronto CMA.

The 1996 CA of Strathroy merged with the CMA of London after the City of Strathroy amalgamated with the township of Caradoc to become the township of Strathroy–Caradoc, which is adjacent to the London CMA.

One CA (Smiths Falls, Ont.) was retired because the population of its urban core dropped below 10,000 in 1996.

Prior to 2001, adjacent CMAs and CAs that had sufficient commuting interchange to be merged (35% or more) were identified by the terms “primary census metropolitan area (PCMA)” and “primary census agglomeration (PCA)”. The terms “consolidated census metropolitan area” and “consolidated census agglomeration” described the sum of the component CMAs and CAs. Census data were disseminated for these areas. These terms will **not** be used for the standard dissemination program for 2001. The *1996 Census Dictionary* (Catalogue No. 92-351-XIE) provides further details about these discontinued terms.

Refer to the *Geography working paper series*, Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE2002001 for more detailed information about changes to CMAs and CAs for the 2001 Census.

Data Quality

CMAs and CAs are statistically comparable because they are delineated in the same way across Canada. They differ from other areas such as trading or marketing areas, or regional planning areas designated by regional authorities for planning and other purposes, and should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

The CSD limits used in CMA and CA delineation are those in effect on January 1, 2001 (the **geographic reference date** for the 2001 Census) and received by Statistics Canada before March 1, 2001. In addition, CMA and CA delineation uses commuting data based on the place of work question asked in the decennial census. Thus, the 2001 and 1996 CMAs and CAs are based on population and place of work data from the 1991 Census. The 1991 and 1986 CMAs and CAs were based on the data from the 1981 Census.

Users should be aware that the Canadian CMA/CA program differs from the metropolitan statistical area program in the United States. Although the delineation methodologies are similar, the entry point for the U.S. metropolitan area program is lower – any urban core of 50,000 or more would be recognized as a CMA in the U.S.

Refer to the related definitions of Census Subdivision (CSD), Urban Area (UA), and Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For more information, refer to Paper No. 2002-1 of the *Geography Working Paper Series*, entitled “Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations with Census Tracts for the 2001 Census” and written by Peter Murphy and Henry Puderer ([Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE](#)).

- 1996 – Two changes to CMA/CA delineation rules were implemented to preserve data comparability over time. CMAs could be consolidated with CAs, but they could not be consolidated with other CMAs. A primary census agglomeration (PCA) could not be retired from a consolidated CMA or CA (with census tracts at the previous census) even if its total commuting interchange percentage dropped below the consolidation threshold of 35%. Exceptions to this rule could occur due to changes in the physical structure of the urban areas used to determine the urban cores.
- Minimum sets of CSDs were used instead of the **census consolidated subdivisions (CCSs)** for evaluation in the spatial contiguity rule. Refer to the Spatial Contiguity Rule (point 4).

-
- 1986 – Introduction of the consolidated and primary CMA and CA concept.
- The forward commuting threshold was raised from 40% to 50% to control for differences in processing of the place of work data between 1971 and 1981.
 - Introduction of the minimum of 100 commuters for forward and reverse commuting for both CMAs and CAs.
 - Single CSD (component) CAs were permitted.
- 1981 – Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CAs. For both CMAs and CAs, the forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25%.
- The minimum urbanized core population for CAs was raised from 2,000 to 10,000.
 - CAs were eligible for census tracts if they had a CSD with a population of at least 50,000 at the time of the previous census. Single CSD (component) CAs could be created for subdivision into census tracts.
- 1976 – Commuting data based on the place of work question of the previous decennial census were used for the first time to delineate CMAs. The forward commuting threshold was 40% and the reverse commuting threshold was 25% for the CMAs.
- For CAs, see 1971.
- 1971 – CMAs were defined as main labour market areas, but were delineated according to alternate criteria based on the labour force composition, population growth rate and accessibility. At this time, the CMA of Saint John, N.B. was “grandfathered”.
- CAs were comprised of at least two adjacent municipal entities. These entities had to be at least partly urban and belong to an urbanized core having a population of at least 2,000. The urbanized core included a largest city and a remainder, each with a population of at least 1,000, and had a population density of at least 1,000 per square mile (386 persons per square kilometre).
- 1966 – See 1961.
- 1961 – CMAs were delineated around cities with a population of at least 50,000, if the population density and labour force composition criteria were met, and the total CMA population was at least 100,000.
- CAs were called major urban areas; see 1951.
- 1956 – See 1951.
- 1951 – The term “census metropolitan area” appeared for the first time. This term designated cities of over 50,000 having fringe municipalities in close geographic, economic and social relations, the whole constituting a unit of over 100,000.
- The concept of “major urban areas”, the forerunners to CAs, was introduced. The term designated urban areas in which the largest city had a population of at least 25,000 and fewer than 50,000.
- 1941 – Data were published for “Greater Cities”, i.e. those cities which have well-defined satellite communities in close economic relationship to them.

Geographic Units: **Census Subdivision (CSD)**

Modified on December 4, 2003

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Area that is a municipality or an area that is deemed to be equivalent to a municipality for statistical reporting purposes (e.g. as an Indian reserve or an unorganized territory). Municipal status is defined by laws in effect in each province and territory in Canada.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Census subdivision (CSD) is the general term for municipalities (as determined by provincial legislation) or areas treated as municipal equivalents for statistical purposes (for example, Indian reserves, Indian settlements and unorganized territories).

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Census Subdivision Type

Census subdivisions (CSDs) are classified into 46 types according to official designations adopted by provincial or federal authorities. Two exceptions are “Subdivision of Unorganized” in Newfoundland and Labrador, and “Subdivision of County Municipality” in Nova Scotia, which are geographic areas created as equivalents for municipalities by Statistics Canada, in cooperation with those provinces, for the purpose of disseminating statistical data.

The **census subdivision type** accompanies the census subdivision name in order to distinguish CSDs from each other, for example, Granby, V (for the *ville* of Granby) and Granby, CT (for the *municipalité de canton* of Granby).

Changes to CSD types for 2001 include the following:

1. CSD types added

- **island municipality (IM)** in British Columbia
- **Nisga’a Land (NL)** in British Columbia
- **Nisga’a Village (NVL)** in British Columbia
- **regional district electoral area (RDA)** in British Columbia
- **region (RG)** in Newfoundland and Labrador
- **Teslin Land (TL)** in the Yukon Territory

2. CSD types deleted

- **borough (BOR)** in Ontario (the unique Borough of East York was dissolved and amalgamated with the City of Toronto on January 1, 1998)
- **northern town (NT)** in Saskatchewan (the only two northern towns were changed to towns)
- **subdivision of regional district (SRD)** in British Columbia (this type was replaced by the regional district electoral area)

3. Other changes

- In Newfoundland and Labrador, the CSD type “community (COM)” was changed to the CSD type “town (T)”.
- In Ontario, the CSD type “improvement district (ID)” was changed to the CSD type “township (TP)”.

Table 6 shows CSD types, their abbreviated forms, and their distribution by province and territory.

Table 6. Census Subdivision Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census

As of March 12, 2002

Census Subdivision Type		Total	Nfld. Lab.	P.E.I.	N.S.	N.B.	Que.	Ont.	Man.	Sask.	Alta.	B.C.	Y.T.	N.W.T.	Nvt.
		5,600	381	113	98	275	1,476	586	298	1,002	452	816	35	37	31
C	City – Cité	148	3	2	–	7	2	51	8	14	15	44	1	1	–
CC	Chartered Community	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	–
CM	County (Municipality)	28	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	28	–	–	–	–
COM	Community	33	–	33	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CT	Canton (Municipalité de)	66	–	–	–	–	66	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
CU	Cantons unis (Municipalité de)	7	–	–	–	–	7	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
DM	District Municipality	53	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	53	–	–	–
HAM	Hamlet	36	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	10	24
ID	Improvement District	8	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	8	–	–	–	–
IGD	Indian Government District	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	–	–	–
IM	Island Municipality	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–
LGD	Local Government District	2	–	–	–	–	–	–	2	–	–	–	–	–	–
LOT	Township and Royalty	67	–	67	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
M	Municipalité	590	–	–	–	–	590	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
MD	Municipal District	48	–	–	12	–	–	–	–	–	36	–	–	–	–
NH	Northern Hamlet	9	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	9	–	–	–	–	–
NL	Nisga’a Land	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1	–	–	–
NV	Northern Village	13	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	13	–	–	–	–	–
NVL	Nisga’a Village	5	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	5	–	–	–

Continued on next page

Census Subdivision Type (Cont'd)		Total	Nfld. Lab.	P.E.I.	N.S.	N.B.	Que.	Ont.	Man.	Sask.	Alta.	B.C.	Y.T.	N.W.T.	Nvt.
P	Paroisse (Municipalité de)	265	-	-	-	-	265	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
PAR	Parish	152	-	-	-	152	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
R	Indian Reserve – Réserve indienne	1,052	1	4	24	19	31	145	78	169	88	487	4	2	-
RC	Rural Community	1	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
RDA	Regional District Electoral Area	165	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	165	-	-	-
RG	Region	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
RGM	Regional Municipality	4	-	-	3	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-
RM	Rural Municipality	417	-	-	-	-	-	-	120	297	-	-	-	-	-
RV	Resort Village	43	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	43	-	-	-	-	-
S-E	Indian Settlement – Établissement indien	28	-	-	-	-	5	6	4	1	4	3	5	-	-
SA	Special Area	3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3	-	-	-	-
SCM	Subdivision of County Municipality	28	-	-	28	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
SET	Settlement	31	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	13	15	3
SM	Specialized Municipality	2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2	-	-	-	-
SUN	Subdivision of Unorganized	90	90	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
SV	Summer Village	52	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	52	-	-	-	-
T	Town	794	286	7	31	27	-	111	52	147	110	15	3	4	1
TI	Terre inuite	10	-	-	-	-	10	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
TL	Teslin Land	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1	-	-
TP	Township	245	-	-	-	-	-	245	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
TR	Terres réservées	9	-	-	-	-	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
UNO	Unorganized – Non organisé	147	-	-	-	-	110	17	11	2	-	-	2	2	3
V	Ville	271	-	-	-	-	271	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
VC	Village cri	8	-	-	-	-	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
VK	Village naskapi	1	-	-	-	-	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
VL	Village	647	-	-	-	69	87	11	23	307	105	40	4	1	-
VN	Village nordique	14	-	-	-	-	14	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

Census Subdivision Types Associated With “On-reserve” Population

On-reserve population is a derived census variable that is captured by using the CSD type according to criteria established by Indian and Northern Affairs Canada (INAC). **On-reserve population** includes all people living in any of seven CSD types legally affiliated with First Nations or Indian Bands (described below), as well as selected CSDs of various other types that are northern communities in Saskatchewan, the Northwest Territories and the Yukon Territory (see Table 7).

The following CSD types are based on the legal definition of communities affiliated with First Nations or Indian Bands.

1. **Indian Reserve (R)** – A tract of federally owned land with specific boundaries that is set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian Band and that is governed by Indian and Northern Affairs Canada (INAC). Statistics Canada only recognizes the subset of Indian reserves that are populated (or potentially populated) as census subdivisions. For 2001, of the more than 2,800 Indian reserves across Canada, there are 1,052 Indian reserves classified as CSDs (including the 60 reserves added for 2001). Statistics Canada works closely with INAC to identify those reserves to be added as CSDs.
2. **Indian Settlement (S-E)** – A place where a self-contained group of at least 10 Indian (Aboriginal) persons reside more or less permanently. It is usually located on Crown lands under federal or provincial jurisdiction. Indian settlements have no official limits and have not been set apart for the use and benefit of an Indian Band as is the case with Indian reserves. Statistics Canada relies on INAC to identify Indian settlements to be recognized as census subdivisions, and their inclusion must be with the agreement of the provincial or territorial authorities. An arbitrary boundary is delineated to represent each Indian settlement as a census subdivision.
3. **Indian Government District (IGD)** – Sechelt reserve lands in British Columbia. The *Sechelt Indian Band Self-Government Act* is a transfer by Her Majesty in right of Canada to the Sechelt Band in all Sechelt reserve lands, recognizing that the Sechelt Band would assume complete responsibility for the management, administration and control of all Sechelt lands. The *Sechelt Indian Government District Enabling Act* (British Columbia) recognizes the district Council as the governing body of the Sechelt Indian Government District. The district Council may enact laws or by-laws that a municipality has power to enact under an Act of the province.
4. **Terres réservées (TR)** – Parcels of land in Quebec set aside for the permanent residence of Cree and Naskapi First Nations of Quebec. *Terres réservées* are adjacent to *villages Cri* and *village Naskapi*. The area of a **village Cri** is set aside for the use of Cree Bands, but members of Cree Bands are not permanently residing there. Similarly, the area of the lone **village Naskapi** is set aside for the use of the Naskapi Band, although its members do not reside there permanently. Note that a *village Cri* and its adjacent *terre réservée* can have the same name, e.g. the *Village Cri* of Waswanipi and the *Terre réservée* of Waswanipi.
5. **Nisga’a Village (NVL)** – The four former Bands of the Nisga’a Nation that became villages with the Final Land Claims Agreement of 1998 between the Nisga’a Nation, the Government of Canada and the Government of British Columbia. These include the villages of Gingolx, Gitwinksihlkw, Laxgalts’ap and New Aiyansh. Note that the Nisga’a Village called New Aiyansh is delineated as two separate census subdivisions, which correspond to the former Indian reserves called Aiyansh 1 (currently unpopulated) and New Aiyansh 1.

6. **Nisga'a Land (NL)** – Part of the territory whose title has been transferred to the Nisga'a Nation by the Final Land Claims Agreement of 1998 between the Nisga'a Nation, the Government of Canada and the Government of British Columbia. Together with the four Nisga'a Villages (NVL), this territory makes up the Nisga'a Lands defined by the land claims agreement.
7. **Teslin Land (TL)** – A parcel of rural settlement land whose title has been transferred to the Teslin Tlingit Council by the Teslin Tlingit Council Land Claims Agreement of 1993 between the Teslin Tlingit Council, the Government of Canada and the Government of the Yukon.

Table 7 lists the specific northern communities selected by INAC because they are affiliated with First Nations or Indian Bands. The people living in these CSDs are included when tabulating on-reserve population.

Table 7. Selected Census Subdivisions Included when Tabulating "On-reserve" Population, 2001 Census

SGC* Code	CSD Type	CSD Name	SGC* Code	CSD Type	CSD Name
6107003	CC	Déline (N.W.T.)	6001032	SET	Upper Liard (Y.T.)
6107010	CC	Tsiigehtchic (N.W.T.)	6001036	SET	Tagish (Y.T.)
6106009	HAM	Fort Liard (N.W.T.)	6001037	SET	Ross River (Y.T.)
6106014	HAM	Fort Providence (N.W.T.)	6001039	SET	Burwash Landing (Y.T.)
6106031	HAM	Rae-Edzo (N.W.T.)	6001041	SET	Pelly Crossing (Y.T.)
6106034	HAM	Wha Ti (N.W.T.)	6001042	SET	Beaver Creek (Y.T.)
6107005	HAM	Tulita (N.W.T.)	6001043	SET	Old Crow (Y.T.)
6107015	HAM	Fort McPherson (N.W.T.)	6001047	SET	Johnson's Crossing (Y.T.)
6107025	HAM	Aklavik (N.W.T.)	6001048	SET	Carcross (Y.T.)
4718012	NH	Timber Bay (Sask.)	6106005	SET	Kakisa (N.W.T.)
4718049	NV	Denare Beach (Sask.)	6106006	SET	Trout Lake (N.W.T.)
4718058	NV	Sandy Bay (Sask.)	6106010	SET	Nahanni Butte (N.W.T.)
4718065	NV	Pinehouse (Sask.)	6106013	SET	Jean Marie River (N.W.T.)
4718074	NV	La Loche (Sask.)	6106018	SET	Fort Resolution (N.W.T.)
6106001	T	Fort Smith (N.W.T.)	6106020	SET	Lutselk'e (N.W.T.)
6106016	T	Hay River (N.W.T.)	6106021	SET	Detah (N.W.T.)
6107017	T	Inuvik (N.W.T.)	6106044	SET	Wrigley (N.W.T.)
6001018	VL	Haines Junction (Y.T.)	6106049	SET	Rae Lakes (N.W.T.)
6001022	VL	Mayo (Y.T.)	6106052	SET	Wekweti (N.W.T.)
6106038	VL	Fort Simpson (N.W.T.)	6107009	SET	Fort Good Hope (N.W.T.)
			6107012	SET	Colville Lake (N.W.T.)

* Standard Geographical Classification

Census Subdivision Code

Each census subdivision is assigned a three-digit code that is not unique to each of the provinces and territories, and is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). In order to identify each CSD uniquely in Canada, the two-digit province/territory code and the two-digit census division (CD) code must precede the CSD code. For example:

PR-CD-CSD Code	CSD Name and Type
12 06 008	Mahone Bay, T (N.S.)
35 06 008	Ottawa, C (Ont.)

There are two municipalities in Canada that straddle provincial limits: Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Saskatchewan and Alberta). Each of their provincial parts is treated as a separate CSD. Indian reserves are also treated as separate CSDs when they straddle provincial limits.

Changes to Census Subdivisions for the 2001 Census

Municipal restructuring in many provinces has resulted in a larger than usual number of municipal dissolutions and incorporations (Table 8). There were 910 dissolutions recorded between 1996 and 2001. In the same period, 526 incorporations were recorded, with the majority being newly amalgamated municipalities.

Table 8. Summary of Dissolutions and Incorporations by Province and Territory (January 2, 1996 to January 1, 2001)

Province/Territory	Dissolutions	Incorporations
Ontario	529	168
Quebec	232	109
British Columbia	83	186
Saskatchewan	18	50
Alberta	18	3
Nova Scotia	14	2
New Brunswick	12	4
Manitoba	3	3
Yukon Territory	1	1
TOTAL	910	526

The boundaries, names, codes and status of CSDs reflect those in effect on January 1, 2001, the **geographic reference date** for the 2001 Census of Canada. Information about any CSD changes that were effective on or before the January 1, 2001 reference date must have been received by Statistics Canada prior to March 1, 2001, in order to be processed in time for the census.

Refer to the related definition of Standard Geographical Classification (SGC), and to the publication *2001 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Manual, Volume I* (Catalogue No. 12-571-XPB) for summaries of the intercensal census subdivision changes to codes, names and status.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For 1996, there were six new CSD types: chartered community (CC) in the Northwest Territories; northern town (NT) in Saskatchewan; rural community (RC) in New Brunswick; regional municipality (RGM) in Nova Scotia; specialized municipality (SM) in Alberta; and *terre inuite* (TI) in Quebec. The CSD type *sans désignation* (SD) in Quebec was changed to the CSD type *municipalité* (M) to conform to provincial terminology.

Geographic Units: Census Subdivision – Previous Census

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Census Subdivision – Previous Census refers to the census subdivisions as of January 1, 1996, the geographic reference date for the 1996 Census. A “best fit” linkage is established between blocks for the 2001 Census and census subdivisions (municipalities) for the 1996 Census. This linkage ensures that data from the current census can be tabulated for the census subdivisions from the previous census.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

The boundaries and names of census subdivisions (municipalities) can change from one census to the next because of annexations, dissolutions and incorporations. These changes can result in fewer, larger census subdivisions and historical data analyses become more complex. The concept of “Census Subdivision – Previous Census” is established to provide a means of tabulating current census data according to census subdivisions as they were delineated for the previous census.

Census data are tabulated for standard geographic areas by aggregating the data for individual **blocks** to each of the standard geographic areas. Blocks respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the current census (2001 Census), but do not necessarily respect the boundaries of census subdivisions for the previous census (1996 Census). In order to facilitate the tabulation of 2001 Census data for the census subdivisions (CSDs) as they existed for the 1996 Census, the 2001 block **representative points** are overlaid onto the previous census CSD boundaries. The goal is to ensure that at least one block is linked to each previous census CSD. In a few cases, there is not an exact match, that is, some blocks straddle two or more CSDs from the previous census, but can only be linked to one CSD. For these cases, a “best fit” approach is used to ensure that the representative point for at least one block is linked to every previous census CSD. Thus, reasonably accurate tabulations of 2001 Census data can be produced for the census subdivisions as of January 1, 1996, the geographic reference date for the 1996 Census.

Refer to the related definitions of Block, Census Subdivision (CSD), Geographic Reference Date and Representative Point.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Units: Census Tract (CT)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Area that is small and relatively stable. **Census tracts** usually have a population of 2,500 to 8,000. They are located in large urban centres that must have an urban core population of 50,000 or more.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Census tracts (CTs) are small, relatively stable geographic areas that usually have a population of 2,500 to 8,000. They are located in census metropolitan areas and in census agglomerations with an urban core population of 50,000 or more in the previous census.

A committee of local specialists (for example, planners, health and social workers and educators) initially delineates CTs in conjunction with Statistics Canada. Once a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA) has been subdivided into census tracts, the census tracts are maintained even if the urban core population subsequently declines below 50,000.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961, 1956, 1951, 1941

Remarks:

Rules are used to delineate census tracts. The initial delineation rules are ranked in the order of the following priorities:

1. Census tract (CT) boundaries must follow permanent and easily recognizable physical features. However, street extensions, utility or transportation easements, property lines and municipal limits may be used as CT boundaries, if physical features are not in close proximity or do not exist.
2. The population of a CT should range between 2,500 and 8,000, with a preferred average of 4,000. CTs in the central business district, major commercial and industrial zones, or peripheral areas can have populations outside this range.
3. The CT should be as homogeneous as possible in terms of socio-economic characteristics, such as similar economic status and social living conditions at the time of its creation.
4. The CT's shape should be as compact as possible.
5. CT boundaries respect census metropolitan area, census agglomeration and provincial boundaries. However, CT boundaries do **not** necessarily respect census subdivision (municipality) boundaries.

A complete set of delineation rules and operational procedures for CTs are available upon request from the Geography Division, Statistics Canada.

Changes to CT boundaries are discouraged in order to maintain maximum data comparability between censuses. Boundary revisions rarely occur, and only when essential. Road construction, railroad abandonment, urban renewal, suburban growth and municipal annexations may contribute to changes in CT boundaries. A census tract may be split into two or more new census tracts (usually when its population exceeds 8,000). CT splits are done in a way that allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract for historical comparison.

The minimum population of 2,500 allows for statistically significant data tabulations. The maximum population of 8,000 facilitates delineation and retention of relatively homogeneous and useful tracts. The population range and average also permit data comparability among CTs.

Naming Convention for Census Tracts

Each CT is assigned a seven-character numeric “name” (including leading zeros, the decimal point and trailing zeros). To identify each CT uniquely within its corresponding metropolitan area, the three-digit CMA/CA code must precede the CT name. For example:

CMA/CA Code – CT Name	CMA/CA Name
568 0005.00	Barrie CA (Ont.)
933 0005.00	Vancouver CMA (B.C.)

Census tract naming is consistent from census to census to facilitate historical comparability.

When a CA enters the census tract program, the census subdivision (CSD) that gives the CA its name is assigned the first CT names, starting at 0001.00. When all of the CTs within the first CSD are named, then the CTs of the adjoining CSDs are named, and finally those on the periphery are named.

If a CT is split into two or more parts due to a population increase, the number after the decimal point identifies the splits. For example, CT 0042.00 becomes CT 0042.01 and CT 0042.02. If CT 0042.01 is subsequently split, it becomes CT 0042.03 and CT 0042.04. Similarly, if CT 0042.02 is split after CT 0042.01, it becomes CT 0042.05 and CT 0042.06. Any splits occurring after this would be numbered in a similar fashion, with the next sequential number. This allows users to re-aggregate the splits to the original census tract.

For the 2001 Census, the census tract program is extended to include three additional census agglomerations: Medicine Hat, Alberta; Granby and Drummondville, Quebec. This brings the total number of census-tracting centres to 46 (27 CMAs and 19 CAs).

In preparation for the 2001 Census, a large number of census tracts were split in order to reduce the number of CTs that exceed the maximum population size of 8,000.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of census tracts by province and territory.

A conversion table showing the relationship between 2001 and 1996 census tracts for each census-tracting centre is available upon request from the Geography Division, Statistics Canada.

The nature of the CT concept, along with the availability of a wide range of census data, makes CTs useful in many applications. These include:

- urban and regional planning and research, such as the development, evaluation and revision of official plans;
- educational and research studies in high schools, community colleges and universities;
- market research, such as identifying areas of opportunity and evaluating market or service potential for housing, health, educational, recreational or retailing facilities.

CTs should be used with caution for non-statistical purposes.

Refer to the related definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Beginning with 1996, census agglomerations were eligible for census tracts based on the population size of their urban cores (50,000 or more at the previous census). This was a change from previous censuses, when census agglomerations had to contain a municipality (census subdivision) with a population of 50,000 or more at the previous census to be eligible for census tracts.

From 1971 to 1991, a **provincial census tract** program existed. Provincial census tracts were similar in concept to census tracts, but covered areas outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations. Taken together, census tracts and provincial census tracts covered all of Canada.

In 1941 and 1946, census tracts were called “Social Areas”.

Geographic Units: Consolidated Census Agglomeration

The use of the term consolidated census agglomeration is discontinued for the 2001 Census. Refer to the definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Geographic Units: Consolidated Census Metropolitan Area

The use of the term consolidated census metropolitan area is discontinued for the 2001 Census. Refer to the definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Geographic Units: Designated Place (DPL)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Usually a small community that does not meet the criteria used to define municipalities or urban areas (areas with a population of at least 1,000 and no fewer than 400 persons per square kilometre). Designated places are created by provinces and territories in cooperation with Statistics Canada.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A designated place is normally a small community or settlement that does not meet the criteria established by Statistics Canada to be a census subdivision (an area with municipal status) or an urban area.

Designated places are created by provinces and territories, in cooperation with Statistics Canada, to provide data for submunicipal areas.

Censuses: 2001, 1996

Remarks:

With the increased pace of municipal restructuring and the discontinuation of the unincorporated place (UP) program, there was a demand to expand the content of the designated place (DPL) program for the 2001 Census. Given the high volume of proposed DPL additions, Statistics Canada established more rigorous criteria for including areas in the program:

- Areas defined as designated places are usually small communities or settlements that fall below criteria established by Statistics Canada for census subdivisions (areas with municipal status) or urban areas (areas with at least 1,000 population and a population density of 400 persons per square kilometre).
- Provincial/territorial authorities must provide adequate boundary descriptions of the areas on maps.
- Designated places are usually less than 10 square kilometres in area.
- Designated places usually have a population density of 150 persons or more per square kilometre.
- The areas recognized as designated places may not represent **all** places having the same status within a province or territory.

The number of designated places increased from 828 in 1996 to 1,261 in 2001. Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of designated places by province and territory. Table 9 shows the types of designated places, their abbreviated forms and their distribution by province and territory.

Table 9. Designated Place Types by Province and Territory, 2001 Census

DPL Type		Province/Territory*
DPL	Designated Place	Newfoundland and Labrador
CFA	Class IV Area	Nova Scotia
LSD	Local Service District	New Brunswick
MDI	Municipalité dissoute	Quebec
DMU	Dissolved Municipality	Ontario
LSB	Local Service Board	Ontario
NCM	Northern Community	Manitoba
OHM	Organized Hamlet	Saskatchewan
UNP	Unincorporated Place	Alberta, British Columbia
MET	Métis Settlement	Alberta
IST	Island Trust	British Columbia
SE	Aboriginal Settlement	Yukon Territory

* There are no designated places for Prince Edward Island, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut for the 2001 Census.

Each designated place is assigned a four-digit code that is not unique in each of the provinces and territories. The two-digit province/territory code must precede the DPL code in order to identify each DPL uniquely in Canada.

PR Code	DPL Code	DPL Name	DPL Type	DPL Part Flag
12	0011	Coldbrook	CFA	2
13	0011	Bayside	LSD	1
35	0011	Nestor Falls	LSB	4

Designated places are not required to respect census division (CD) or census subdivision (CSD) boundaries, and as a result, a number of DPLs straddle one or more CDs or CSDs. To identify these DPLs and the CSDs that they straddle, the seven-digit SGC code (PR-CD-CSD) must precede the DPL code. The **DPL Part Flag** identifies the number of CSDs that a DPL straddles (or into how many partitions the DPL is divided as a result of straddling a CSD or CD). The following shows how Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) codes and DPL Part Flags identify DPLs that straddle CSDs and CDs:

PR-CD-CSD Code	DPL Code	DPL Name	DPL Type	DPL Part Flag
10 08 067	0191	Smith's Harbour	DPL	2
10 08 071	0191	Smith's Harbour	DPL	2
13 14 005	0100	Val-d'Amour	LSD	3
13 14 008	0100	Val-d'Amour	LSD	3
13 14 012	0100	Val-d'Amour	LSD	3
35 59 090	0011	Nestor Falls	LSB	4
35 60 008	0011	Nestor Falls	LSB	4
35 60 063	0011	Nestor Falls	LSB	4
35 60 090	0011	Nestor Falls	LSB	4

It is important to note that when retrieving data for entire DPLs, the PR and DPL codes are required. However, when retrieving data for each CSD component of a DPL, the PR-CD-CSD and DPL codes are required. As well, the combined PR-CD-CSD and DPL codes help to better locate DPLs within a province.

Refer to the related definitions of Census Subdivision (CSD), Locality (LOC) and Urban Area (UA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

In 1996, Statistics Canada introduced the concept of designated places as a new geographic unit for data dissemination to respond to the increasing demand for population counts and census data according to "submunicipal" or unincorporated areas. The concept generally applied to small communities for which there may have been some level of legislation, but they fell below the criteria established for municipal status.

Between 1981 and 1991, Statistics Canada had facilitated the retrieval of census data by delineating these submunicipal areas at the enumeration area level only. The number of areas delineated expanded from fewer than 50 northern communities in Manitoba in 1981, to more than 800 areas across Canada by 1996.

Geographic Units: *Dissemination Area (DA)*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Small area composed of one or more neighbouring blocks, with a population of 400 to 700 persons. All of Canada is divided into dissemination areas.

Part B – Detailed Definition

The dissemination area (DA) is a small, relatively stable geographic unit composed of one or more blocks. It is the smallest standard geographic area for which all census data are disseminated. DAs cover all the territory of Canada.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

The dissemination area is a new standard geographic area. It replaces the enumeration area (EA) as a basic unit for dissemination.

Dissemination areas are aggregates of one or more blocks. DAs respect several delineation criteria designed to maximize their usefulness for data analyses.

1. DA boundaries respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs therefore remain stable over time, to the extent that census subdivisions and census tracts do.
2. DAs are uniform in terms of population size, which is targeted from 400 to 700 persons to avoid data suppression. DAs with lower population counts (including zero population) may result in order to respect the boundaries of census subdivisions and census tracts. DAs with higher population counts may also result.
3. DA boundaries follow roads. DA boundaries may follow other features (such as railways, water features, power transmission lines), where these features form part of the boundaries of census subdivisions or census tracts.
4. A DA within a DA is formed when the population of apartment or townhouse complexes meets or exceeds 300 persons.
5. DAs are compact in shape, to the extent possible while respecting the above criteria.
6. Operational requirements limit to 99 the number of blocks that can be included in a DA.

In order to meet the operational constraint of releasing population and dwelling counts in the spring following the census year, the population counts used to delineate DAs are taken from the previous census. To delineate DAs for 2001, sufficiently accurate block population counts based on 1996 Census data were only possible where block-face geocoding existed for the 1996 Census. Therefore, the 2001 DAs were delineated according to the above criteria only in CMA/CA areas where 1996 block-face geocoding existed. Everywhere else, the 2001 DAs are the same as the 2001 EAs used for data collection.

Each dissemination area is assigned a four-digit code that is unique within a census division (CD) and a province or territory. In order to identify each DA uniquely in Canada, the two-digit province code and the two-digit CD code must precede the DA code. For example:

PR-CD-DA Code	Description	
12 09 0411	Province 12: CD 09: DA:	Nova Scotia Halifax County 0411
59 09 0411	Province 59: CD 09: DA:	British Columbia Fraser Valley Regional District 0411

Geographic proximity is embedded in the DA code by assigning DA codes in a serpentine manner within each census division.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of dissemination areas by province and territory.

For background information, consult the Statistics Canada Web site (www.statcan.ca) to download a free copy of the Geography Working Paper entitled *Introducing the Dissemination Area for the 2001 Census: an Update*, Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE.

Refer to the related definitions of Block, Census Subdivision (CSD), Census Tract (CT) and Enumeration Area (EA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Units: *Economic Region (ER)*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

An economic region (ER) is a grouping of complete **census divisions** (with one exception in Ontario) created as a standard geographic unit for analysis of regional economic activity.

Censuses: 2001, 1996

Remarks:

Within the province of Quebec, economic regions (the *régions administratives*) are designated by law. In all other provinces, economic regions are created by agreement between Statistics Canada and the provinces concerned. Prince Edward Island and the three territories each consist of one economic region. In Ontario, there is one exception where the economic region boundary does not respect census division boundaries: the census division of Halton is split between the ER of Hamilton–Niagara Peninsula and the ER of Toronto.

Each economic region is assigned a two-digit code that is not unique between provinces and territories. In order to identify each ER uniquely, the two-digit province/territory code must precede the economic region code. For example:

PR-ER Code	ER Name
10 10	Avalon Peninsula (Nfld.Lab.)
35 10	Ottawa (Ont.)

Changes to Economic Regions for the 2001 Census

In 1997, the province of Quebec increased the number of economic regions from 16 to 17. The *région administrative* of Mauricie–Bois-Francs (24 70) was replaced by two new *régions administratives*:

- Mauricie (24 70), made up of the *municipalités régionales de comté* (MRCs) of Francheville, Le Centre-de-la-Mauricie, Le Haut-Saint-Maurice, Maskinongé, and Mékinac;
- Centre-du-Québec (24 33), made up of the MRCs of Arthabaska, Bécancour, Drummond, L'Érable, and Nicolet–Yamaska.

In addition, the boundary between Centre-du-Québec (ER 24 33) and Estrie (ER 24 30) was affected when the *municipalité* of Ulverton (CSD 24 49 010) was taken from the MRC of Drummond (CD 24 49) and annexed to the MRC of Le Val-Saint-François (CD 24 42).

Also in the province of Quebec, the name of the *région administrative* of Québec (24 20) was changed to Capitale-Nationale (24 20).

In Ontario, the boundary between Muskoka–Kawarthas (ER 35 20) and Kingston–Pembroke (ER 35 15) was affected when Murray Township (CSD 35 14 001) was taken from Northumberland County (CD 35 14) and annexed to the newly incorporated City of Quinte West (CSD 35 12 015) in Hastings County (CD 35 12).

In Alberta, five economic regions were affected by changes in the composition of census divisions (CDs) making them up, as well as name changes. Boundary changes include moving CD 48 09 from ER 48 50 to ER 48 40, moving CD 48 10 from ER 48 80 to ER 48 20, and moving CD 48 13 from ER 48 40 to ER 48 70. The name changes include ER 48 20 Camrose–Drumheller, ER 48 40 Banff–Jasper–Rocky Mountain House, ER 48 50 Red Deer, ER 48 70 Athabasca–Grande Prairie–Peace River, and ER 48 80 Wood Buffalo–Cold Lake.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of economic regions by province and territory.

Economic region codes and names were standardized for 1996. For more information, refer to the *1996 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Manual, Volumes I and II* (Catalogue Nos. 12-571-XPB and 12-572-XPB).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

In 1996, the census adopted the Labour Force Survey's (LFS) economic regions to replace **subprovincial regions** that had been used by the census from 1971 to 1991. Boundary differences between these two sets of geographic areas were the result of the different update cycles (every five years for the subprovincial regions and every ten years for the LFS regions). In order to align these sources for 1996, the eleven LFS economic regions of Ontario were adopted in place of the five subprovincial regions of the 1991 Census. The LFS economic regions were made up of counties (complete census divisions), except for the County of Halton, of which part (the entire City of Burlington) was assigned to the ER of Hamilton–Niagara Peninsula, with the remainder of the county falling within the ER of Toronto.

Geographic Units: Enumeration Area (EA)

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Small area composed of one or more neighbouring blocks, used by Statistics Canada for distributing questionnaires to households and dwellings (census collection). All of Canada is divided into enumeration areas.

Part B – Detailed Definition

An enumeration area is the geographic area canvassed by one census representative. An EA is composed of one or more adjacent blocks. EAs cover all the territory of Canada.

Enumeration areas are only used for census data collection. The dissemination area (DA) replaces the EA as a basic unit for dissemination.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Enumeration area delineation rules are designed to meet census collection requirements and support the standard geographic areas recognized by the census. EA boundaries respect the boundaries of all standard geographic areas, except those of urban areas and dissemination areas. Consequently, EA limits may not always follow visible features.

For efficient and effective questionnaire drop-off and canvassing, EAs are as compact as possible, and the boundaries follow visible features such as streets and rivers when possible. The number of dwellings in an EA generally varies between a maximum of 650 in large urban centres (census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations with census tracts) to a minimum of 125 in rural areas.

Some EAs are delineated for special cases such as large apartment buildings, townhouse communities and collective dwellings. A large apartment building may form more than one EA. When possible, ship EAs are located in the water of their home port.

EA limits may change from census to census. About 60% of the 2001 EAs are identical to the 1996 EA limits. The boundaries of the remaining EAs are different due to dwelling growth, changes to the boundaries of standard geographic areas, including the Representation Order of federal electoral districts, and changes in delineation criteria.

There is a number of significant changes between the 2001 and 1996 Censuses:

- EAs are only used as basic units for census data collection. The dissemination area (DA) replaces the EA as a basic unit for dissemination.
- EAs are generally larger in areal extent.
- EAs in large urban centres (census metropolitan areas and tracted census agglomerations) contain a maximum of 650 dwellings, an increase of 210 dwellings from the 1996 Census.
- EA boundaries do not have to respect urban area boundaries.

Each enumeration area is assigned a three-digit code that is unique within a federal electoral district (FED). In order to identify each EA uniquely in Canada, the two-digit province/territory code and the three-digit FED code must precede the EA code. For example:

PR-FED-EA Code	Description
35 008 251	Province 35: Ontario FED 008: Toronto–Danforth EA: 251
48 008 251	Province 48: Alberta FED 008: Calgary West EA: 251

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of enumeration areas by province and territory.

Enumeration areas are generated using an automated delineation system applied to the National Geographic Base (NGB). This automated process aggregates blocks where there is address register coverage (census metropolitan areas and tracted census agglomerations), and aggregates 1996 EAs where there is no address register coverage (untraced census agglomerations, urban areas outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations, and rural areas). The delineation objective is to produce enumeration areas that are compact, accessible by road, respect the required standard geographic boundaries, and meet specified dwelling count and dwelling density criteria.

Refer to the related definitions of Block, Dissemination Area (DA) and National Geographic Base (NGB).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

1. Delineation Process

- Prior to 2001, EAs were used as basic units for census data collection and dissemination. As well, EA boundaries respected urban areas (UAs).
- For 1996, EAs were delineated to respect the Northwest Territories/Nunavut boundary so that census data could be accurately tabulated when Nunavut came to exist on April 1, 1999. As well, the automated EA delineation process was implemented for all Street Network File (SNF) coverage.
- For 1991, the automated EA delineation process was implemented for a portion of SNF coverage.
- Prior to 1991, the EA delineation process was manual.

2. Number of Dwellings

- For 1996, the maximum number of dwellings in large urban centres (CMAs and tracted CAs) was 440.
- For 1991, 1986, 1981 and 1976, the maximum number of dwellings in large urban centres (CMAs and tracted CAs) was 375.
- For 1971, 1966 and 1961, the maximum number of dwellings in large urban centres (CMAs and tracted CAs) was 300.

Geographic Units: **Federal Electoral District (FED)**

Modified on June 2, 2004

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Area represented by a member of Parliament (MP) elected to the House of Commons.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A federal electoral district is an area represented by a member of the House of Commons. The federal electoral district boundaries used for the 2001 Census are based on the 1996 Representation Order.

A new representation order was published in the *Canada Gazette* on August 29, 2003. The 2003 Representation Order has seven additional federal electoral districts, for a total of 308, compared to the 1996 Representation Order which has a total of 301 federal electoral districts.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Following the release of population counts from each decennial census, the Chief Electoral Officer determines the number of seats in the House of Commons and publishes the information in the *Canada Gazette*. Electoral boundaries commissions then determine the adjustments to the constituency boundaries. Based on reports from these commissions, the Chief Electoral Officer prepares a **representation order** (RO) that describes the boundaries and specifies the name and the population of each federal electoral district (FED). The representation order is in force on the first dissolution of Parliament that occurs at least one year after its proclamation. The 1996 Representation Order (proclaimed on January 8, 1996) was based on 1991 Census population counts, and increased the number of FEDs to 301, up from 295 for the previous 1987 Representation Order. (Only 31 FEDs described in the 1996 RO had the same boundaries as the FEDs in the 1987 RO.) The names of FEDs may change at any time through an Act of Parliament.

The FED boundaries and names used for the 2001 Census reflect those in effect on January 1, 2001 (the **geographic reference date** for the 2001 Census of Canada).

The delineation of enumeration areas for the 2001 Census was based on the 1996 Representation Order.

Each federal electoral district is assigned a three-digit code that is not unique in each of the provinces and territories. In order to identify each FED uniquely, the two-digit province/territory code must precede the FED code. For example:

PR-FED Code	FED Name
46 009	Winnipeg North Centre (Man.)
59 009	Kootenay–Columbia (B.C.)

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of federal electoral districts (1996 Representation Order) by province and territory.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

The 1996 and 1991 Censuses were taken according to the 1987 Representation Order. The 1986 and 1981 Censuses were taken according to the 1976 Representation Order. The 1976 and 1971 Censuses were taken according to the 1966 Representation Order. The 1966 and 1961 Censuses were taken according to the 1952 Representation Order.

Geographic Units: *Locality (LOC)*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Locality refers to the historical place names of former census subdivisions (municipalities), former designated places and former urban areas, as well as to the names of other entities, such as neighbourhoods, post offices, communities and unincorporated places.

Census: 2001

Remarks:

Locality names **exclude** the names of current census subdivisions, current designated places and current urban areas (see the definition of Place Name).

The primary sources of Statistics Canada's information on the names and spelling of localities are:

1. Places and their verified locations (latitude/longitude coordinates) provided by Elections Canada. These may not reflect the content of Natural Resources Canada (NRCan) files.
2. Names approved by the provincial and territorial names authorities, federally represented by the Geographic Names Board of Canada (GNBC) at NRCan.
3. Names reported for unincorporated places by census representatives during past censuses (see note below).
4. Records showing name changes or dissolutions of former census subdivisions, former designated places and former urban areas.

Localities that have the same name have different locations. Locality names and their representative point coordinates are maintained in a database table. Using their representative point coordinates and a point-in-polygon algorithm, localities can be linked to standard geographic areas. In this way, location information (e.g. census place of work or migration responses) can be coded to the current standard geographic areas, and products such as GeoSuite and GeoSearch (which incorporate information from the locality table) can provide users with greater flexibility in finding their geographic area of interest.

Population and dwelling counts are not provided by locality.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of localities by province and territory.

Refer to the related definition of Designated Place (DPL).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For previous censuses, Statistics Canada defined an **unincorporated place (UP)** as a cluster of five or more dwellings (i.e. a settlement), locally known by a specific name, but lacking legal limits or local government. UPs were found only in rural areas. Statistics Canada reported population counts only for those UPs identified by census representatives during the census field collection operation. Standard products for UPs were last produced for the 1991 Census. For the 1996 Census, data were collected for UPs, but were compiled only on a cost recovery basis. The UP program was completely discontinued after the 1996 Census. For further details, refer to the definition of Unincorporated Place (UP) in the *1996 Census Dictionary* (Catalogue No. 92-351-XIE).

Geographic Units: *Place Name (PN)***Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Place name refers to the set of names that includes current census subdivisions (municipalities), current designated places and current urban areas, as well as the names of localities.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Refer to the related definitions of Census Subdivision (CSD), Designated Place (DPL), Locality (LOC) and Urban Area (UA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Localities did not exist prior to 2001.

Geographic Units: *Primary Census Agglomeration*

The use of the term “primary census agglomeration” is discontinued for the 2001 Census. Refer to the definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Geographic Units: *Primary Census Metropolitan Area*

The use of the term “primary census metropolitan area” is discontinued for the 2001 Census. Refer to the definition of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA).

Geographic Units: Province or Territory

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Portion of Canada's land area governed by a political authority. Canada's land area is divided into ten provinces and three territories.

Part B – Detailed Definition

Province and territory refer to the major political units of Canada. From a statistical point of view, province and territory are basic areas for which data are tabulated. Canada is divided into ten provinces and three territories.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

A new territory called **Nunavut** came into effect on April 1, 1999. Nunavut includes three census divisions (Baffin Region, Keewatin Region, and Kitikmeot Region) that were formerly the eastern portion of the Northwest Territories.

Statistics Canada uses standard codes and abbreviations to represent provinces and territories. The two-digit code that uniquely identifies each province/territory is based on the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC). The code is assigned from east to west. The first digit represents the region of Canada in which the province/territory is located and the second digit denotes one of the ten provinces and three territories (Table 10).

Table 10. Abbreviations and Codes for Provinces and Territories, 2001 Census

Province/Territory	Standard Abbreviations English/French	Internationally Approved Alpha Code (Source: Canada Post)	Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Code	Region Name
Newfoundland and Labrador	Nfld./Lab./T.-N.-L.	NF	10	Atlantic
Prince Edward Island	P.E.I./Î.-P.-É.	PE	11	Atlantic
Nova Scotia	N.S./N.-É.	NS	12	Atlantic
New Brunswick	N.B./N.-B.	NB	13	Atlantic
Quebec	Que./Qc	QC	24	Quebec
Ontario	Ont./Ont.	ON	35	Ontario
Manitoba	Man./Man.	MB	46	Prairies
Saskatchewan	Sask./Sask.	SK	47	Prairies
Alberta	Alta./Alb.	AB	48	Prairies
British Columbia	B.C./C.-B.	BC	59	British Columbia
Yukon Territory	Y.T./Yn	YT	60	Territories
Northwest Territories	N.W.T./T.N.-O.	NT	61	Territories
Nunavut	Nvt./Nt	NU	62	Territories

Refer to the related definitions of Census Division (CD) and Standard Geographical Classification (SGC).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Not applicable

Geographic Units: Rural Area (RA)**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Rural areas include all territory lying outside urban areas. Taken together, urban and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Rural population includes all population living in the rural fringes of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as population living in rural areas outside CMAs and CAs.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

The rural area of Canada is the area that remains after the delineation of urban areas which, for the first time, have been delineated using **current census** population data. Taken together, urban and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Within rural areas, population densities and living conditions can vary greatly. Included in rural areas are:

- small towns, villages and other populated places with less than 1,000 population according to the current census;
- rural fringes of census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations that may contain estate lots, as well as agricultural, undeveloped and non-developable lands;
- agricultural lands;
- remote and wilderness areas.

Urban and rural areas may be used as variables to cross-classify census data for standard geographic areas such as census subdivisions, census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations, or census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zones (MIZ).

Refer to the related definitions of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Census Metropolitan Area and Census Agglomeration Influenced Zones (MIZ), Population Density, Urban Area (UA) and Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Rural areas were the residual after the delineation of urban areas that was based on population data from the **previous census**.

Geographic Units: *Unincorporated Place (UP)*

The unincorporated place program has been discontinued. See the definition of Locality (LOC).

Geographic Units: *Urban Area (UA)*

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Area with a population of at least 1,000 and no fewer than 400 persons per square kilometre.

Part B – Detailed Definition

An urban area has a minimum population concentration of 1,000 persons and a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre, based on the current census population count. All territory outside urban areas is classified as rural. Taken together, urban and rural areas cover all of Canada.

Urban population includes all population living in the urban cores, secondary urban cores and urban fringes of census metropolitan areas (CMAs) and census agglomerations (CAs), as well as the population living in urban areas outside CMAs and CAs.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

For the first time, the delineation of urban areas is done with an automated process that makes it possible to use population counts and population density data from the **current census**.

The geographic units used for the delineation of urban areas for 2001 are urban areas as defined for the 1996 Census, and blocks as defined for the 2001 Census.

The urban area delineation rules are ranked in order of priority:

1. If an urban area from the 1996 Census has a minimum population of 1,000 persons according to the 2001 Census, it is retained as an urban area.
2. If a block with a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre is adjacent to an urban area, then it is added to that urban area.
3. If a block or group of contiguous blocks, each having a population density of at least 400 persons per square kilometre for the current census, has a minimum total population of 1,000, then the block or group of contiguous blocks is delineated as a new urban area.
4. The distance by road between urban areas is measured. If the distance is less than two kilometres, then the urban areas are combined to form a single urban area.
5. If an urban area is contained **within** a census subdivision (CSD) or a designated place (DPL), the difference in land area between the urban area and the CSD or DPL is calculated. If this difference is less than 10 square kilometres, then, for confidentiality purposes, the boundary for the urban area is adjusted to the CSD or DPL boundary.

The resulting urban areas are reviewed and may be modified to ensure spatial contiguity where appropriate, for example, the removal of interior holes.

Some urban areas may contain commercial and industrial districts, railway yards, airports, parks and other uninhabited areas that result in blocks with population densities of less than 400 persons per square kilometre. In general, the impact on the total population within urban areas is minor, but the impact on specific urban land areas could be significant. This would affect any programs or research based on precise distance or land area measurements related to individual urban areas.

Once an urban area attains a population of 10,000 persons, it is eligible to become the urban core of a census agglomeration. Upon attaining a population of at least 100,000 persons, it is eligible to become the urban core of a census metropolitan area. When an urban area with a population of at least 50,000 persons is also the urban core of a census agglomeration, the census agglomeration is eligible for the census tract program.

Urban and rural areas may be used as variables to cross-classify census data for standard geographic areas, such as census subdivisions, census metropolitan areas/census agglomerations, or census metropolitan area and census agglomeration influenced zones (MIZ).

Naming Convention for Urban Areas

The name of the urban area is the name of the principal census subdivision (CSD) when the CSD is (or was) a city, town or village. If two or more principal CSDs are involved, the urban area may be given a compound name. In other cases, the name of the urban area is an appropriate place name.

Geographic Code for Urban Areas

Urban area codes are unique four-digit codes that are assigned sequentially upon the UA creation. These codes remain constant between censuses. If an urban area is retired due to amalgamation or failure to meet the population or density thresholds, then its code is retired.

It is recommended that the two-digit province code precede the UA code in order to identify each UA uniquely within its corresponding province/territory. For example:

PR-UA Code	UA Name
11 0159	Charlottetown (P.E.I.)
13 0122	Campbellton (N.B.)
24 0122	Campbellton (Que.)
46 0282	Flin Flon (Man.)
47 0282	Flin Flon (Sask.)
60 1023	Whitehorse (Y.T.)

Five UAs straddle provincial boundaries: Campbellton (New Brunswick and Quebec), Hawkesbury (Ontario and Quebec), Ottawa–Hull (Ontario and Quebec), Flin Flon (Manitoba and Saskatchewan) and Lloydminster (Alberta and Saskatchewan).

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of urban areas by province and territory.

Refer to the related definitions of Block, Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Census Subdivision (CSD), Designated Place (DPL), Land Area, Place Name (PN), Population Density, Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe and Urban Population Size Group.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, the geographic units used for urban area delineation were census subdivisions, designated places and enumeration areas. Population counts and population density from the **previous census** were used in all cases, except when enumeration area boundaries had been adjusted for the current census.

For 1976, urban areas contained a population concentration of at least 1,000 persons and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile (386 per square kilometre). Urban areas were combined if they were separated by less than one mile (1.6 kilometres).

For 1971, 1966 and 1961, urban areas included:

- all incorporated cities, towns and villages with a population of 1,000 persons or over;
- all unincorporated places with a population of 1,000 persons or over and a population density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile; and
- the urbanized fringe of these urban areas, known as the urbanized core of a census agglomeration or census metropolitan area, where a minimum population of 1,000 persons and a density of at least 1,000 persons per square mile existed.

Geographic Units: Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Urban core, urban fringe and rural fringe distinguish between central and peripheral urban and rural areas within a census metropolitan area (CMA) or census agglomeration (CA).

Urban core is a large urban area around which a CMA or a CA is delineated. The urban core must have a population (based on the previous census) of at least 100,000 persons in the case of a CMA, or between 10,000 and 99,999 persons in the case of a CA.

The urban core of a CA that has been merged with an adjacent CMA or larger CA is called the **secondary urban core**.

Urban fringe includes all small urban areas (with less than 10,000 population) within a CMA or CA that are not contiguous with the urban core of the CMA or CA.

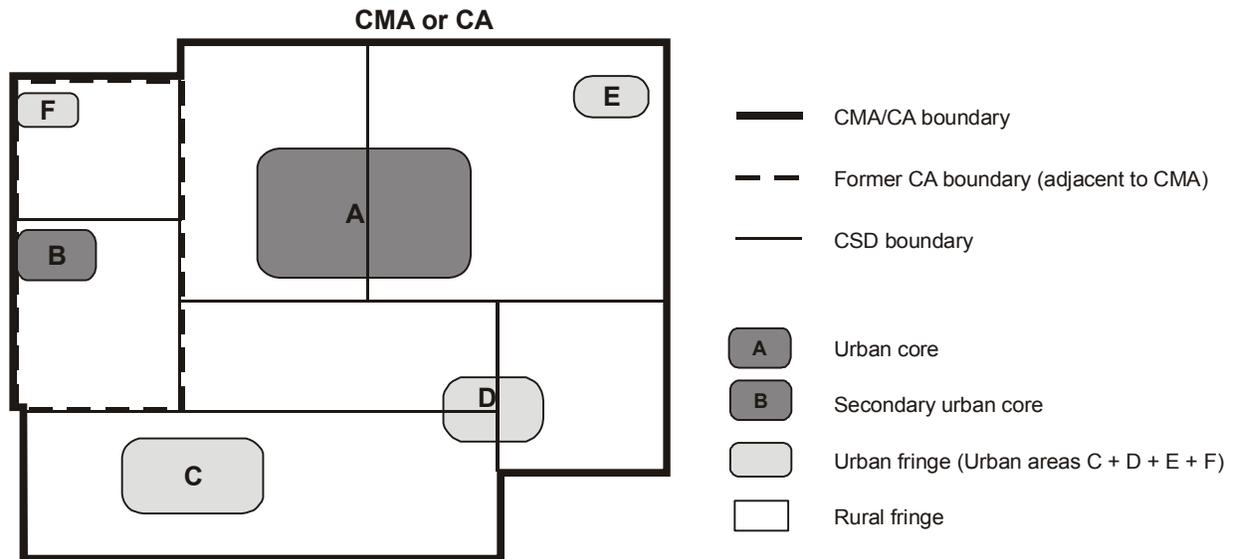
Rural fringe is all territory within a CMA or CA not classified as an urban core or an urban fringe.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

While every CMA and CA has an urban core, it may or may not have a secondary urban core, an urban fringe or a rural fringe. See Figure 31.

Figure 31. Example of a Census Metropolitan Area or a Census Agglomeration, Showing Urban Core, Secondary Urban Core, Urban Fringe and Rural Fringe



Counts of **urban population** include all population living in urban cores, secondary urban cores and urban fringes, as well as the population living in urban areas outside CMAs and CAs. Counts of **rural population** include all population living in rural fringes, as well as the population living in rural areas outside CMAs and CAs.

Refer to related definitions of Census Metropolitan Area (CMA) and Census Agglomeration (CA), Rural Area (RA) and Urban Area (UA).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Beginning in 1996, the term “urban core” replaced the term “urbanized core”. The term “urbanized core” was used from 1971 to 1991.

Prior to 1996, this concept was known as CMA/CA parts.

Beginning in 1986, primary CMAs (PCMAS) and primary CAs (PCAs) were delineated within some CMAs and CAs. Because of this change, some urban areas that were urban fringes of 1981 CMAs or CAs became urban cores of 1986 PCMAS or PCAs.

For 1976 and 1971, the urbanized core was further broken down into the “largest city” and “remainder”.

For 1966 and 1961, the urban part of the CMA was divided into the metropolitan area – urban (continuous built-up area) and the metropolitan area – outside urban (non-continuous built-up area); the remaining rural part was known as metropolitan area – rural.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): *Block-face*

Modified on April 15, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

One side of a street between two consecutive intersections. For example, a block-face can be one side of a city block.

Part B – Detailed Definition

A block-face is one side of a street between two consecutive features intersecting that street. The features can be other streets, boundaries of standard geographic areas, or limits of map tiles.

Block-faces are used for generating block-face representative points, which in turn are used for geocoding and census data extraction when the street and address information is available.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks:

The concept of a block-face has changed for the 2001 Census:

1. Block-faces are defined for the entire country, rather than only in urban centres covered by the Street Network Files.
2. Block-faces are formed by non-addressable streets as well as by addressable streets. In essence, the block-face is the same as an “arc side” in the Arc/Info® GIS software.
3. Two block-faces are generated opposite a road T-junction rather than just one block-face.
4. Block-faces are not created when physical features (such as rivers or railroads) intersect roads, unless these features are coincident with a boundary of a standard geographic area.
5. Block-faces are not created when a single-address enumeration area (EA) is smaller than a city block. In this case, the EA is offset from the street, rather than digitally represented as a polygon that intersects the street. However, block-faces are formed when an EA is smaller than a city block, but contains an address range. In this case, the EA is digitally represented as a polygon intersecting the street.
6. Block-faces are created when streets cross the limits of map tiles. (The map tiles, which are based on the National Topographic System of Natural Resources Canada, form a Canada-wide coverage in the National Geographic Base.)

A dead-end street has two block-faces.

Population and dwelling counts are no longer disseminated for individual block-faces, since there are confidentiality concerns about releasing small population and dwelling counts at this level of geography.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of block-faces by province and territory.

Refer to related definitions of Enumeration Area (EA), Geocoding, National Geographic Base (NGB) and Representative Point.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, population and dwelling counts were disseminated for individual block-faces. As well, block-faces were formed by addressable streets only, and were created when physical features intersected roads, even when the boundaries of standard geographic areas were not coincident with these features. In addition, only one block-face was generated opposite a road T-junction rather than two, and single-address EAs formed block-faces. Since map tiles were not used prior to 2001, their limits did not form block-faces along streets. Block-faces were defined only in urban centres covered by the Street Network Files.

Prior to 1991, block-faces were not created when EA boundaries split city blocks.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Coordinate System

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A coordinate system is a reference system based on mathematical rules for specifying positions (locations) on the surface of the earth. The coordinate values can be spherical (latitude and longitude) or planar (such as Universal Transverse Mercator).

The Cartographic Boundary Files, the Road Network Files and the representative points are disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981 (latitude/longitude)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (Universal Transverse Mercator)

Remarks:

A coordinate system is usually defined by a datum, ellipsoid and projection, and is specified in terms of units (e.g. degrees, metres).

Latitude and longitude coordinates, often referred to as geographic coordinates, are spherical. Lines of latitude (also called parallels) run in an east-west direction around the earth parallel to the equator. Latitude is the angular measurement of a location expressed in degrees north or south of the equator, ranging from 0° at the equator to 90°N or 90°S at the poles. Lines of longitude (also called meridians) run in a north-south direction from pole to pole. Longitude is the angular measurement of a location east or west of the prime meridian (which runs through Greenwich, England), ranging from 0° at the prime meridian to 180°E or 180°W. The 180° meridian is the approximate location of the International Date Line.

For the land mass of Canada, latitudes range from about 42°N to 83°N and longitudes range from approximately 53°W to 141°W.

Latitude coordinates south of the equator and longitude coordinates west of the prime meridian have minus signs when stored in a digital database. Latitude/longitude coordinates are convenient for transferring and disseminating spatial digital data, and are normally expressed in decimal degrees on a database. However, maps should not be generated using these spherical coordinates, as they are unprojected, resulting in a map that is distorted (Figure 33).

It is now common for geographic information system (GIS) software to convert coordinates from one frame of reference to coordinates of another frame of reference, such as transforming the Lambert Conformal Conic projection to latitude/longitude coordinates.

The **Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM)** coordinate system is no longer used as the working coordinate system or for disseminating spatial digital data.

Refer to related definitions of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Datum, Map Projection, National Geographic Base (NGB), Representative Point and Road Network Files (RNFs).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

For 1996, the Street Network Files (SNFs) were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, but the working coordinate system was UTM.

Prior to 1996, the SNFs were disseminated in UTM coordinates only.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Datum

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A datum is a geodetic reference system that specifies the size and shape of the earth, and the base point from which the latitude and longitude of all other points on the earth's surface are referenced.

The spatial data disseminated for the 2001 Census are based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83).

Censuses: 2001 (North American Datum of 1983)

1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (North American Datum of 1927)

Remarks:

Datums and the coordinate reference systems based on them were developed to describe geographic positions for surveying, mapping and navigation. Datums have evolved over the years from those describing a spherical earth to ellipsoidal models derived from years of satellite measurements. The earth is not a sphere, but an ellipsoid flattened slightly at the poles and bulging somewhat at the equator. The ellipsoid is used as a surface of reference for the mathematical model of the earth. Since mathematical models of the size and shape of the earth are now more precise, it has become necessary to change to a more accurate model.

There are two datums used in Canada: the **North American Datum of 1927 (NAD27)** and the **North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83)**. Both are geodetic reference systems, but each is based on different measurements. The NAD27 is based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866, and its reference point is a fixed point in Kansas. The NAD83 is an earth-centred datum based on a newly defined ellipsoid – the Geodetic Reference System of 1980 (GRS80) – and its reference point is the centre of the earth, as opposed to a point on the earth's surface.

The National Transformation software, developed by the Geodetic Survey of Canada, is used to convert coordinates between the NAD27 and the NAD83 reference systems in Canada. Spatial data based on one datum will not be coincident with the same spatial data based on another datum. For example, positional differences between the NAD27 and the NAD83 can be 100 metres. Other longitudinal analyses will also be affected by a change in datums. For example, block-face and enumeration area (EA) representative points from prior censuses may not fall in the correct 2001 standard geographic area.

Refer to the related definitions of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Coordinate System, Map Projection, National Geographic Base (NGB), Representative Point and Road Network Files (RNFs).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, the Digital Boundary Files (DBFs), Digital Cartographic Files (DCF), Street Network Files (SNFs), block-face and EA representative points, and other spatial data were based on the NAD27.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Ecumene

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Ecumene is a term used by geographers to mean inhabited land. It generally refers to land where people have made their permanent home, and to all work areas that are considered occupied and used for agricultural or any other economic purposes. Thus, there can be various types of ecumenes, each having their own unique characteristics (population ecumene, agricultural ecumene, industrial ecumene, etc.).

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (national population ecumene)
 1986 (urban population ecumene for 12 census metropolitan areas)
 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (national agricultural ecumene)

Remarks:

Ecumene is derived from the Greek root *oixos* meaning inhabited and *nenon* meaning space.

Statistics Canada delineates the population and agricultural ecumenes as follows:

1. The **national population ecumene** includes blocks with a minimum population density of 0.4 persons per square kilometre (about one person per square mile). To ensure visibility for small-scale thematic mapping, the detailed ecumene limits are manually generalized and small, discontinuous ecumene pockets are aggregated. There is at least one ecumene pocket in every census division (CD).

2. The **urban population ecumene** was created specifically for the 12 census metropolitan areas in the *1986 Metropolitan Atlas Series*. The delineation of the ecumene was based on residential and some institutional land uses. Similar to the national ecumene, the detailed urban ecumene limits were manually generalized. There is at least one ecumene pocket in every 1986 census tract (CT).
3. The **national agricultural ecumene** includes all dissemination areas with “significant” agricultural activity. Agricultural indicators, such as the ratio of agricultural land on census farms relative to total land area, and total economic value of agricultural production, are used. Regional variations are also taken into account. The ecumene is generalized for small-scale mapping.

It is recommended that the ecumene concept be used for dot and choropleth maps. If an ecumene is not applied to dot maps, the requisite number of dots may be randomly spread over entire unit areas; this approach defeats the main attributes of dot mapping (i.e. showing correct location, extent and density of the dot symbols). One of the inherent limitations of choropleth maps is that the statistical distribution is assumed to be homogeneous or uniformly spread over each unit area, and is consequently represented by tones or colours covering the entire unit. Thus, an ecumene renders a more accurate depiction of the spatial distribution of data.

The national population and agricultural ecumene files, which are suitable for small-scale mapping only, are based on the North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83). The urban ecumene files, which are appropriate for medium scales, are based on the North American Datum of 1927 (NAD27).

Refer to related definitions of Block, Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Datum, Dissemination Area (DA) and Thematic Map. For more information on the derivation of the urban population and agricultural ecumenes, refer to the *1986 Metropolitan Atlas Series* (Catalogue Nos. 98-101 to 98-112) and *Canadian Agriculture at a Glance* (Catalogue No. 96-325-XPB) respectively.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, there was at least one ecumene pocket in every census division (CD) for which data were published by the Census of Agriculture. As well, the criteria for delineating or updating the national population and agricultural ecumenes were different. All ecumene files were based on NAD27.

For 1996, the national population ecumene was available on a cost-recovery basis only.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Geocoding

Modified on April 15, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Geocoding is the process of assigning geographic identifiers (codes) to map features and data records. The resulting **geocodes** permit data to be linked geographically.

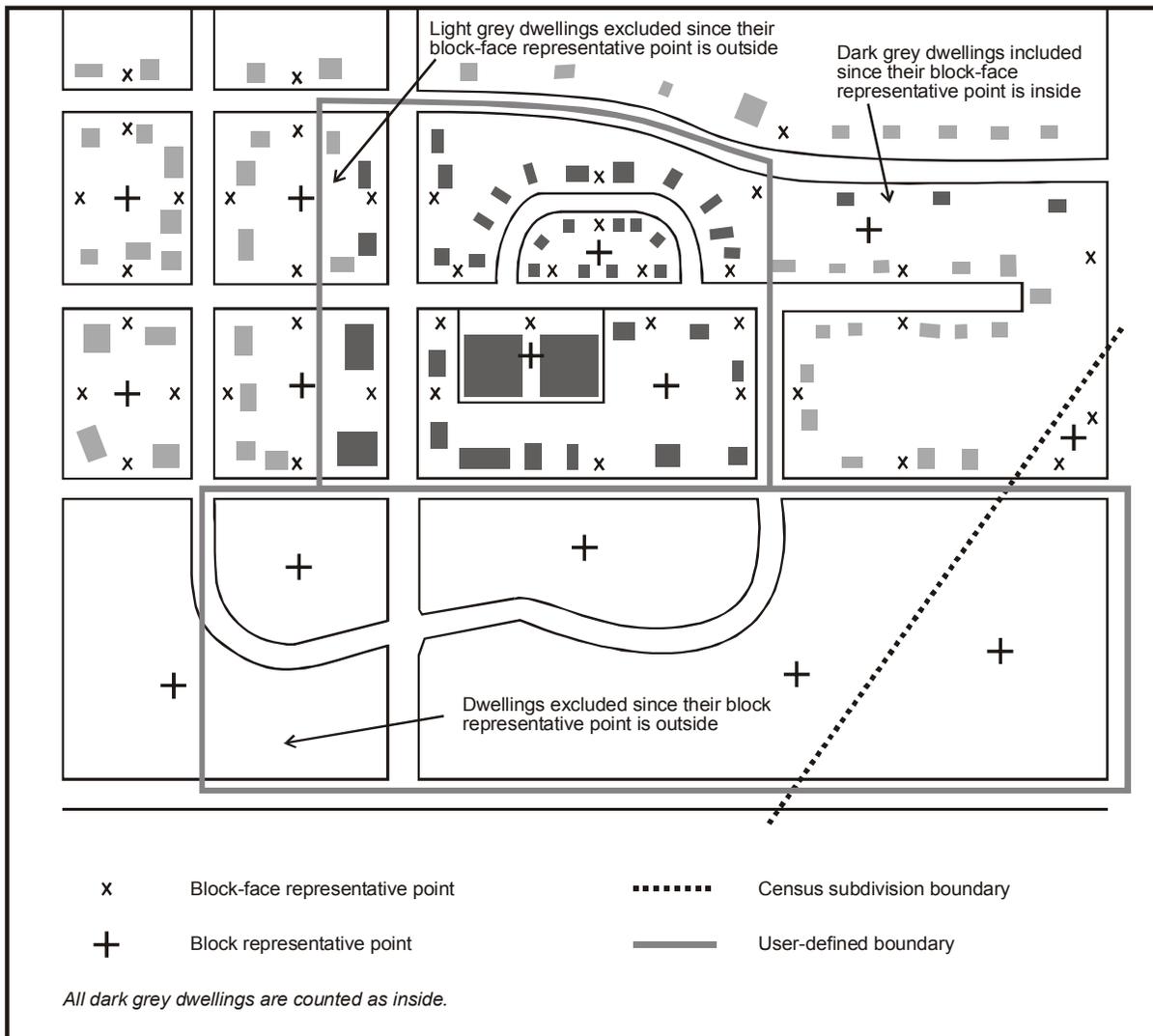
Households and postal codes are linked to block-face representative points when the street and address information is available; otherwise, they are linked to block representative points.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks:

Statistics Canada's **Geocoding Service** provides census data tabulations for user-defined areas, such as provincial electoral districts, local planning areas and school districts. When tabulating census data for user-defined areas, households are included or excluded depending on whether the representative points to which they are linked fall inside or outside the user-defined area (Figure 32). Thus, the data retrieved are most precise when user-defined areas coincide with block boundaries.

Figure 32. Example of Data Retrieval With User-defined Boundaries



Refer to related definitions of Block, Block-face, National Geographic Base (NGB), Postal Code and Representative Point.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, households and postal codes were linked to enumeration area (EA) representative points when they could not be linked to block-face representative points. As well, unrounded block-face population counts were provided for user confirmation before tabulating characteristic data for the custom areas.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Map Projection**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A map projection is the process of transforming and representing positions from the earth's three-dimensional curved surface to a two-dimensional (flat) surface. The process is accomplished by a direct geometric projection or by a mathematically derived transformation.

The Lambert Conformal Conic map projection is widely used for general maps of Canada at small scales and is the most common map projection used at Statistics Canada.

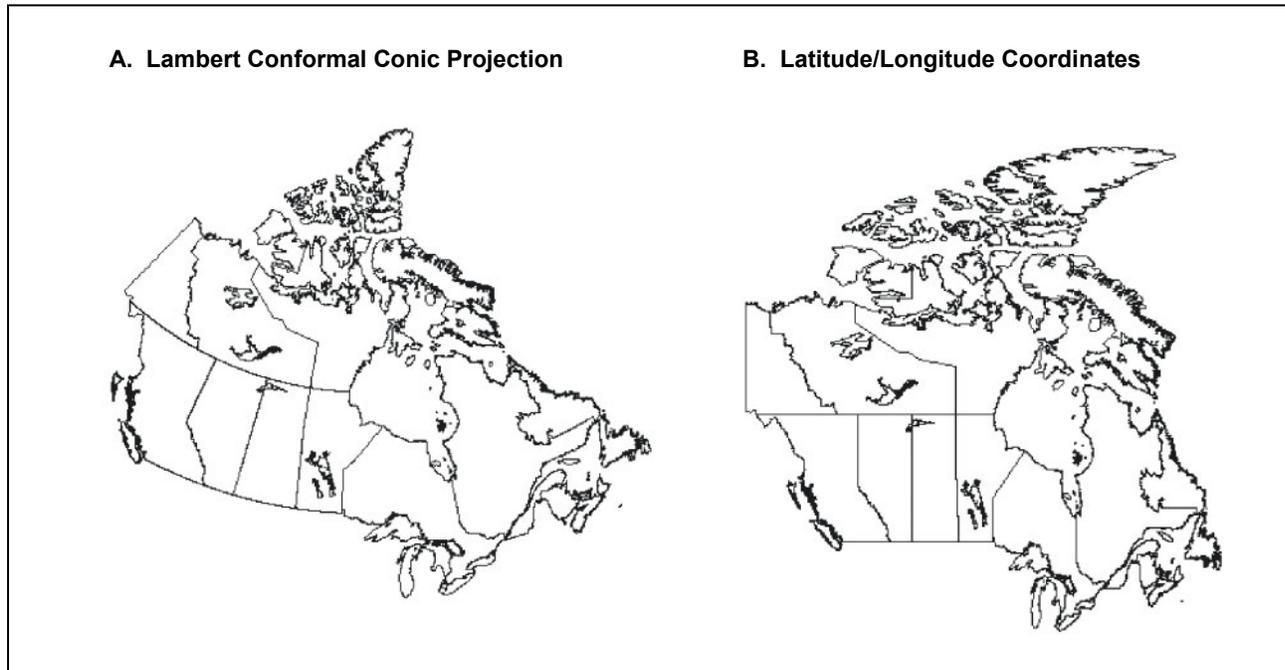
Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976 (Lambert Conformal Conic)
1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971 (Transverse Mercator)

Remarks:

The earth's surface cannot be flattened without distorting geometrical properties, such as area, shape, distance and direction. These spatial properties can be preserved individually (at least locally) and in certain combinations on map projections. However, the four basic properties of area, shape, distance and direction cannot all be held true simultaneously. Therefore, it is important to select a projection having the properties that are suited to the mapping situation. For example, a projection that accurately represents the shapes of the continents will distort their relative sizes.

The **Lambert Conformal Conic** projection (Figure 33) provides good directional and shape relationships for mid-latitude regions having a mainly east-to-west extent. Standard parallels at 49°N and 77°N are most commonly used. The scale is correct along the standard parallels only; areal deformation decreases between and increases away from the standard parallels. The central meridian, normally at 91°52'W, is a straight line about which the projection is symmetrical. False eastings and northings are given to ensure positive coordinate values.

Figure 33. Example of a Map Projection and Unprojected Coordinates



Latitude and longitude is not a map projection, as the coordinates are unprojected. It is recommended that maps not be generated using these spherical coordinates because they result in maps that are distorted (Figure 33).

The Lambert Conformal Conic map projection is the working projection for the Cartographic Boundary Files, the National Geographic Base and the Road Network Files. The **Transverse Mercator** map projection, which is the base for the Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinate system, is no longer used as the working projection or for disseminating spatial digital data.

Refer to related definitions of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Coordinate System, Datum, National Geographic Base (NGB) and Road Network Files (RNFs).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, the Street Network Files were based on the Transverse Mercator map projection/UTM coordinate system.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Reference Map

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A reference map shows the location of the geographic areas for which census data are tabulated and disseminated. The maps display the boundaries, names and codes of standard geographic areas, as well as major cultural and physical features, such as roads, railroads, coastlines, rivers and lakes.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

The boundaries, names and codes for the standard geographic areas reflect those in effect on January 1, 2001 (the geographic reference date for the 2001 Census of Canada). However, the boundaries and codes for some dissemination areas reflect changes made on Census Day (May 15, 2001) due to enumeration area adjustments.

Reference maps are available for the following geographic areas:

- Federal electoral districts: coverage for Canada on one map sheet;
- Economic regions and census divisions: coverage for Canada on one map sheet;
- Census divisions: coverage for Canada on one map sheet;
- Census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations: coverage for Canada on one map sheet;
- Statistical Area Classification: coverage for Canada on one map sheet;
- Census divisions and census subdivisions: coverage by province/territory;
- Census metropolitan areas, census agglomerations and census tracts: coverage by CMA and tracted CAs. Also show census subdivisions, urban core, urban fringe and rural fringe;
- Dissemination areas:
 - Coverage by census tract (CT) inside CMAs and tracted CAs. Also show census subdivisions.
 - Coverage by untracted CAs. Also show census subdivisions, urban areas and designated places.
 - Coverage by census division (CD) outside CMAs and CAs. Also show urban areas and designated places.

Since designated places (DPLs) are quite small in areal extent, they are depicted as point symbols on the reference maps.

The dissemination area (DA) reference map series replaces the enumeration area (EA) reference map series for the 2001 Census, since the DA replaces the EA as a dissemination unit.

The boundaries, names and codes for the standard geographic areas are obtained from the National Geographic Base (NGB) and associated attribute tables. The hydrography sources are from Natural Resources Canada – the GeoBase Hydrography, Level 0, 2000 (which is based on the National Atlas of Canada 1:1,000,000 hydrography base), and the 1:50,000 and 1:250,000 National Topographic Database (NTDB). Since the NTDB is based on two input map scales, some cultural and physical features may not line up between different map scales.

The 2001 Census is the first census in which all reference maps are computer-produced. Reference maps can assist users in relating published census data to actual locations on the ground, or in defining their own custom areas relative to the standard geographic areas.

Refer to related definitions of Geographic Reference Date and National Geographic Base (NGB), and to the *2001 Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) Manual, Volume II*, Reference Maps (Catalogue No. 12-572-XPB) and *Reference Guides* for the various series of reference maps.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, EA reference maps were generated for dissemination purposes.

For 1996, some reference maps were generated using manual cartographic methods.

Prior to 1996, most reference maps were generated using manual cartographic methods.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Representative Point**Part A – Plain Language Definition**

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A representative point is a single point that represents a linear or areal feature. The point is centrally located along the linear feature or centrally within the areal feature.

Representative points are generated for block-faces, blocks, enumeration areas, dissemination areas, census subdivisions and designated places. The block-face and block representative points support the geocoding of households and postal codes.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971

Remarks:

Representative points are located by the following methods using the National Geographic Base (NGB):

Block-face Representative Points

Block-face representative points are computed along addressable and non-addressable streets, midway (or approximately midway) between two consecutive features intersecting a street. The features can be other streets, boundaries of standard geographic areas, or limits of map tiles.

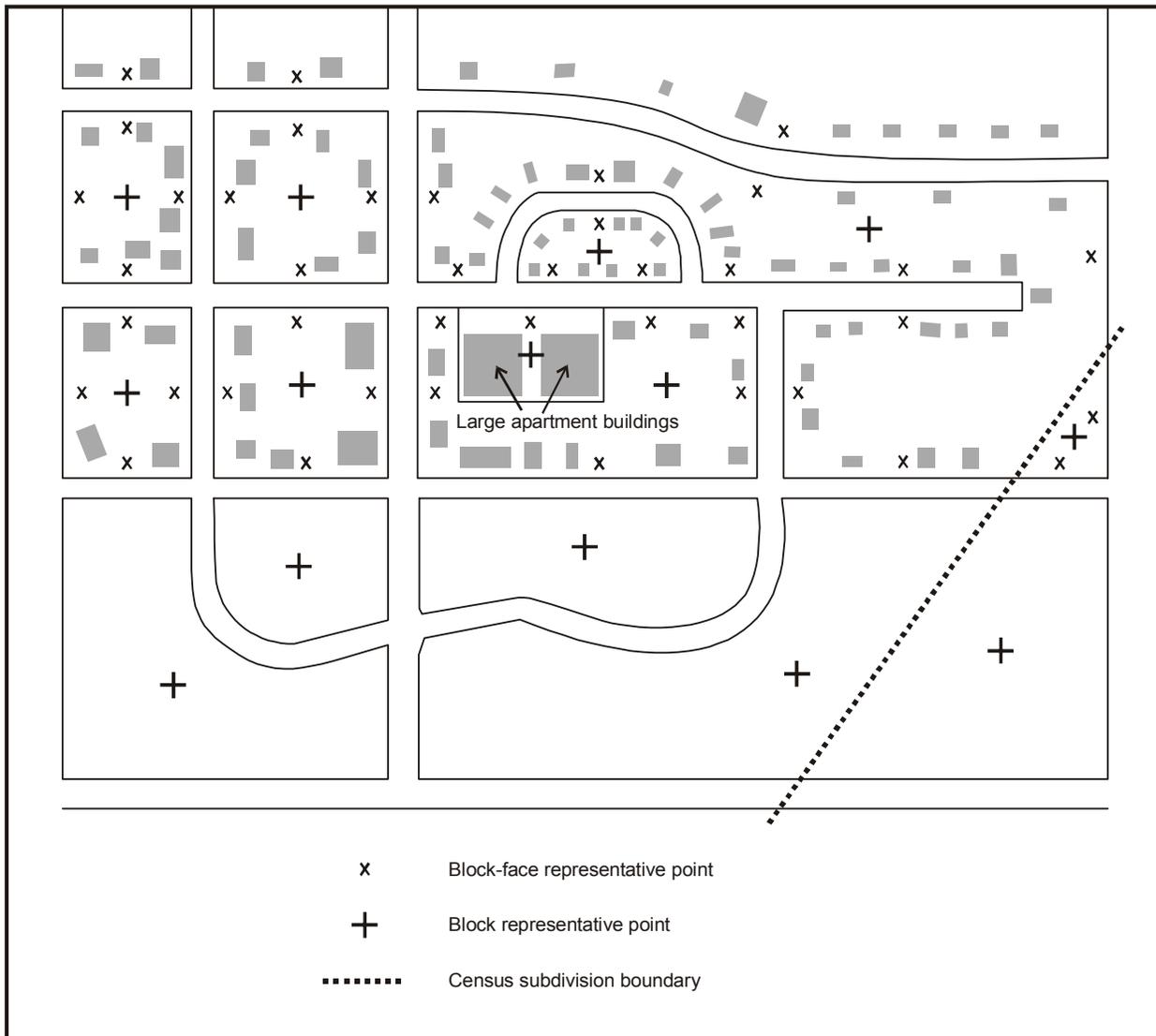
The points are set back a perpendicular distance of either 10, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line to ensure that all points have unique coordinates, and are located in the correct block and on the correct side of the street.

Geographic Area Representative Points

The representative points for blocks, enumeration areas (EAs), dissemination areas (DAs), census subdivisions (CSDs) and designated places (DPLs) are created using the Arc/Info® GIS software, which locates the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon. Representative points are also generated for all DPL parts (i.e. DPLs that straddle CSDs). If a block, EA, DA or CSD is in multiple parts, the point is located in the portion having the largest area.

Figure 34 shows an example of block-face and block representative points.

Figure 34. Example of Block-face and Block Representative Points



The representative points for blocks, enumeration areas, dissemination areas, census subdivisions and designated places are guaranteed to fall within the appropriate geographic area using an automated topology check. Some block-face, block, enumeration area, dissemination area, census subdivision and designated place representative points may fall in NGB water bodies.

Households and postal codes are linked to block-face representative points when the street and address information is available; otherwise they are assigned to block representative points.

Representative points can also be used for data retrieval, data analysis and mapping. All representative points are calculated based on the x,y coordinates of the Lambert Conformal Conic map projection, but are disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.

Refer to related definitions of Block, Block-face, Census Subdivision (CSD), Designated Place (DPL), Dissemination Area (DA), Enumeration Area (EA), Geocoding, Land Area, National Geographic Base (NGB) and Postal Code, and to related *Reference Guides* (Postal Code Conversion File).

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 2001, EA representative points were disseminated.

Prior to 1996, all representative points were called “centroids”.

1. Block-face Representative Points

- Prior to 2001, block-face representative points were not generated when streets crossed the limits of map tiles, since map tiles were not used.
- For 1996, block-face representative points were generated within Street Network File (SNF) coverage only, and the points were set back a distance of 22, 11, 5 or 1 metre(s) from the street centre line. The points were calculated in UTM coordinates, but were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates.
- Prior to 1996, some block-face representative points did not have unique coordinate values, and all points were set back a perpendicular distance of 22 metres from the street centre line. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.
- Prior to 1991, block-faces were not created when EA boundary segments did not follow visible features.

2. Enumeration Area Representative Points

- For 1996, EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert Conformal Conic map projection. The points were generated as follows:
 - **EAs within SNF coverage:** the points were created using the Arc/Info® GIS software, which located the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon; steps were taken so that the points did not fall in water bodies. If the EA was in multiple parts, the point was located, when possible, in the portion with the largest number of occupied private dwellings (based on the 1991 block-face counts). In some cases, however, the representative point was located in the EA portion having the largest land area.

- **EAs outside SNF coverage:** the points were located by a manual procedure based on the visual inspection of building and/or street patterns on EA reference maps (some of which had topographic base map information). The representative point was located, when possible, within a predominant cluster of buildings and/or streets. If there was no predominant cluster, then the point was located between two or more clusters. In the absence of any cluster, the point was placed at the visual centre of the EA. If an EA was in multiple parts, the point was located in the portion with the largest number of dwellings. The representative point was located in the land-based portion of the EA.
- For 1991, the EA representative points within SNF coverage were created using the Arc/Info® GIS software, which locates the point suitable for label or symbol placement in each polygon; some points were located in water bodies. In addition, for EAs in multiple parts in SNF coverage, there was no rule for selecting the EA part to which the representative point was assigned. The EA representative points were disseminated in latitude/longitude coordinates, UTM coordinates, and in x,y coordinates of the Lambert Conformal Conic map projection.
- Prior to 1991, EA representative points within SNF coverage were computed by a different method. An algorithm selected one of the existing block-face representative points (based on their number and concentration) within an EA as the overall EA representative point. The points were calculated and disseminated in UTM coordinates.

Maps and Mapping/Geographic Information Systems (GIS): Thematic Map

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

A thematic map shows the spatial distribution of one or more specific data themes for standard geographic areas. The map may be qualitative in nature (e.g. predominant farm types) or quantitative (e.g. percentage population change).

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

A thematic map is also called a special-purpose, single-topic, or statistical map. A thematic map focuses on the spatial variability of a specific distribution or theme (such as population density or average annual income), whereas a **reference map** focuses on the location and names of features. Thematic maps normally include some locational or reference information such as place names or major water bodies, to help map readers familiarize themselves with the geographic area covered on the map.

All thematic maps are composed of two important elements: a base map and statistical data. Normally, the two are available as digital files, such as a Cartographic Boundary File and census data. Desk-top geographic information systems or computer-mapping packages are typically used to generate thematic maps.

Two common thematic maps produced at Statistics Canada are **dot maps** and **choropleth maps**.¹ The **ecumene** concept is generally used for dot and choropleth maps, to ensure that the spatial representation of census data is limited to inhabited land. To ensure confidentiality, all census data are subject to random rounding and/or data suppression.

Thematic maps can be used for exploratory spatial data analysis, confirming hypotheses, synthesizing spatial data by revealing patterns and relationships, and data presentation.

Refer to related definitions of Cartographic Boundary Files (CBFs), Ecumene and Reference Map.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 1976, thematic maps were generated using manual cartographic methods.

Other: Geographic Reference Date

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The geographic reference date is a date determined by Statistics Canada for the purpose of finalizing the geographic framework for which census data will be collected, tabulated and reported. For the 2001 Census, the geographic reference date is **January 1, 2001**.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Names, boundaries and other attributes of geographic areas change frequently (examples of these changes include municipal amalgamations and annexations, and change in the name and status of municipalities). Since the geographic framework is used for census data collection, the geographic reference date must be set sufficiently in advance of Census Day to permit all changes to be processed in time. Furthermore, notification of these changes is normally not received from the applicable federal and provincial authorities until after the changes have occurred. For these reasons, the census reports data according to the geographic areas that are in effect on January 1, 2001, provided that Statistics Canada receives the information on the changes by March 1, 2001.

Since the geographic framework is established according to the geographic areas in effect as of January 1, 2001, and census data refer to conditions as they exist on Census Day (May 15, 2001), census data may be reported for geographic areas that have subsequently changed during this period.

¹ The term “choropleth” is derived from the Greek *choros*, for place, and *plethos*, for magnitude. The choropleth method symbolizes statistical data as they occur within the boundaries of predefined geographic units (such as census divisions or census tracts). Usually, the data are grouped into a limited number of classes, with each class representing a range of data values. A logical sequence of colours or grey tones is then applied to each class. It is important to note that choropleth maps must use standardized data values (e.g. ratios or percentages) rather than absolute values.

The geographic framework established for census purposes may not reflect the actual geographic framework in effect on January 1, 2001, if Statistics Canada never receives, or does not receive by March 1, 2001, the appropriate notification from relevant federal and provincial authorities.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 1981, the geographic reference date was set to the same date as Census Day. From the 1981 Census onwards, it has been set at January 1 of the census year, which has improved the timeliness of the release of census products.

Other: *Postal Code*

Modified on July 10, 2002

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The postal code is a six-character code defined and maintained by Canada Post Corporation for the purpose of sorting and delivering mail.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991 (1/5 sample), 1986 (1/5 sample)

Remarks:

Structure of the Postal Code

The form of the postal code is “ANA NAN”, where A is an alphabetic character and N is a numeric character. The first character of a postal code represents a province or territory, or a major sector entirely within a province (Table 11).

Table 11. First Character of Postal Code and Corresponding Province, Territory or Region

First Character of the Postal Code	Province, Territory or Region	First Character of the Postal Code	Province, Territory or Region
A	Newfoundland and Labrador	M	Toronto Metropolitan
B	Nova Scotia	N	Southwestern Ontario
C	Prince Edward Island	P	Northern Ontario
E	New Brunswick	R	Manitoba
G	Quebec East	S	Saskatchewan
H	Montreal Metropolitan	T	Alberta
J	Quebec West	V	British Columbia
K	Eastern Ontario	X	Northwest Territories and Nunavut
L	Central Ontario	Y	Yukon Territory

The first three characters of the postal code identify the **forward sortation area** (FSA). Individual FSAs are associated with a postal facility from which mail delivery originates. The average number of households served by an FSA is approximately 7,000, but the number can range from zero to more than 50,000 households. This wide range of households occurs because some FSAs contain only businesses (zero households) and some FSAs serve very large geographic areas. Rural FSAs are identified by the presence of a zero in the second position of the FSA code. As of May 2001, there were approximately 1,600 FSAs in Canada.

The last three characters of the postal code identify the **Local Delivery Unit** (LDU). Each LDU is associated with one type of mail delivery (for example, letter carrier delivery, general delivery) and it represents one or more mail delivery points. The average number of households served by an LDU is approximately 15, but the number can range from zero to 7,000 households. This wide range of households occurs because some LDUs contain only businesses (zero households) and some LDUs serve large geographic areas. As of May 2001, there were more than 750,000 Local Delivery Units.

Table 1 in the Introduction shows the number of postal codes and forward sortation areas provided by Canada Post Corporation that are valid as of May 2001 by province and territory.

Postal Codes Captured from Census Questionnaires

The postal code is captured for all households from the address information provided by the respondent on the front page of the census questionnaire on May 15, 2001. The respondent's postal code is accepted whether or not it is the same as the postal code assigned by Canada Post Corporation to that address. The respondent's postal code is verified using the following criteria:

1. The postal code is valid as of May 2001.
2. The FSA of an urban postal code and the entire postal code for a rural area (FSA/LDU) is validated against a reference file at the census subdivision (CSD) level.

In cases where a postal code is not provided or where the postal code is not a current valid code, an imputation process assigns a valid postal code.

The postal code provided by respondents may not be the same as the postal code of the dwelling in which they live. For example, they may denote the postal code of their mailing address, such as a post office location (as in the case of general delivery) or a business location. Consequently, some respondents' postal codes may fall outside the FSA in which their dwelling is located.

Users should proceed with caution if postal codes are used as a proxy for standard geographic areas. Postal codes do not necessarily respect the boundaries of standard geographic areas (e.g. the same postal code can fall in two or more census subdivisions).

For more detailed information, refer to the *Postal Code Conversion File Reference Guide* (Catalogue No. 92F0153GIE). Note that this document will be available in the Fall of 2002.

Other: Spatial Data Quality Elements

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

Spatial data quality elements provide information on the fitness-for-use of a spatial database by describing why, when and how the data are created, and how accurate the data are. The elements include an overview describing the purpose and usage, as well as specific quality elements reporting on the lineage, positional accuracy, attribute accuracy, logical consistency and completeness. This information is provided to users for all spatial data products disseminated for the census.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991

Remarks:

Today's technology makes it possible for a growing number of spatial data producers and users to access geospatial data. Digital datasets can now be obtained through geospatial clearinghouses/warehouses by users with diverse backgrounds. Furthermore, data producers can now more easily add new features, attributes and relationships to those already in the database. Therefore, any given dataset may be the result of the contributions of a number of data producers. Since perfect, complete and correct spatial data rarely exist, the assumptions and limitations affecting the creation or modification of data must be fully documented. Consequently the need to communicate information about datasets to this ever-increasing pool of users becomes critical.

Data quality concepts provide an important framework for both data producers and users. Proper documentation provides spatial data producers with a better knowledge of their holdings, and allows them to more effectively manage data production, storage, updating and reuse. Data users can use this information to determine the appropriateness of a dataset for a given application and lessen the possibility of misuse. Highlighted below are elements of spatial data quality.

Overview elements

1. **Purpose statement.** Describes the rationale for creating a dataset and contains information about its intended use.
2. **Usage statement.** Describes the application(s) for which a dataset is used by the data producer or by data users.

Specific elements

1. **Lineage.** Describes the history of the spatial data, including descriptions of the source material from which the data were derived, and the methods of derivation. It also contains the dates of the source material, and all transformations involved in producing the final digital files or map products.

2. **Positional accuracy.** Refers to the absolute and relative accuracy of the positions of geographic features. Absolute accuracy is the closeness of the coordinate values in a dataset to values accepted as or being true. Relative accuracy is the closeness of the relative positions of features to their respective relative positions accepted as or being true. Descriptions of positional accuracy include the quality of the final file or product after all transformations.
3. **Attribute accuracy.** Refers to the accuracy of the quantitative and qualitative information attached to each feature (such as population for an urban area, street name, census subdivision name and code).
4. **Logical consistency.** Describes the fidelity of relationships encoded in the data structure of the digital spatial data.
5. **Completeness.** Refers to the degree to which geographic features, their attributes and their relationships are included or omitted in a dataset. It also includes information on selection criteria, definitions used, and other relevant mapping rules.

These elements are reported in the *Users' Guides* and *Reference Guides* that accompany the spatial files and products, and form a subset of information contained in spatial metadata.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to 1991, the data quality elements were not described in the supporting documentation for spatial data products.

Other: Urban Population Size Group

Part A – Plain Language Definition

Not applicable

Part B – Detailed Definition

The term “Urban population size group” refers to the classification used in standard tabulations where **urban areas** are distributed according to the following predetermined size groups, based on the current census population.

1,000	–	2,499
2,500	–	4,999
5,000	–	9,999
10,000	–	24,999
25,000	–	49,999
50,000	–	99,999
100,000	–	249,999
250,000	–	499,999
500,000	–	999,999
1,000,000		and over

Tabulations are not limited to these predetermined population size groups; the census database has the capability of tabulating data according to any user-defined population size group.

Censuses: 2001, 1996, 1991, 1986, 1981, 1976, 1971, 1966, 1961

Remarks:

Refer to the related definition of Urban Area (UA).

From 1986 to 1996, there was an urban population size group for "Under 1,000". This group included those urban areas that had met the necessary population concentration and density criteria at the previous census, but had declined in population to under 1,000 for the current year.

Changes Prior to the 2001 Census:

Prior to the 1986 Census, the following population size groups were used:

1,000	–	2,499
2,500	–	4,999
5,000	–	9,999
10,000	–	29,999
30,000	–	99,999
100,000	–	499,999
500,000		and over

Prior to the 1976 Census, the term "Municipal Size Group" was used to describe this concept.

Appendix A. Census Questionnaire Content and Derived Variables Since Confederation

Modified on August 6, 2002

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Demographic Characteristics								
Name	1871	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Relationship to Person 1	1891	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Date of birth	1871	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Sex	1871	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Marital status	1871	X	X	X	X	–	–	–
Legal marital status	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Common-law status	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Mobility – Place of residence 1 year ago	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Mobility – Place of residence 5 years ago	1961	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Number of moves since previous census	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Date of first marriage	1941	X	–	X	–	–	–	–
Number of children ever born	1941	X	–	X	–	X	–	–
Ethnocultural and Language Characteristics								
Knowledge of official languages	1901	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Knowledge of other languages	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Home language	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Mother tongue	1901	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Language used at work	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	X
Place of birth	1871	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Place of birth of parents	1891	X	–	–	–	–	–	X
Citizenship	1901	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Landed immigrant status	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Period/year of immigration	1901	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Ethnic origin	1871	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Aboriginal status (self-perception)	–	–	–	–	X	–	–	–

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Ethnocultural and Language Characteristics – Concluded								
Registered Indian status	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Indian Band/First Nation	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
North American Indian, Métis, Inuit (self-reporting)	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Population group (visible minority status)	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Religion	1871	X	–	X	–	X	–	X
Activity Limitations/Difficulties/Reductions								
At home	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	X
At school or at work	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	X
In other activities	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	X
Long-term disabilities or handicaps	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	–
Difficulties with daily activities	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	X
Education								
Highest level of elementary or secondary schooling	1941	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Years of schooling (university)	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X
Years of schooling (other)	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X
School attendance	1871	X	X	X	–	X	X	X
University degrees	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X
Completion of full-time vocational course (3 months or more)	1971	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Province of elementary or secondary schooling (or outside Canada)	1971	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Major field of study	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	X
Labour Market Activities								
Actual hours worked last week	1951	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Usual hours worked each week	1911	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Last date of work	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Industry	1901	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Occupation	1871	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Class of worker	1891	X	–	X	X	X	X	X

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Labour Market Activities –								
Concluded								
Weeks worked in reference year	1911	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Full-time/part-time work	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Temporary lay-off/absent from job	–	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
New job to start in four weeks or less	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X
Looked for work in past four weeks	1961	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Availability for work	–	–	X	X	X	X	X	X
Incorporation status	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Journey to Work								
Place of work	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Mode of transportation to work	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Income								
Income in year previous to census year	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Wages and salaries	1901	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Net non-farm self-employment income	1961	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Net farm self-employment income	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Family allowances	–	X	–	X	X	X	–	–
Federal Child Tax Credits/benefits	–	–	–	–	X	X	X	X
Old Age Security (OAS) and Guaranteed Income Supplement (GIS)	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Benefits from Canada or Quebec Pension Plan (CPP/QPP)	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Benefits from Employment Insurance	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Other income from government sources	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Interests and dividends	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Other investment income	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Retirement pensions, superannuation, annuities	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Other money income	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Unpaid Work								
Hours doing unpaid housework last week	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Hours caring for children without pay last week	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Hours providing unpaid care/assistance to seniors last week	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	X
Family and Household								
Agricultural operator	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Household maintainer(s)	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
Household head (Person 1)	1941	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Family head	1921	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Tenure (owned/rented)	1921	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Tenure (condominium)	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
Tenure (band housing)	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Presence of mortgage	1941	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Who holds first mortgage	–	X	–	–	–	–	X	X
Number of persons per household	–	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Shelter costs – Renter	1941	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Payment of reduced rent (e.g. government subsidized housing)	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Automobiles available for personal use	1941	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Vacation home ownership	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Major home appliances	1931	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Yearly payments	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
– electricity	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
– oil, coal, wood, etc.	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
– gas	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
– water	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Family and Household – Concluded								
– shelter costs – Owner	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
• mortgage	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
• property taxes	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
• condominium	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
• condominium fees	–	–	–	–	–	X	X	X
Dwelling								
Number of rooms	1941	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Number of bedrooms	–	X	–	–	–	X	X	X
Number of bathrooms	–	–	–	X	–	–	–	–
Period of construction	1941	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Condition of dwelling	–	–	–	X	–	X	X	X
Type of dwelling	1941	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Value of dwelling	1941	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Number of dwellings in the building	1941	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Garage	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Piped running water in dwelling	1941	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Bath or shower	1941	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Use of flush toilet in building	1941	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Unoccupied dwelling, reason for	–	–	X	–	X	–	–	–
Seasonal/marginal dwellings	–	–	–	X	X	X	X	X
Length of occupancy	1941	X	–	X	–	–	–	–
Source of water supply	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Method of sewage disposal	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
Principal type of heating equipment	1941	X	–	X	X	–	–	–
Principal fuel used for:								
– cooking	–	X	–	–	–	–	–	–
– heating	1941	X	–	X	X	–	–	–
– water heating	–	X	–	X	–	–	–	–

	First Time in Census (Before 1971)	1971	1976	1981	1986	1991	1996	2001
Coverage								
Did you leave anyone out?	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Household roster	–	X	–	–	–	X	X	X
Number of temporary residents	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Number of usual residents	–	X	–	X	X	X	X	X
Other								
Wartime service	1951	X	–	–	–	–	–	–

Appendix B. Data Quality, Sampling and Weighting, Confidentiality and Random Rounding

Modified on December 4, 2003

Data Quality

General

The 2001 Census was a large and complex undertaking and, while considerable effort was taken to ensure high standards throughout all collection and processing operations, the resulting estimates are inevitably subject to a certain degree of error. Users of census data should be aware that such error exists, and should have some appreciation of its main components, so that they can assess the usefulness of census data for their purposes and the risks involved in basing conclusions or decisions on these data.

Errors can arise at virtually every stage of the census process, from the preparation of materials through data processing, including the listing of dwellings and the collection of data. Some errors occur at random, and when the individual responses are aggregated for a sufficiently large group, such errors tend to cancel out. For errors of this nature, the larger the group, the more accurate the corresponding estimate. It is for this reason that users are advised to be cautious when using small estimates. There are some errors, however, which might occur more systematically, and which result in “biased” estimates. Because the bias from such errors is persistent no matter how large the group for which responses are aggregated, and because bias is particularly difficult to measure, systematic errors are a more serious problem for most data users than the random errors referred to previously.

For census data in general, the principal types of error are as follows:

- **coverage errors**, which occur when dwellings or individuals are missed, incorrectly enumerated or counted more than once;
- **non-response errors**, which result when responses cannot be obtained from a certain number of households and/or individuals, because of extended absence or some other reason;
- **response errors**, which occur when the respondent, or sometimes the Census Representative, misunderstands a census question, and records an incorrect response or simply uses the wrong response box;
- **processing errors**, which can occur at various steps including **coding**, when “write-in” responses are transformed into numerical codes; **data capture**, when responses are transferred from the census questionnaire in an electronic format, by key-entry operators; and **imputation**, when a “valid”, but not necessarily correct, response is inserted into a record by the computer to replace missing or “invalid” data (“valid” and “invalid” referring to whether or not the response is consistent with other information on the record);
- **sampling errors**, which apply only to the supplementary questions on the “long form” asked of a one-fifth sample of households, and which arise from the fact that the responses to these questions, when weighted up to represent the whole population, inevitably differ somewhat from the responses which would have been obtained if these questions had been asked of all households.

The above types of error each have both random and systematic components. Usually, however, the systematic component of sampling error is very small in relation to its random component. For the other non-sampling errors, both random and systematic components may be significant.

Coverage Errors

Coverage errors affect the accuracy of the census counts, that is, the sizes of the various census universes: population, families, households and dwellings. While steps have been taken to correct certain identifiable errors, the final counts are still subject to some degree of error because persons or dwellings have been missed, incorrectly enumerated in the census or counted more than once.

Missed dwellings or persons result in **undercoverage**. Dwellings can be missed because of the misunderstanding of enumeration area (EA) boundaries, or because either they do not look like dwellings or they appear uninhabitable. Persons can be missed when their dwelling is missed or is classified as vacant, or because the respondent misinterprets the instructions on whom to include on the questionnaire. Some individuals may be missed because they have no usual residence and did not spend census night in a dwelling.

Dwellings or persons incorrectly enumerated or double counted result in **overcoverage**. Overcoverage of dwellings can occur when structures unfit for habitation are listed as dwellings (incorrectly enumerated), when there is a certain ambiguity regarding the EA boundaries or when units (for example, rooms) are listed separately instead of being treated as part of one dwelling (double counted). Persons can be counted more than once because their dwelling is double counted or because the guidelines on whom to include on the questionnaire have been misunderstood. Occasionally, someone who is not in the census population universe, such as a foreign resident or a fictitious person, may, incorrectly, be enumerated in the census. On average, overcoverage is less likely to occur than undercoverage and, as a result, counts of dwellings and persons are likely to be slightly underestimated.

For the 2001 Census, three studies are used to measure coverage error. In the Dwelling Classification Study, dwellings listed as vacant were revisited to verify that they were vacant on Census Day, and dwellings whose households were listed as non-respondent were revisited to determine the number of usual residents and their characteristics. Adjustments have been made to the final census counts for households and persons missed because their dwelling was incorrectly classified as vacant. The census counts may also have been adjusted for dwellings whose households were classified as non-respondent. Despite these adjustments, the final counts are still subject to some undercoverage. Undercoverage tends to be higher for certain segments of the population, such as young adults (especially young adult males) and recent immigrants. The Reverse Record Check Study is used to measure the residual undercoverage for Canada, and each province and territory. The Overcoverage Study is designed to investigate overcoverage errors. The results of the Reverse Record Check and the Overcoverage Study, when taken together, furnish an estimate of net undercoverage.

Other Non-sampling Errors

While coverage errors affect the number of units in the various census universes, other errors affect the characteristics of those units.

Sometimes it is not possible to obtain a complete response from a household, even though the dwelling was identified as occupied and a questionnaire was dropped off. The household members may have been away throughout the census period or, in rare instances, the householder may have refused to complete the form. More frequently, the questionnaire is returned but no response is provided to certain questions. Effort is devoted to ensure as complete a questionnaire as possible. Census representatives edit the questionnaires and follow up on missing information. Their work is then checked by a supervisor and a quality control technician. Despite this, at the end of the collection stage, a small number of responses are still missing, i.e. **non-response errors**. Although missing responses are eliminated during processing by replacing each one of them by the corresponding response for a “similar” record, there remain some potential imputation errors. This is particularly serious if the non-respondents differ in some respects from the respondents; this procedure will then introduce a **non-response bias**.

Even when a response is obtained, it may not be entirely accurate. The respondent may have misinterpreted the question or may have guessed the answer, especially when answering on behalf of another, possibly absent, household member. The respondent may also have entered the answer in the wrong place on the questionnaire. Such errors are referred to as **response errors**. While response errors usually arise from inaccurate information provided by respondents, they can also result from mistakes by the Census Representative who completed certain parts of the questionnaire, such as the structural type of dwelling, or who followed up to obtain a missing response.

Some of the census questions require a written response. During processing, these “write-in” entries are given a numeric code. **Coding errors** can occur when the written response is ambiguous, incomplete, difficult to read or when the code list is extensive (e.g. major field of study, place of work). A formal Quality Control (QC) operation is used to detect, rectify and reduce coding errors. Within each work unit, a sample of responses is independently coded a second time. The resolution of discrepancies between the first and second codings determines whether recoding of the work unit is necessary. Except for the Industry and Occupation variables, much of the census coding is now automated, resulting in a reduction of coding errors.

The information on the questionnaires is typed into a computer file. Two procedures are used to control the number of **data capture errors**. First, certain edits (such as range checks) are performed as the data are keyed in. Second, a sample from each batch of documents is retyped and compared with the original entries. Unsatisfactory work is identified and corrected, and the remainder of the batch is captured as needed.

Once captured, the data are edited where they undergo a series of computer checks to identify missing or inconsistent responses. These are replaced during the imputation stage of processing where either a response consistent with the other respondents’ data is inferred or a response from a similar donor is substituted. Imputation ensures a complete database where the data correspond to the census counts and facilitate multivariate analyses. Although errors may have been introduced during **imputation**, the methods used have been rigorously tested to minimize systematic errors.

Various studies are being carried out to evaluate the quality of the responses obtained in the 2001 Census. For each question, non-response rates and edit failure rates have been calculated. These can be useful in identifying the potential for non-response errors and other types of errors. Also, tabulations from the 2001 Census have been or will be compared with corresponding estimates from previous censuses, from sample surveys (such as the Labour Force Survey) and from various administrative records (such as birth registrations and municipal assessment records). Such comparisons can indicate potential quality problems or at least discrepancies between the sources.

In addition to these aggregate-level comparisons, there are some micro-match studies in progress, in which census responses are compared with another source of information at the individual record level. For certain “stable” characteristics (such as age, sex, mother tongue and place of birth), the responses obtained in the 2001 Census, for a sample of individuals, are being compared with those for the same individuals in the 1996 Census.

Sampling Errors

Estimates obtained by weighting up responses collected on a sample basis are subject to error due to the fact that the distribution of characteristics within the sample will not usually be identical to the distribution of characteristics within the population from which the sample has been selected.

The potential error introduced by sampling will vary according to the relative scarcity of the characteristics in the population. For large cell values, the potential error due to sampling, as a proportion of the cell value, will be relatively small. For small cell values, this potential error, as a proportion of the cell value, will be relatively large.

The potential error due to sampling is usually expressed in terms of the so-called “standard error”. This is the square root of the average, taken over all possible samples of the same size and design, of the squared deviation of the sample estimate from the value for the total population.

The following table provides approximate measures of the standard error due to sampling. These measures are intended as a general guide only.

Approximate Standard Error Due to Sampling for 2001 Census Sample Data

Cell Value	Approximate Standard Error
50 or less	15
100	20
200	30
500	45
1,000	65
2,000	90
5,000	140
10,000	200
20,000	280
50,000	450
100,000	630
500,000	1,400

Users wishing to determine the approximate error due to sampling for any given cell of data, based upon the 20% sample, should choose the standard error value corresponding to the cell value that is closest to the value of the given cell in the census tabulation. When using the obtained standard error value, the user, in general, can be reasonably certain that, for the enumerated population, the true value (discounting all forms of error other than sampling) lies within plus or minus three times the standard error (e.g. for a cell value of 1,000, the range would be $1,000 \pm [3 \times 65]$ or $1,000 \pm 195$).

The standard errors given in the table above will not apply to population, household, dwelling or family counts for the geographic area under consideration (see Sampling and Weighting below). The effect of sampling for these cells can be determined by a comparison with a corresponding 100% data product.

The effect of the particular sample design and weighting procedure used in the 2001 Census will vary, however, from one characteristic to another and from one geographic area to another. The standard error values in the table may, therefore, understate or overstate the error due to sampling.

Sampling and Weighting

The 2001 Census data were collected either from 100% of the households or on a sample basis (i.e. from a random sample of one in five households) with the data weighted up to provide estimates for the entire population. The information was collected on a 20% sample basis and weighted up to compensate for sampling. All table headings are noted accordingly. Note that, on Indian reserves and in remote areas, all data were collected on a 100% basis.

For any given geographic area, the weighted population, household, dwelling or family total or subtotal may differ from that shown in reports containing data collected on a 100% basis. Such variations are due to sampling and to the fact that, unlike sample data, 100% data do not exclude institutional residents.

Confidentiality and Random Rounding

The figures shown in the tables have been subjected to a confidentiality procedure known as **random rounding** to prevent the possibility of associating statistical data with any identifiable individual. Under this method, all figures, including totals and margins, are randomly rounded either up or down to a multiple of "5", and in some cases "10". While providing strong protection against disclosure, this technique does not add significant error to the census data. The user should be aware that totals and margins are rounded independently of the cell data so that some differences between these and the sum of rounded cell data may exist. Also, minor differences can be expected in corresponding totals and cell values among various census tabulations. Similarly, percentages, which are calculated on rounded figures, do not necessarily add up to 100%. Order statistics (median, quartiles, percentiles, etc.) and measures of dispersion such as the standard error are computed in the usual manner. When a statistic is defined as the quotient of two numbers (which is the case for averages, percentages, and proportions), the two numbers are rounded before the division is performed. For income, owner's payments, value of dwelling, hours worked, weeks worked and age, the sum is defined as the product of the average and the rounded weighted frequency. Otherwise, it is the weighted sum that is rounded. It should also be noted that small cell counts may suffer a significant distortion as a result of random rounding. Individual data cells containing small numbers may lose their precision as a result. Also, a statistic is suppressed if the number of actual records used in the calculation is less than 4 or if the sum of the weight of these records is less than 10. In addition, for values expressed in dollar units, other rules are applied. For standard products, if all the values are the same, the statistic is suppressed. For all other products, the statistic is suppressed if the range of the values is too narrow or if all values are less than, in absolute value, to a specified threshold.

Users should be aware of possible data distortions when they are aggregating these rounded data. Imprecisions as a result of rounding tend to cancel each other out when data cells are re-aggregated. However, users can minimize these distortions by using, whenever possible, the appropriate subtotals when aggregating.

For those requiring maximum precision, the option exists to use custom tabulations. With custom products, aggregation is done using individual census database records. Random rounding occurs only after the data cells have been aggregated, thus minimizing any distortion.

In addition to random rounding, **area suppression** has been adopted to further protect the confidentiality of individual responses.

Area suppression is the deletion of all characteristic data for geographic areas with populations below a specified size. The extent to which data are suppressed depends upon the following factors:

- If the data are tabulated from the 100% database, they are suppressed if the total population in the area is less than 40.
- If the data are tabulated from the 20% sample database, they are suppressed if the total non-institutional population in the area from either the 100% or 20% database is less than 40.

There are some exceptions to these rules:

- Income distributions and related statistics are suppressed if the population in the area, excluding institutional residents, is less than 250 from either the 100% or the 20% database, or if the number of private households is less than 40 from the 20% database.
- Place-of-work distributions and related statistics are suppressed if the total number of employed persons in the area is less than 40, according to the sample database. If the data also include an income distribution, the threshold is raised to 250, again according to the sample database.
- Tabulations covering both place of work and place of residence along with related statistics are suppressed, if the total number of employed persons in the area is less than 40 according to the sample database, or if the area's total population, excluding institutional residents, according to either the 100% or the sample database, is less than 40. If the tabulations also include an income distribution, the threshold is raised to 250 in all cases and the tabulations are suppressed if the number of private dwellings in the place of residence area is less than 40.
- Same-sex couples distributions and related statistics are suppressed if the population in private households in the area is less than 5,000, according to the 20% sample database.
- If the data are tabulated from the 100% database and refer to six-character postal codes or to groups of either blocks or block-faces, they are suppressed if the total population in the area is less than 100.
- If the data are tabulated from the 20% sample database and refer to six-character postal codes or to groups of either blocks or block-faces, they are suppressed if the total non-institutional population in the area from either the 100% or 20% database is less than 100.
- If the data refer to groups of either blocks or block-faces, and cover place of work, they are suppressed if the total number of employed persons in the area is less than 100, according to the sample database.
- If the data refer to groups of either blocks or block-faces, and cover both place of work and place of residence, they are suppressed if the total number of employed persons in the area is less than 100, according to the sample database, or if the area's total population, excluding institutional residents, according to either 100% or the sample database, is less than 100.

In all cases, suppressed data are included in the appropriate higher aggregate subtotals and totals.

The suppression technique is being implemented for all products involving subprovincial data (i.e. Profile series, basic cross-tabulations, semi-custom and custom data products) collected on a 100% or 20% sample basis.

For further information on the quality of census data, contact the Social Survey Methods Division at Statistics Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K1A 0T6, or by calling (613) 951-4783.

Appendix C. Comparison of Ethnic Origins Collected in 2001, 1996 and 1991

New – November 4, 2002

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
British Isles Origins		
English	English	English
Irish	Irish	Irish
Scottish	Scottish	Scottish
Welsh	Welsh	Welsh
British, n.i.e.	British, n.i.e.	Other British, n.i.e.
French Origins		
Acadian	Acadian	Acadian
French	French	French
Aboriginal Origins		
Inuit	Inuit	Inuit
Métis	Métis	Métis
North American Indian	North American Indian	North American Indian
North American Origins		
American	American	American
Canadian	Canadian	Canadian
Newfoundlander	Canadian	Canadian
Québécois	Québécois	Québécois
Other provincial or regional groups	Canadian	Canadian
Caribbean Origins		
Antiguan	Antiguan	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Bahamian	Bahamian	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Barbadian	Barbadian	Barbadian
Bermudan	Bermudan	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Carib	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Cuban	Cuban	Cuban
Dominican, n.o.s.	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Grenadian	Grenadian	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Guyanese	Guyanese	Guyanese
Haitian	Haitian	Haitian
Jamaican	Jamaican	Jamaican
Kittitian/Nevisian	Kittitian/Nevisian	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Martinique	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Puerto Rican	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
St. Lucian	St. Lucian	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Trinidadian/Tobagonian	Trinidadian/Tobagonian	Trinidadian/Tobagonian
Vincentian/Grenadinian	Vincentian/Grenadinian	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
West Indian	West Indian	West Indian, n.i.e.
Caribbean, n.i.e.	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Latin/Central/South American Origins		
Argentinian	Argentinian	Argentinian
Belizean	Caribbean, n.i.e.	Other Caribbean, n.i.e.
Bolivian	Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Brazilian	Brazilian	Brazilian
Central/South American Indian	Central/South American Indian	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Chilean	Chilean	Chilean
Colombian	Colombian	Colombian
Costa Rican	Costa Rican	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Ecuadorian	Ecuadorian	Ecuadorian
Guatemalan	Guatemalan	Guatemalan
Hispanic	Hispanic	Hispanic
Honduran	Honduran	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Maya	Central/South American Indian	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Mexican	Mexican	Mexican
Nicaraguan	Nicaraguan	Nicaraguan
Panamanian	Panamanian	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Paraguayan	Paraguayan	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Peruvian	Peruvian	Peruvian
Salvadorean	Salvadorean	Salvadorean
Uruguayan	Uruguayan	Uruguayan
Venezuelan	Venezuelan	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.	Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.	Other Latin/Central/South American, n.i.e.
European Origins		
Western European Origins		
Austrian	Austrian	Austrian
Belgian	Belgian	Belgian
Dutch (Netherlands)	Dutch (Netherlands)	Dutch (Netherlands)
Flemish	Flemish	Flemish
Frisian	Frisian	Dutch (Netherlands)
German	German	German
Luxembourger	Luxembourger	Luxembourg
Swiss	Swiss	Swiss
Northern European Origins		
Danish	Danish	Danish
Finnish	Finnish	Finnish
Icelandic	Icelandic	Icelandic
Norwegian	Norwegian	Norwegian
Swedish	Swedish	Swedish
Scandinavian, n.i.e.	Scandinavian, n.i.e.	Scandinavian, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Eastern European Origins		
Byelorussian	Byelorussian	Byelorussian
Czech	Czech	Czech
Czechoslovakian	Czechoslovakian	Czechoslovakian
Estonian	Estonian	Estonian
Hungarian (Magyar)	Hungarian (Magyar)	Hungarian (Magyar)
Latvian	Latvian	Latvian
Lithuanian	Lithuanian	Lithuanian
Polish	Polish	Polish
Romanian	Romanian	Romanian
Russian	Russian	Russian
Slovak	Slovak	Slovak
Ukrainian	Ukrainian	Ukrainian
Southern European Origins		
Albanian	Albanian	Albanian
Bosnian	Bosnian	Yugoslav, n.i.e.
Bulgarian	Bulgarian	Bulgar
Croatian	Croatian	Croatian
Cypriot	Cypriot	Cypriot
Greek	Greek	Greek
Italian	Italian	Italian
Kosovar	Albanian	Albanian
Macedonian	Macedonian	Macedonian
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Montenegrin	Yugoslav, n.i.e.	Yugoslav, n.i.e.
Portuguese	Portuguese	Portuguese
Serbian	Serbian	Serbian
Sicilian	Italian	Italian
Slovenian	Slovenian	Slovenian
Spanish	Spanish	Spanish
Yugoslav, n.i.e.	Yugoslav, n.i.e.	Yugoslav, n.i.e.
Other European Origins		
Basque	Basque	Basque
Gypsy (Roma)	Gypsy (Roma)	Other European, n.i.e.
Jewish	Jewish	Jewish
Slav (European)	Slav (European)	Other European, n.i.e.
European, n.i.e.	European, n.i.e.	Other European, n.i.e.
African Origins		
Afrikaner	South African	Other African, n.i.e.
Akan	Ghanaian	Ghanaian
Angolan	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Ashanti	Ghanaian	Ghanaian
Black	Black	Black
Burundian	Burundian	African (Black), n.i.e.
Cameroonian	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Congolese, n.o.s.	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
East African	East African	Other African, n.i.e.
Eritrean	Eritrean	Ethiopian
Ethiopian	Ethiopian	Ethiopian

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Ghanaian	Ghanaian	Ghanaian
Guinean, n.o.s.	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Ibo	Nigerian	African (Black), n.i.e.
Ivoirean	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Kenyan	Kenyan	African (Black), n.i.e.
Malagasy	Other African, n.i.e.	Other African, n.i.e.
Malian	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Mauritian	Mauritian	Other African, n.i.e.
Nigerian	Nigerian	Other African, n.i.e.
Oromo	Ethiopian	Ethiopian
Rwandan	Rwandan	Other African, n.i.e.
Senegalese	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Seychellois	Other African, n.i.e.	Other African, n.i.e.
Sierra Leonean	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Somali	Somali	Somali
South African	South African	Other African, n.i.e.
Sudanese	Sudanese	African (Black), n.i.e.
Tanzanian	Tanzanian	African (Black), n.i.e.
Togolese	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
Ugandan	Ugandan	African (Black), n.i.e.
Yoruba	Nigerian	African (Black), n.i.e.
Zairian	Zairian	African (Black), n.i.e.
Zimbabwean	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.	African (Black), n.i.e.
African, n.i.e.	Other African, n.i.e.	Other African, n.i.e.
Arab Origins		
Algerian	Algerian	Maghrebi, n.i.e.
Berber	Berber	Maghrebi, n.i.e.
Egyptian	Egyptian	Egyptian
Iraqi	Iraqi	Iraqi
Jordanian	Jordanian	Arab, n.i.e.
Kuwaiti	Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.
Lebanese	Lebanese	Lebanese
Libyan	Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.
Moroccan	Moroccan	Moroccan
Palestinian	Palestinian	Palestinian
Saudi Arabian	Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.
Syrian	Syrian	Syrian
Tunisian	Tunisian	Maghrebi, n.i.e.
Yemeni	Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.
Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.	Arab, n.i.e.
Maghrebi, n.i.e.	Maghrebi, n.i.e.	Maghrebi, n.i.e.

2001 Classification**1996 Classification****1991 Classification****West Asian Origins**

Afghan

Armenian

Assyrian

Azerbaijani

Georgian

Iranian

Israeli

Kurd

Pashtun

Tartar

Turk

West Asian, n.i.e.

Afghan

Armenian

Arab, n.i.e.

West Asian, n.i.e.

Russian

Iranian

Israeli

Kurd

Afghan

Afghan

Turk

West Asian, n.i.e.

Afghan

Armenian

Arab, n.i.e.

West Asian, n.i.e.

Russian

Iranian

Israeli

Kurdish

Afghan

Afghan

Turk

West Asian, n.i.e.

South Asian Origins

Bangladeshi

Bengali

East Indian

Goan

Gujarati

Kashmiri

Pakistani

Punjabi

Nepali

Sinhalese

Sri Lankan

Tamil

South Asian, n.i.e.

Bangladeshi

Bengali

East Indian

Goan

Gujarati

South Asian, n.i.e.

Pakistani

Punjabi

South Asian, n.i.e.

Sinhalese

Sri Lankan

Tamil

South Asian, n.i.e.

Bangladeshi, n.i.e.

Bengali

East Indian, n.i.e.

East Indian, n.i.e.

East Indian, n.i.e.

East Indian, n.i.e.

Pakistani, n.i.e.

Punjabi

East Indian, n.i.e.

Sinhalese

Sri Lankan, n.i.e.

Tamil

East Indian, n.i.e.

East and Southeast Asian Origins

Burmese

Cambodian

Chinese

Filipino

Hmong

Indonesian

Japanese

Khmer

Korean

Laotian

Malaysian

Mongolian

Taiwanese

Thai

Tibetan

Vietnamese

Asian, n.o.s.

East/Southeast Asian, n.i.e.

Burmese

Cambodian

Chinese

Filipino

East/Southeast Asian, n.i.e.

Indonesian

Japanese

Cambodian

Korean

Laotian

Malay

Mongolian

Taiwanese

Thai

Tibetan

Vietnamese

Asian, n.i.e.

East/Southeast Asian, n.i.e.

Burmese

Cambodian

Chinese

Filipino

Other Asian, n.i.e.

Indonesian

Japanese

Other Asian, n.i.e.

Korean

Laotian

Malay

Other Asian, n.i.e.

Chinese

Thai

Other Asian, n.i.e.

Vietnamese

Other Asian, n.i.e.

Other Asian, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Oceania Origins		
Australian	Australian	Australian/New Zealander
Fijian	Fijian	Fijian
Hawaiian	Polynesian	Polynesian
Maori	Polynesian	Polynesian
Polynesian	Polynesian	Polynesian
New Zealander	New Zealander	Australian/New Zealander
Pacific Islander, n.i.e.	Pacific Islander, n.i.e. ¹	

Note: n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

Endnote

¹ As a result of low response counts, "Pacific Islander, n.i.e." was not available on the 1991 Census database or in published output. Pacific Islander data in 1991 were included with "Australian/New Zealander" if the place of birth was Australia or New Zealand, or "Polynesian" if the place of birth was French Polynesia, or "Fijian" for other places of birth.

Appendix D. Historical Comparability of Journey to Work Data

Modified on June 2, 2004

A. Conceptual Changes

Journey to work data are generally comparable from 1971, 1981, 1991, 1996 and 2001. However, there have been some changes between censuses.

1. Changes to the Place of Work Question

The place of work question was included in almost every census since 1971 in almost the same format. Nonetheless, some changes were made over the years.

In 1991, a write-in box for postal code responses was added. Three changes were implemented for 1996. The “No fixed workplace address” response category was made explicit. The “County” write-in box was removed after investigation indicated that most persons did not respond and many of those who did respond confused “county” with “country” and wrote “Canada” as a response. Clearer instructions, with an example of a complete civic address response, were included to assist respondents in providing a complete workplace address.

The 2001 Place of Work question was changed slightly from 1996 to include the phrase “most of the time”. The question reads “At what address did this person usually work most of the time?”

2. No Fixed Workplace Address

The “No fixed workplace address” category did not exist in 1971. Persons who had no usual place of work address, and who did not report to a headquarters or depot at the beginning of each shift, were instructed to write the address where they most often worked in the job described. Persons having no fixed workplace address were included with persons who worked at a usual place or in the “Not stated” category. In 1971, the “Not stated” category accounted for 9.2% of the respondents, many of whom worked in the construction or primary industries – industries which typically account for much of the “No fixed workplace” category.

In 1981 and 1991, persons who had no fixed workplace address, and who did not report to a headquarters or depot at the beginning of each shift, were instructed to write “No usual place of work” in the address write-in boxes. These instructions did not appear on the questionnaire, but were included in the Census Guide. Persons with “no usual place of work” were sometimes coded to a workplace location.

In 1996, a “No fixed workplace address” response category was explicitly added to the place of work question, thereby reducing response burden. Persons with “no fixed workplace” do not have a workplace location coded.

B. Processing Changes

1. Workplace Coding

In 2001, the workplace location of persons working in census metropolitan areas or census agglomerations was coded to a block-face, block or dissemination area representative point. The

workplace location of persons working outside census metropolitan areas and census agglomerations was **coded** to a census subdivision representative point.

In 1996 the situation was similar to that of 2001. The workplace location of persons working in most urban areas was coded to a block-face, street intersection or enumeration area representative point. The workplace location of persons working in rural areas and some urban areas was **coded** to census subdivision representative points.

Prior to 1996, workplace location data were first coded to the census subdivision and then were coded to the census tract in separate coding operations, therefore the census subdivision and census tract data may give different results.

In 1991 the census tract level was coded for 10% of residents of Ontario and part of west Quebec. In 1981 the census tract level was coded for workplaces within census tracts that were covered by street indexes. In 1971 the census tract level was coded for a 1/9 sample of residents of census divisions located within a 50 mile radius of tracted CMAs or CAs and who worked within a tracted CMA or CA.

2. Edit and Imputation (E & I)

A significant change occurred in the edit and imputation of 1981 data. In 1971, non-responses to the place of work question were reported as "Not stated". However, in 1981, the "Not stated" category was dropped and non-responses to the place of work question were changed to a specific response through imputation. Imputation was performed on both the Place of Work Status and Workplace Location (census subdivision level) variables. However, census tract data were not imputed. Since the 1991 Census, location data have been imputed for all missing workplace geographies.

3. Calculation of Commuting Distance

In 1971, commuting distance was calculated to the nearest half mile for workplace census subdivisions and for workplace census tracts. The distance was calculated between the residential enumeration area representative point and the workplace census subdivision and census tract representative points. Values of 251 miles or more were all stored as 251 miles. Commuting distance data are not available from the 1981 or 1991 censuses.

In 1996, the distance was calculated in kilometres, to the nearest 0.1km, between the residential enumeration area representative point and the workplace location representative point. In 2001, the distances was calculated in kilometres, to the nearest 0.1km, between the residential block representative point and the workplace location representative point. Values of 200.1 kilometres or more are all stored as 201.0 kilometres.

C. Changes in Geographic Framework

The comparability of workplace location data between censuses is affected by changes in the census subdivision, census metropolitan area, census agglomeration and census tract boundaries. Because of the large number of geographic areas and possible boundary changes between censuses, data users are encouraged to exercise caution when comparing workplace location data between censuses.

Municipal restructuring in many provinces has resulted in a number of changes at the census subdivision level. There were 910 dissolutions recorded between 1996 and 2001. In the same period, 519 incorporations were recorded, with the majority being newly amalgamated municipalities.

Appendix E. Comparability of Labour Force Activity Data With Those of Previous Censuses (1971-2001) and With the Labour Force Survey

Historical Census Comparability

Census **Labour Force Activity** concepts have remained fairly consistent since 1971. However, some changes in the questions asked, in processing, as well as some minor conceptual changes, have been introduced throughout the past six censuses. These differences need to be taken into consideration whenever data from two or more census years are being compared. Derived variables which take into account as many of these differences as possible are available and they should be used in doing historical comparisons. For more information, refer to the definition Labour Market Activities: Historical Labour Force Activity (based on the 1971 Concepts) – (in Reference Week).

Population

For all census years, the labour force activity questions were asked of the population 15 years of age and over. Since 1981, **institutional residents** have not been asked the labour force questions and are therefore excluded from this population. In 1976 and 1971, even though the institutional residents were asked the labour force questions, they were included in the “Not in the labour force” category.

Employed

In 1971, the “Employed” group consisted of three categories: persons who worked in the reference week for pay or in self-employment, persons with a job but not at work during the reference week, and persons who worked in the reference week without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. Data were obtained from three separate questions.

In 1971 also, female farm labourers who were unpaid family workers and who “helped without pay” for less than 20 hours a week were excluded from the “Employed” category and classified as “Not in the labour force”. As well, in 1971, persons who indicated that they were both “absent from job” and “looking for work” were considered unemployed.

In 1976, the “Employed” group was derived from similar questions as in 1971. However, female farm labourers who worked less than 20 hours of unpaid work a week were classified as employed. In addition, persons who were both “looking for work” and “absent from work” were included in the “Employed” group. Persons absent without pay on training courses or on educational leave were to mark “Yes, absent” if the job was being held for their return.

In 1981, only one question on hours worked in the reference week was asked. Persons were to report both hours worked for pay or in self-employment and hours worked without pay in a family farm, business or professional practice. A combined question on “temporary lay-off and absent from work” was asked for the first time in 1981. Persons that were absent from work because of training courses had to be paid to be considered as absent from work. No changes were made to the “Employed” category in either 1986, 1991, 1996 or 2001.

Unemployed

In 1971, the “Unemployed” category consisted of two groups: persons who looked for work in the reference week and persons who were on temporary lay-off during the reference week. According to the *1971 Census Guide*, respondents were to mark “Yes” to the “Looking for work” question if they would have looked for work, but did not because they were temporarily ill or believed that no work was available in the community. The Guide also instructed respondents to include themselves on lay-off only if they had been in that situation for 30 days or less.

In 1976, two new questions were added to the questionnaire in order to determine unemployment status. The first was a question on availability for work in the reference week. This question provided for “Yes” or “No” responses only. Instructions in the Guide requested persons still in school, those who already had a job, were temporarily ill or who had personal or family responsibilities, to consider themselves unavailable. Persons unavailable for work were classified as “Not in the labour force”. The “Availability” question was only asked of persons who looked for work in the reference week. The second new question asked respondents if they had a new job to start at a future date. In addition to these new questions, a new processing restriction was applied. Persons on lay-off or with a new job to start, who were in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school at any time since September 1975, were considered unavailable for work. Therefore, in 1976, persons were considered unemployed if they were “on lay-off” or had a “new job to start in the future” and were not in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school. Persons who looked for work in the reference week and were available to work were also included in the “Unemployed”.

In 1981, the reference period for the “Looking for work” question was increased to the past four weeks instead of the reference week. The “Availability” question was expanded to include more detailed response categories: already had a job; temporary illness or disability; personal or family responsibilities; going to school; or other reasons. Only persons who marked “going to school” or “other reasons” were considered unavailable for work. The “New job to start at a future date” question was reworded to specify that the job was to start within four weeks of the reference week. Persons on temporary lay-off were identified by a question which combined information on lay-off and absences from a job. The reference period for lay-off was extended to 26 weeks. As in 1976, persons on lay-off or with a new job to start were considered unavailable if they had been in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school at any time since September 1980. Persons who looked for work and who responded “going to school” or “other reasons” were considered unavailable regardless of whether they were on lay-off or had a new job to start.

In 1986, the reference period for temporary lay-off was removed and the phrase “from a job to which the person expects to return” was added to the questionnaire. The 1986 questionnaire did not include a question on school attendance. It was therefore not possible to apply the school attendance criterion to persons on lay-off or with a new job to start.

In 1991, 1996 and 2001, the questions asked to determine unemployment status were the same as those asked in 1986. In addition, since 1991, a “School attendance” question was included on the questionnaire. Persons on temporary lay-off or with a new job to start who did not look for work were available for work, and therefore “Unemployed”, if they were not in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school at any time since September of the year preceding the census. Persons on temporary lay-off or with a new job to start who looked for full-time work were available for work, and therefore “Unemployed”, if they did not respond “going to school” or “other reasons” to the “Availability” question, and if they were not in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school at any time since September of the year preceding the census. Persons on temporary lay-off or with a new job to start who looked for part-time work were available for work, and therefore “Unemployed”, if they did not respond “going to school” or “other reasons” to the “Availability” question.

The processing of unemployment data in 1991, in 1996 and in 2001 was similar to that of 1981. There was, however, a change introduced for students in full-time attendance at elementary or secondary school at any time since the previous September. In 1991, 1996 and 2001, these persons were considered unavailable for work if they had looked for full-time work in the past four weeks.

Not in the Labour Force

The “Not in the labour force” category is a residual group. Persons who are not “Employed” or “Unemployed” fall into this category provided they are in the population for which labour force activity is relevant. The main differences for this group are the inclusion of **institutional residents** in 1976 and 1971 and the inclusion of persons not in the “Unemployed” category in each of the census years between 1976 and 2001, because they were considered unavailable for work. In 1971, female farm labourers who did less than 20 hours of unpaid work were classified as “Not in the labour force”.

Comparability With the Labour Force Survey

The census and the Labour Force Survey (LFS) collect data on the labour market activity of persons aged 15 and over, excluding institutional residents, during the week preceding the date of collection. On the basis of their activities, people are placed in one of the following categories: employed, unemployed and not in the labour force. Nevertheless, even though both instruments measure labour market activity, there are many fundamental differences between them.

Some of those differences are as follows:

- enumeration method;
- coverage;
- sample size;
- reference period;
- number of questions and their content;
- method used to derive the labour force categories.

1. Enumeration Method

In the census, the method used for most respondents is self-enumeration; that is, people complete the questionnaire themselves. The LFS is administered by experienced interviewers using the computer-assisted interviewing technique.

2. Coverage

The census provides complete coverage of the Canadian population, including the households of diplomatic personnel and other Canadian government employees living outside Canada. The census also includes non-permanent residents (refugee claimants and holders of student authorizations, employment authorizations and Minister’s permits).

The LFS includes non-permanent residents, but excludes persons living in the Northwest Territories, the Yukon Territory and Nunavut, persons living on Indian reserves, full-time members of the Armed Forces and institutional residents. Households of diplomatic personnel and other Canadian government employees outside Canada are also excluded.

3. Sample Size

In most parts of Canada, every fifth household receives the full census questionnaire (Form 2B), which contains the questions from which labour force activity data are derived. On Indian reserves and in northern and remote areas, all households receive the full questionnaire to improve the precision of the data on populations that are considered too small to be sampled.

The LFS is based on a sample of about 52,000 households in Canada.

4. Reference Period

The reference period for the census was the week of Sunday, May 6 to Saturday, May 12, 2001. The reference period for the May 2001 Labour Force Survey was the week of Sunday, May 13 to Saturday, May 19.

5. Number of Questions and Their Content

The census questionnaire includes five questions on labour market activities: number of hours worked for pay or in self-employment; temporary lay-off or absence from job or business; existence of definite arrangements to start a new job within the next four weeks; search for paid work (full-time or part-time) during the past four weeks; and availability to start a job during the last week if one had been available. There are three possible sequences of questions depending on the respondent's situation. For example, a respondent who reports having worked one or more hours during the reference week is not required to answer the other four questions.

The LFS contains some 20 questions, and there are several different sequences in which they can be asked, in whole or in part. The interview is computer-assisted, which makes it possible to tailor the sequence and content of the questions to the respondent. The method also provides the opportunity to clarify and correct responses as the interview progresses.

6. Method Used to Derive the Labour Force Categories

There are a number of differences in the method used to derive the labour force categories. Two are described below:

(a) Employed Self-employed Workers

In the census, self-employed workers who have no work during reference week and do not report working any hours or being absent from work would be classified as "Unemployed" or "Not in the labour force", depending on their responses to the other questions.

In the LFS, the same self-employed workers may be coded as "Employed" if they attributed their absence to not having any work during the reference week. The census does not ask the reason for their absence.

(b) Persons on Lay-off

In both the census and the LFS, persons on lay-off are classified as “Unemployed” if they are available for work, or as “Not in the labour force” if they are not available for work during the reference week. However, the concepts of “lay-off” and “availability for work” are not the same in the two surveys.

According to the LFS, persons on lay-off have been temporarily released by their employers, because of business conditions. They must have a definite date to return to work, or an indication that they will be recalled in the future. The lay-off period must not exceed one year, and seasonal workers are not included in this category. According to the census, persons on lay-off expect to return to their jobs. No limit is specified for returning to work or for the duration of the lay-off. Seasonal workers are not explicitly excluded from this category.

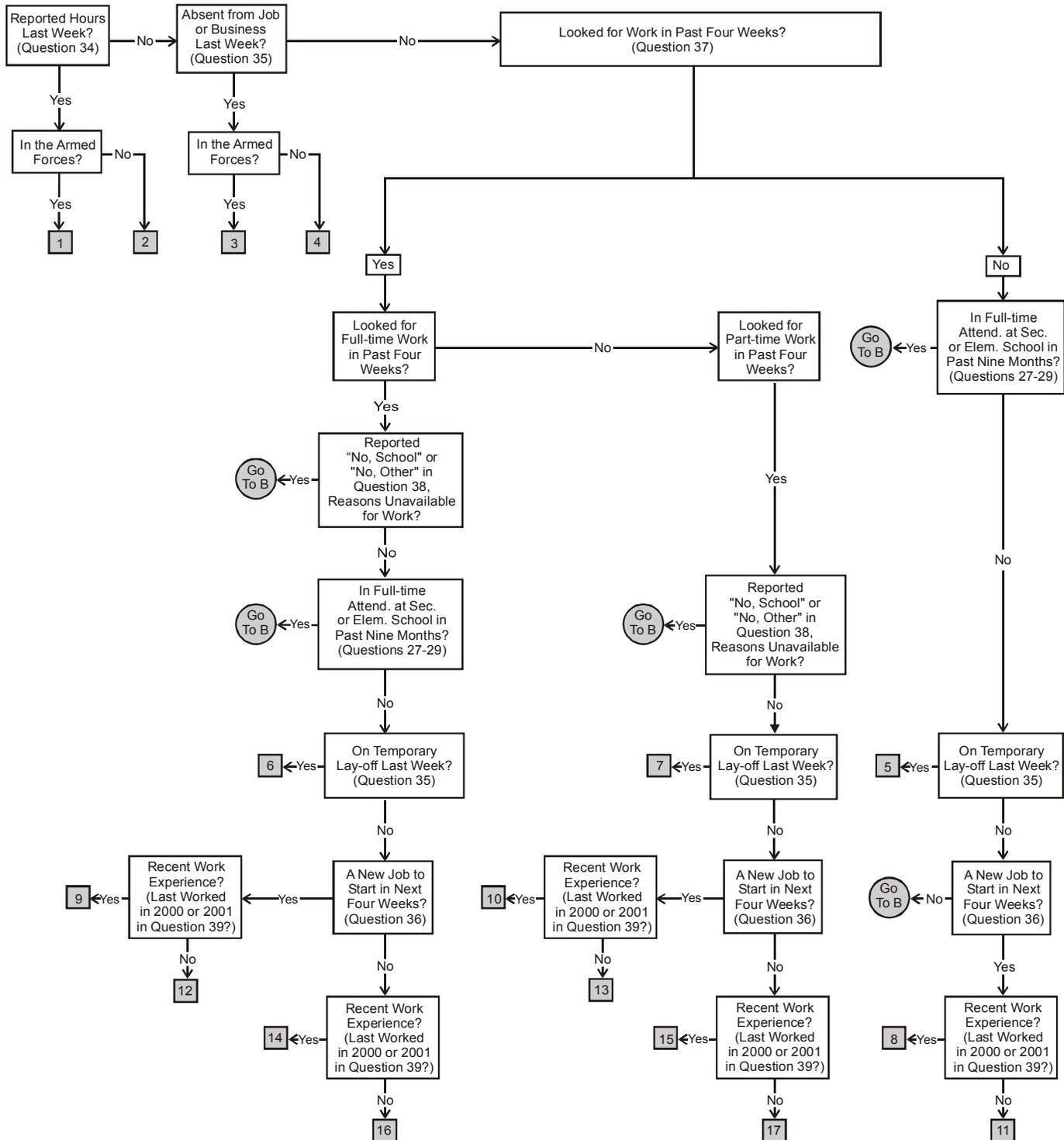
In the LFS, persons on lay-off are available for work during the week preceding the survey if they reported being available or if they reported the reason for their unavailability as not “going to school” and not “other reasons”. Whether they are looking for a job or not is not considered.

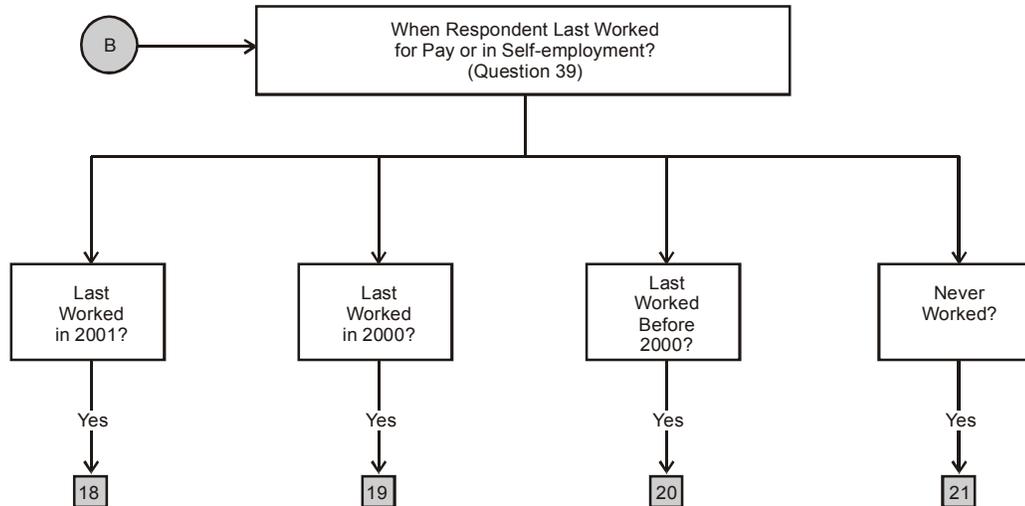
According to the census, the variables used to determine whether someone on temporary lay-off is available for work during the week preceding Census Day depend on whether the person was not looking for work, was looking for a full-time job, or was looking for a part-time job.

For more information about the LFS, please consult the *Guide to the Labour Force Survey*, Catalogue No. 71-543. For further information about census data on labour force activity, please contact the census labour market analysts.

Appendix F. Labour Force Activity Derivation Chart

This chart demonstrates how the responses to the labour force questions are used to classify persons 15 years and over (excluding institutional residents) according to their labour force activity status in the week prior to Census Day.





In total, the population 15 years of age and over (excluding institutional residents) is divided into 21 categories, as outlined below:

Employed

1. Worked in reference week – Armed Forces
2. Worked in reference week – Civilian
3. Absent from job in reference week – Armed Forces
4. Absent from job or business in reference week – Civilian

Unemployed

5. Experienced – On temporary lay-off – Did not look for paid work
6. Experienced – On temporary lay-off – Looked for full-time paid work
7. Experienced – On temporary lay-off – Looked for part-time paid work
8. Experienced – New job to start – Did not look for paid work
9. Experienced – New job to start – Looked for full-time paid work
10. Experienced – New job to start – Looked for part-time paid work
11. Inexperienced – New job to start – Did not look for paid work
12. Inexperienced – New job to start – Looked for full-time paid work
13. Inexperienced – New job to start – Looked for part-time paid work
14. Experienced – Looked for work – Looked for full-time paid work
15. Experienced – Looked for work – Looked for part-time paid work
16. Inexperienced – Looked for work – Looked for full-time paid work
17. Inexperienced – Looked for work – Looked for part-time paid work

Not in the labour force

18. Last worked in 2001
19. Last worked in 2000
20. Last worked before 2000
21. Never worked

Appendix G. Mother Tongue, Home Language and Language of Work: Classifications from 2001, 1996 and 1991

Changes have been made in the language classification used in our products. In this appendix, the 2001, 1996 and 1991 classifications are compared.

Please note that in the second part of the questions on Home Language and Language of Work, the respondent had the option of marking the "No" circle to indicate that there was no other language used on a regular basis.

The individual categories used in 2001 do not always match those used in 1996 and 1991. In most cases, however, the corresponding number can be obtained by adding all members of the language family.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
English	English	English
French	French	French
Non-official languages	Non-official languages	Non-official languages
Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages
Attikamekw ¹	Attikamek	Not available
Blackfoot	Blackfoot	Blackfoot
Cree	Cree	Cree
Malecite	Malecite	Malecite
Micmac	Micmac	Micmac
Montagnais-Naskapi	Montagnais-Naskapi	Montagnais-Naskapi
Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree	Not available
Ojibway	Ojibway	Ojibway
Algonquin	Algonquin	Not available
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages (Dene)
Carrier	Carrier	Carrier
Chilcotin	Chilcotin	Chilcotin
Chipewyan	Chipewyan	Chipewyan
Dene	Dene	Not available
Dogrib	Dogrib	Dogrib
Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)
North Slave (Hare)	North Slave (Hare)	North Slave (Hare)
South Slave	South Slave	South Slave
Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.*

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Haida	Haida	Haida
Iroquoian languages Mohawk Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages Mohawk Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages Mohawk Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai	Kutenai	Kutenai
Salish languages Shuswap Thompson (Ntlakapamux) Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages Shuswap Thompson (Ntlakapamux) Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages Not available Not available Not available
Siouan languages Dakota/Sioux	Siouan languages Dakota/Sioux	Not available Dakota
Tlingit	Tlingit	Tlingit
Tsimshian languages Gitksan Nishga Tsimshian	Tsimshian languages Gitksan Nishga Tsimshian	Not available Not available Not available Tsimshian*
Wakashan languages Nootka Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages Nootka Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages Not available Not available
Inuktitut (Eskimo)	Inuktitut (Eskimo)	Inuktitut
Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Amerindian languages, n.i.e.
Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.
Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e.	Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian	Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian	Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian
Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish	Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish	Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish
Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.
Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian	Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian	Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian
Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian	Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian	Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian
Greek Armenian	Greek Armenian	Greek Armenian
Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Semitic languages	Semitic languages	Semitic languages
Amharic	Amharic	Not available
Arabic	Arabic	Arabic
Hebrew	Hebrew	Hebrew
Maltese	Maltese	Maltese
Somali	Somali	Not available
Tigringa	Tigringa	Not available
Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages, n.i.e. *
Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages	Indo-Iranian languages
Not available	Not available	Baluchi
Bengali	Bengali	Bengali
Gujarati	Gujarati	Gujarati
Hindi	Hindi	Hindi
Konkani	Konkani	Not available
Kurdish	Kurdish	Kurdish
Marathi	Marathi	Marathi
Pashto	Pashto	Pashto
Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)	Persian (Farsi)
Punjabi	Punjabi	Punjabi
Sindhi	Sindhi	Not available
Sinhalese	Sinhalese	Sinhalese
Urdu	Urdu	Urdu
Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.*
Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages	Dravidian languages
Kannada	Kannada	Not available
Malayalam	Malayalam	Malayalam
Tamil	Tamil	Tamil
Telugu	Telugu	Telugu
Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Korean	Korean	Korean
Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages	Sino-Tibetan languages
Chinese	Chinese	Chinese
Cantonese	Not available	Not available
Mandarin	Not available	Not available
Hakka	Not available	Not available
Chinese, n.o.s. ²	Not available	Not available
Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.	Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.	Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Tai languages Lao Thai	Tai languages Lao Thai	Tai languages Lao Thai
Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Malayo-Polynesian languages Malay-Bahasa Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages Malay-Bahasa Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages Indonesian (Malay) Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.
Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Twi Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Twi Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Not available Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.*
African languages, n.i.e.	African languages, n.i.e.	African languages, n.i.e.
Creoles	Creoles	Creoles
Other languages	Other languages	Other languages

* Indicates a major change to the languages and/or dialects making up a specific category.

Note: n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

Endnotes

¹ Spelling change only: content remains the same as in 1996.

² Anyone responding "Chinese", with no other precision, along with other dialects, n.o.s.

Appendix H. Knowledge of Non-official Languages: Classifications from 2001, 1996 and 1991

This appendix presents the non-official language classifications used for the 2001, 1996 and 1991 Censuses. The classification, with the exception of English, French and non-verbal languages, is the same as the one used in establishing mother tongue, home language and language of work.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Non-official languages	Non-official languages	Non-official languages
Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages	Aboriginal languages
Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages	Algonquian languages
Attikamekw ¹	Attikamek	Not available
Blackfoot	Blackfoot	Blackfoot
Cree	Cree	Cree
Malecite	Malecite	Malecite
Micmac	Micmac	Micmac
Montagnais-Naskapi	Montagnais-Naskapi	Montagnais-Naskapi
Oji-Cree	Oji-Cree	Not available
Ojibway	Ojibway	Ojibway
Algonquin	Algonquin	Not available
Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.	Algonquian languages, n.i.e.
Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages	Athapaskan languages (Dene)
Carrier	Carrier	Carrier
Chilcotin	Chilcotin	Chilcotin
Chipewyan	Chipewyan	Chipewyan
Dene	Dene	Not available
Dogrib	Dogrib	Dogrib
Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)	Kutchin-Gwich'in (Loucheux)
North Slave (Hare)	North Slave (Hare)	North Slave (Hare)
South Slave	South Slave	South Slave
Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.	Athapaskan languages, n.i.e.*
Haida	Haida	Haida
Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages	Iroquoian languages
Mohawk	Mohawk	Mohawk
Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.	Iroquoian languages, n.i.e.
Kutenai	Kutenai	Kutenai

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Salish languages Shuswap Thompson (Ntlakapamux) Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages Shuswap Thompson (Ntlakapamux) Salish languages, n.i.e.	Salish languages Not available Not available Not available
Siouan languages Dakota/Sioux	Siouan languages Dakota/Sioux	Not available Dakota
Tlingit	Tlingit	Tlingit
Tsimshian languages Gitksan Nishga Tsimshian	Tsimshian languages Gitksan Nishga Tsimshian	Not available Not available Not available Tsimshian*
Wakashan languages Nootka Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages Nootka Wakashan languages, n.i.e.	Wakashan languages Not available Not available
Inuktitut (Eskimo)	Inuktitut (Eskimo)	Inuktitut
Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Aboriginal languages, n.i.e.	Amerindian languages, n.i.e.
Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.	Romance languages Italian Portuguese Romanian Spanish Romance languages, n.i.e.
Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e. Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish	Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e. Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish	Germanic languages German Yiddish Germanic languages, n.i.e. Netherlandic languages Dutch Flemish Frisian Scandinavian languages Danish Icelandic Norwegian Swedish

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.	Celtic languages Gaelic languages Welsh Celtic languages, n.i.e.
Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.	Slavic languages Bulgarian Byelorussian Croatian Czech Macedonian Polish Russian Serbian Serbo-Croatian Slovak Slovenian Ukrainian Slavic languages, n.i.e.
Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian	Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian	Baltic languages Latvian (Lettish) Lithuanian
Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian	Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian	Finno-Ugric languages Estonian Finnish Hungarian
Greek Armenian	Greek Armenian	Greek Armenian
Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.	Turkic languages Turkish Turkic languages, n.i.e.
Semitic languages Amharic Arabic Hebrew Maltese Somali Tigringa Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages Amharic Arabic Hebrew Maltese Somali Tigringa Semitic languages, n.i.e.	Semitic languages Not available Arabic Hebrew Maltese Not available Not available Semitic languages, n.i.e. *

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Indo-Iranian languages Not available Bengali Gujarati Hindi Konkani Kurdish Marathi Pashto Persian (Farsi) Punjabi Sindhi Sinhalese Urdu Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages Not available Bengali Gujarati Hindi Konkani Kurdish Marathi Pashto Persian (Farsi) Punjabi Sindhi Sinhalese Urdu Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.	Indo-Iranian languages Baluchi Bengali Gujarati Hindi Not available Kurdish Marathi Pashto Persian (Farsi) Punjabi Not available Sinhalese Urdu Indo-Iranian languages, n.i.e.*
Dravidian languages Kannada Malayalam Tamil Telugu Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages Kannada Malayalam Tamil Telugu Dravidian languages, n.i.e.	Dravidian languages Not available Malayalam Tamil Telugu Dravidian languages, n.i.e.
Japanese	Japanese	Japanese
Korean	Korean	Korean
Sino-Tibetan languages Chinese Cantonese Mandarin Hakka Chinese, n.o.s. ² Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.	Sino-Tibetan languages Chinese Not available Not available Not available Not available Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.	Sino-Tibetan languages Chinese Not available Not available Not available Not available Sino-Tibetan languages, n.i.e.
Tai languages Lao Thai	Tai languages Lao Thai	Tai languages Lao Thai
Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Austro-Asiatic languages Khmer (Cambodian) Vietnamese Austro-Asiatic languages, n.i.e.

2001 Classification	1996 Classification	1991 Classification
Malayo-Polynesian languages Malay-Bahasa Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages Malay-Bahasa Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.	Malayo-Polynesian languages Indonesian (Malay) Tagalog (Pilipino) Malayo-Polynesian languages, n.i.e.
Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Asiatic languages, n.i.e.	Asiatic languages, n.i.e.
Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Twi Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Twi Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.	Niger-Congo languages Bantu languages Swahili Bantu languages, n.i.e. Not available Niger-Congo languages, n.i.e.*
African languages, n.i.e.	African languages, n.i.e.	African languages, n.i.e.
Creoles	Creoles	Creoles
Non-verbal languages	Non-verbal languages	Non-verbal languages
Other languages	Other languages	Other languages

* Indicates a major change to the languages and/or dialects making up a specific category.

Note: n.i.e. = not included elsewhere
n.o.s. = not otherwise specified

Endnotes

¹ Spelling change only; content remains the same as in 1996.

² Anyone responding "Chinese", with no other precision, along with other dialects, n.o.s.

Appendix I. Comparability of Mobility Data With Those of Previous Censuses

The following is a brief summary of the historical comparability of census mobility data, from the “Place of residence five years ago” question. More detailed information (including references to the 1941 and 1946 Censuses) is available in two user guides and in one technical report: *A User’s Guide to the 1976 Census Data on Mobility Status*, uncatalogued working paper, May 1980; *User’s Guide to 1986 Census Data on Mobility*, November 1990; and *Mobility and Migration, 1991 Census Technical Report*, (Catalogue No. 92-326), all of which are available through Statistics Canada.

A. Conceptual Changes

The mobility status question on place of residence five years ago has not differed significantly from the five-year questions of previous censuses. Therefore, the mobility data are generally comparable from 1961 on. The question has been based on a five-year reference interval and the census subdivision (CSD) has been used as the migration-defining unit. While the five-year census mobility data are generally comparable from 1961 to 2001, there are some conceptual differences users should be aware of.

- Since 1991, the term “address” has replaced the term “dwelling”, which had been used in all previous censuses since 1961. The current term “address” is used in the context of address of usual residence, not mailing address.
- From 1976 on, the primary classification of the population was made on the basis of mobility status (movers, non-movers) while, in some of the earlier censuses, the primary classification was based on migration status (migrants, non-migrants).
- There are also changes in related factors, such as question content, which users should be aware of when analysing mobility data.

Factors Affecting Conceptual Comparability

A number of factors affect historical data comparability of mobility in relation to the conceptual framework. Some of the areas in which changes have occurred are: coverage and universe, question content and structure, and geographic framework.

1. Changes in Coverage and Universe

From 1961 on, the universe for mobility status has included the population 5 years of age and over, with exclusions, which have varied from census to census.

- (a) In 1961, mobility status was reported for the population 5 years of age and over who are members of private households, excluding residents in collective dwellings, temporary residents, overseas military and government personnel and their families, and persons located after the regular census through postal check or re-enumeration. In 1971 and 1976, the universes of population 5 years of age and over excluded Canadian residents stationed abroad in the Armed Forces or in diplomatic services.
- (b) From 1981 on, the mobility universe comprises the population 5 years of age and over residing in Canada, excluding institutional residents and Canadian military and government personnel and their families posted abroad, in households outside Canada. This is in contrast to the 1971 and 1976 data that did include institutional residents.

2. Changes in Question Content and Structure

- (a) From 1961 to 1986, the previous country of residence was not collected for respondents indicating a place of residence outside Canada five years earlier. From 1991 on, respondents who indicated that they had lived outside Canada five years ago were asked to provide the name of the country.
- (b) From 1971 on, internal migrants were asked to specify only the name of their census subdivision of residence 5 years ago, whereas in previous censuses migrants were also asked whether or not their earlier residence was a farm.
- (c) A question on the number of intermunicipal moves was asked only in 1971.
- (d) Since 1986, emphasis was placed on ensuring that Indian reserves were accurately reported in mobility categories. From 1986 on, the answer categories refer to “city, town, village, township, other municipality or Indian reserve” compared to “city, town, village, borough or municipality” in 1981 and “city, town, village, municipality” in 1971 and 1976.
- (e) Instructions in the question referring to write-ins of place names were the same between 1971 and 1976, but they were expanded in 1981 to include examples. The 1981 instruction was repeated in 1986. In 1991, the instruction was revised with new wording and examples. In 1996, the wording and examples in the instruction were again slightly modified. For 2001, they were again slightly modified.
- (f) In 1991, revisions were made to both the structure and wording of the “Place of residence five years ago” question. In addition to the rewording of instructions and the replacement of the term “dwelling” with “address”, a filter question was introduced to serve as a screen for movers and non-movers. As well, answer categories were reworded and shortened. With these revisions, the basic content is still the same as the five-year questions of previous censuses; in general, historical comparability is retained.
- (g) In 1996, although the filter question was eliminated, the concept remained the same.
- (h) In 1996, the write-in box for county was eliminated. However, at the time of automated coding, the code for county was provided.

3. Changes in Geographic Framework

- (a) The comparability of the mobility data over the censuses has been affected by both conceptual changes in geography (such as the definitions of Rural Area [RA], Urban Area [UA], farm, non-farm, Census Metropolitan Area [CMA] and Census Agglomeration [CA]) and the changes in census subdivision (CSD), census division (CD), census metropolitan area (CMA) and census agglomeration (CA) boundaries. Because the number of census geographic areas (CSDs, CMAs, etc.) and their boundaries change from census to census, the user must exercise caution when using mobility data over two or more censuses. For example, in 1986 there were 6,009 CSDs, 114 CAs and 25 CMAs compared to 5,710 CSDs, 88 CAs and 24 CMAs in 1981. The number of CSDs in 2001 is much smaller, reduced to 5,593, because of the amalgamation of cities. The changing number and boundaries of CSDs from one census to another will, to some extent, affect the comparability of the measure of “migrants” across censuses (since the volume of migrants is partly a function of the number and size of CSDs). Details of changes affecting the historical comparability of census geography from 1961 to 2001, as well as definitions and descriptions of available maps, are covered in a variety of census products.

- (b) Because of changes in geographic areas between censuses, places of residence five years ago must reflect boundaries of the census in question in order to obtain geographic consistency between current and previous place of residence. For example, when tabulating 1996 data on usual place of residence five years ago by current place of residence, all areas reflect 1996 boundaries, even when referred to as places of residence in 1991.

B. Collection and Processing Changes

The changes over censuses associated with each of the collection and processing stages have not significantly affected the comparability of mobility and migration data. However, there are some changes in processing that the user should be aware of when analysing mobility data.

- In 1991, autocoding (computerized coding) was introduced for converting write-ins of place names in the mobility question to the Standard Geographical Classification (SGC) codes. In previous censuses, write-ins were coded manually. Some of the manual coding procedures used in 1986 for resolving duplicate place names (e.g. Kingston township vs Kingston city, both in Ontario, but only “Kingston” reported) were automated during Edit and Imputation (E & I) as an extension of the autocoding system. The increased accuracy obtained with autocoding is expected to improve the quality of mobility data on out-migrants from CSDs, compared with previous censuses. The evaluation of the autocoding on the data quality has not yet been done.
- A significant change in E & I from earlier censuses occurred in 1981. Prior to 1981, non-response (partial/total) to the question on previous place of residence was reported as “Not stated”. However, for 1981, this “Not stated” category was dropped. Non-response to the question on previous place of residence was changed to a specific response via a combination of deterministic, family and hot-deck imputation assignments. This imputation was achieved using the SPIDER program, which was introduced in 1981. For the 2001 Census, the Imputation portion of the E & I processing is done using the CANAdian Census Edit and Imputation System (CANCEIS). The Edit portion is still being done using the SPIDER program.

C. Place of Residence 1 Year Ago

The question on the place of residence 1 year ago was asked in the 1991 Census for the first time. At this time, the migration-defining boundary was the province or the territory. From the 1996 Census on, the migration-defining boundary was changed to the census subdivision as in the case of the question on the place of residence 5 years ago.

Appendix J. Comparison of Places of Birth Available in 2001, 1996 and 1991

Modified on June 2, 2004

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Born in Canada		
Newfoundland and Labrador ¹	Newfoundland	Newfoundland
Prince Edward Island	Prince Edward Island	Prince Edward Island
Nova Scotia	Nova Scotia	Nova Scotia
New Brunswick	New Brunswick	New Brunswick
Quebec	Quebec	Quebec
Ontario	Ontario	Ontario
Manitoba	Manitoba	Manitoba
Saskatchewan	Saskatchewan	Saskatchewan
Alberta	Alberta	Alberta
British Columbia	British Columbia	British Columbia
Yukon Territory	Yukon Territory	Yukon
Northwest Territories	Northwest Territories	Northwest Territories
Nunavut ²	Northwest Territories	Northwest Territories
Born Outside Canada		
North America		
Greenland	Greenland	Greenland
Saint Pierre and Miquelon	Saint Pierre and Miquelon	St. Pierre and Miquelon
United States	United States	United States of America
Central America		
Belize	Belize	Belize
Costa Rica	Costa Rica	Costa Rica
El Salvador	El Salvador	El Salvador
Guatemala	Guatemala	Guatemala
Honduras	Honduras	Honduras
Mexico	Mexico	Mexico
Nicaragua	Nicaragua	Nicaragua
Panama	Panama	Panama

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Caribbean and Bermuda		
Anguilla	Anguilla	Anguilla
Antigua and Barbuda ³	Antigua and Barbuda ³	Antigua
Aruba	Aruba	Aruba
Bahamas	Bahamas	Bahamas
Barbados	Barbados	Barbados
Bermuda	Bermuda	Bermuda
Cayman Islands	Cayman Islands	Cayman Islands
Cuba	Cuba	Cuba
Dominica	Dominica	Dominica
Dominican Republic	Dominican Republic	Dominican Republic
Grenada	Grenada	Grenada
Guadeloupe	Guadeloupe	Guadeloupe
Haiti	Haiti	Haiti
Jamaica	Jamaica	Jamaica
Martinique	Martinique	Martinique
Montserrat	Montserrat	Montserrat
Netherlands Antilles	Netherlands Antilles	Netherlands Antilles
Puerto Rico	Puerto Rico	Puerto Rico
Saint Kitts and Nevis	Saint Kitts and Nevis	St. Christopher and Nevis
Saint Lucia	Saint Lucia	St. Lucia
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	St. Vincent and the Grenadines
Trinidad and Tobago	Trinidad and Tobago	Trinidad and Tobago
Turks and Caicos Islands	Turks and Caicos Islands	Turks and Caicos Islands
Virgin Islands, British	Virgin Islands, British	Virgin Islands (British)
Virgin Islands, U.S.	Virgin Islands, U.S.	Virgin Islands (U.S.A.)
South America		
Argentina	Argentina	Argentina
Bolivia	Bolivia	Bolivia
Brazil	Brazil	Brazil
Chile	Chile	Chile
Colombia	Colombia	Colombia
Ecuador	Ecuador	Ecuador
Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	Falkland Islands
French Guiana	French Guiana	French Guiana
Guyana	Guyana	Guyana
Paraguay	Paraguay	Paraguay
Peru	Peru	Peru
Suriname	Suriname	Suriname

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Uruguay Venezuela	Uruguay Venezuela	Uruguay Venezuela
Europe		
Western Europe		
Austria Belgium France Germany Liechtenstein Luxembourg Monaco Netherlands Switzerland	Austria Belgium France Germany Liechtenstein Luxembourg Monaco Netherlands Switzerland	Austria Belgium France Germany, Federated Republic of, Liechtenstein Luxembourg Monaco Netherlands Switzerland
Eastern Europe		
Bulgaria Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, Former Czech Republic Slovakia Czechoslovakia, n.i.e. ⁴ Hungary Poland Romania U.S.S.R., Former (European Component) Baltic Republics, Former Soviet Estonia Latvia Lithuania Eastern Europe Republics, Former Soviet Belarus Moldova, Republic of Russian Federation Ukraine U.S.S.R., n.i.e. ⁵	Bulgaria Czech and Slovak Federal Republic, Former Czech Republic Slovakia Czechoslovakia, n.i.e. ⁴ Hungary Poland Romania U.S.S.R., Former (European Component) Baltic Republics, Former Soviet Estonia Latvia Lithuania Eastern Europe Republics, Former Soviet Belarus Moldova, Republic of Russian Federation Ukraine U.S.S.R., n.i.e. ⁵	Bulgaria Czech and Slovak Federal Republic Czech and Slovak Federal Republic Czech and Slovak Federal Republic Czech and Slovak Federal Republic Czech and Slovak Federal Republic Hungary Poland Romania Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (U.S.S.R.) U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R. U.S.S.R.

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Northern Europe		
Ireland, Republic of (EIRE)	Ireland, Republic of (EIRE)	Republic of Ireland (EIRE)
Scandinavia	Scandinavia	Scandinavia
Denmark	Denmark	Denmark
Finland	Finland	Finland
Iceland	Iceland	Iceland
Norway	Norway	Norway
Sweden	Sweden	Sweden
United Kingdom	United Kingdom	United Kingdom
Southern Europe		
Albania	Albania	Albania
Andorra	Andorra	Andorra
Gibraltar	Gibraltar	Gibraltar
Greece	Greece	Greece
Italy	Italy	Italy
Malta	Malta	Malta
Portugal	Portugal	Portugal
San Marino	San Marino	San Marino
Spain	Spain	Spain
Vatican City State ⁶	Vatican City State ⁶	Vatican City State ⁶
Yugoslavia, Former	Yugoslavia, Former	Yugoslavia
Bosnia and Herzegovina	Bosnia and Herzegovina	Yugoslavia
Croatia	Croatia	Yugoslavia
Macedonia ⁷	Macedonia ⁷	Yugoslavia
Slovenia	Slovenia	Yugoslavia
Yugoslavia ⁸	Yugoslavia ⁸	Yugoslavia
Africa		
Western Africa		
Benin	Benin	Benin
Burkina Faso	Burkina Faso	Burkina Faso
Cape Verde	Cape Verde	Cape Verde Islands
Côte d'Ivoire ⁹	Côte d'Ivoire ⁹	Ivory Coast
Gambia	Gambia	Gambia
Ghana	Ghana	Ghana
Guinea	Guinea	Guinea
Guinea-Bissau	Guinea-Bissau	Guinea-Bissau
Liberia	Liberia	Liberia
Mali	Mali	Mali
Mauritania	Mauritania	Mauritania

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Niger	Niger	Niger
Nigeria	Nigeria	Nigeria
Saint Helena	Saint Helena	St. Helena and Ascension
Senegal	Senegal	Senegal
Sierra Leone	Sierra Leone	Sierra Leone
Togo	Togo	Togo
Eastern Africa		
Burundi	Burundi	Burundi
Comoros	Comoros	Comoros
Djibouti	Djibouti	Djibouti, Republic of
Eritrea	Eritrea	Ethiopia
Ethiopia	Ethiopia	Ethiopia
Kenya	Kenya	Kenya
Madagascar	Madagascar	Madagascar
Malawi	Malawi	Malawi
Mauritius	Mauritius	Mauritius
Mayotte	Mayotte	Mayotte
Mozambique	Mozambique	Mozambique
Réunion	Réunion	Réunion
Rwanda	Rwanda	Rwanda
Seychelles	Seychelles	Seychelles
Somalia	Somalia	Somalia
Tanzania, United Republic of	Tanzania, United Republic of	Tanzania
Uganda	Uganda	Uganda
Zambia	Zambia	Zambia
Zimbabwe	Zimbabwe	Zimbabwe
Northern Africa		
Algeria	Algeria	Algeria
Egypt	Egypt	Egypt
Libya	Libya	Libya
Morocco	Morocco	Morocco
Sudan	Sudan	Sudan
Tunisia	Tunisia	Tunisia
Western Sahara	Western Sahara	Western Sahara
Central Africa		
Angola	Angola	Angola
Cameroon	Cameroon	Cameroon
Central African Republic	Central African Republic	Central African Republic

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Chad	Chad	Chad
Congo, The Democratic Republic of ¹⁰	Zaire	Zaire
Congo, Republic of the	Congo	Congo
Equatorial Guinea	Equatorial Guinea	Equatorial Guinea
Gabon	Gabon	Gabon
Sao Tome and Principe	Sao Tome and Principe	Sao Tome and Principe
Southern Africa		
Botswana	Botswana	Botswana
Lesotho	Lesotho	Lesotho
Namibia	Namibia	Namibia
South Africa, Republic of	South Africa, Republic of	South Africa, Republic of
Swaziland	Swaziland	Swaziland
Asia		
West Central Asia and the Middle East		
Afghanistan	Afghanistan	Afghanistan
Cyprus	Cyprus	Cyprus (included in Southern Europe in 1991)
Iran ¹¹	Iran ¹¹	Iran ¹¹ (included in Middle East in 1991)
Middle East	Middle East	Middle East
Bahrain	Bahrain	Bahrain
Iraq	Iraq	Iraq
Israel	Israel	Israel
Jordan	Jordan	Jordan
Kuwait	Kuwait	Kuwait
Lebanon	Lebanon	Lebanon
Oman	Oman	Oman
Palestine/West Bank/Gaza Strip ¹²	Palestine/West Bank/Gaza Strip ¹²	Israel
Qatar	Qatar	Qatar
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabia
Syria ¹³	Syria ¹³	Syria ¹³
United Arab Emirates	United Arab Emirates	United Arab Emirates
Yemen	Yemen	Yemen, Republic of
Turkey	Turkey	Turkey
U.S.S.R., Former (Asian Component)	U.S.S.R. , Former (Asian Component)	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Central Asian Republics, Former Soviet	Central Asian Republics, Former Soviet	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Kazakhstan	Kazakhstan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Kyrgyzstan	Kyrgyzstan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Tajikistan	Tajikistan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Turkmenistan	Turkmenistan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Uzbekistan	Uzbekistan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Transcaucasian Republics, Former Soviet Armenia	Transcaucasian Republics, Former Soviet Armenia	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991) U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Azerbaijan	Azerbaijan	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)
Georgia	Georgia	U.S.S.R. (included in Eastern Europe in 1991)

Eastern Asia

China, People's Republic of, and
Special Administrative Regions¹⁴

China, People's Republic of
Hong Kong
Macau
Japan
Korea, North¹⁵
Korea, South¹⁶
Mongolia
Taiwan

China, People's Republic of
Hong Kong
Macau
Japan
Korea, North¹⁵
Korea, South¹⁶
Mongolia
Taiwan

China, People's Republic of
Hong Kong
Macau
Japan
Korea, North¹⁵
Korea, South¹⁶
Mongolia
Taiwan

South-east Asia

Brunei Darussalam
Cambodia¹⁷
East Timor¹⁸
Indonesia
Laos¹⁹
Malaysia
Myanmar²⁰
Philippines
Singapore
Thailand
Viet Nam

Brunei Darussalam
Cambodia¹⁷
Indonesia
Indonesia
Laos¹⁹
Malaysia
Myanmar²⁰
Philippines
Singapore
Thailand
Viet Nam

Brunei
Kampuchea
Indonesia
Indonesia
Laos¹⁹
Malaysia
Myanmar, Union of²⁰
Philippines
Singapore
Thailand
Viet Nam

2001 Census	1996 Census	1991 Census
Southern Asia		
Bangladesh	Bangladesh	Bangladesh
Bhutan	Bhutan	Bhutan
India	India	India
Maldives	Maldives	Maldives, Republic of
Nepal	Nepal	Nepal
Pakistan	Pakistan	Pakistan
Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka	Sri Lanka
Oceania		
American Samoa	American Samoa	American Samoa
Australia	Australia	Australia
Cook Islands	Cook Islands	Cook Islands
Fiji	Fiji	Fiji
French Polynesia	French Polynesia	French Polynesia
Guam	Guam	Guam (U.S.A.)
Kiribati	Kiribati	Kiribati
Marshall Islands	Marshall Islands	Marshall Islands
Micronesia, Federated States of	Micronesia, Federated States of,	Micronesia, Federated States of, U.S. Pacific Trust Territories
Nauru	Nauru	Nauru
New Caledonia	New Caledonia	New Caledonia
New Zealand	New Zealand	New Zealand
Palau ²¹	Palau ²¹	Belau, Republic of, U.S. Pacific Trust Territories
Papua New Guinea	Papua New Guinea	Papua New Guinea
Pitcairn	Pitcairn	Pitcairn Island
Samoa ²²	Samoa ²²	Western Samoa
Solomon Islands	Solomon Islands	Solomon Islands
Tonga	Tonga	Tonga
Tuvalu	Tuvalu	Tuvalu
Vanuatu	Vanuatu	Vanuatu
Wallis and Futuna	Wallis and Futuna	Wallis and Futuna
Other ²³	Other ²³	Other ²³

Endnotes

- ¹ Formerly known as Newfoundland.
- ² Formerly part of the Northwest Territories.
- ³ Formerly known as Antigua.
- ⁴ Includes persons who reported "Czechoslovakia".
- ⁵ Includes persons who reported "U.S.S.R.".
- ⁶ The official name is the Holy See.

-
- 7 The official name is the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia.
- 8 Includes persons who reported "Yugoslavia", whether they referred to the former or the new republic of the same name.
- 9 Also known as Ivory Coast.
- 10 Formerly known as Zaire.
- 11 The official name is Islamic Republic of Iran.
- 12 Palestine refers to pre-1948 British mandate Palestine. West Bank and Gaza Strip are the territories referred to in the Declaration of Principles, signed by Israel and the PLO in 1993. However, since responses to the census are self-reported, it is not clear that responses of "Palestine", "Gaza Strip" or "West Bank" were in reference to these territories as defined.
- 13 The official name is the Syrian Arab Republic.
- 14 Includes persons born in Hong Kong and Macau since the handover to the People's Republic of China on July 1, 1997 and December 20, 1999 respectively.
- 15 The official name is the People's Democratic Republic of Korea.
- 16 The official name is the Republic of Korea.
- 17 Formerly known as Kampuchea.
- 18 Formerly part of Indonesia.
- 19 The official name is the Lao People's Democratic Republic.
- 20 Formerly known as Burma.
- 21 Formerly known as Republic of Belau.
- 22 Formerly known as Western Samoa.
- 23 Principally includes those born at sea.

Appendix K. 2001 Census Countries of Citizenship

Country of Citizenship (Single Citizenship)

Canada

Canada, by birth

Canada, by naturalization

Other countries of citizenship

Afghanistan	Congo, The Democratic Republic of the ⁴	Honduras
Albania	Congo, Republic of the	Hungary
Algeria	Costa Rica	Iceland
Andorra	Côte d'Ivoire ⁵	India
Angola	Croatia	Indonesia
Antigua and Barbuda ¹	Cuba	Iran ¹¹
Argentina	Cyprus	Iraq
Armenia	Czech Republic	Ireland, Republic of (EIRE)
Australia	Czechoslovakia, n.i.e. ⁶	Israel
Austria	Denmark ⁷	Italy
Azerbaijan	Djibouti	Jamaica
Bahamas	Dominica	Japan
Bahrain	Dominican Republic	Jordan
Bangladesh	East Timor ⁸	Kazakhstan
Barbados	Ecuador	Kenya
Belarus	Egypt	Kiribati
Belgium	El Salvador	Korea, North ¹²
Belize	Equatorial Guinea	Korea, South ¹³
Benin	Eritrea	Kuwait
Bhutan	Estonia	Kyrgyzstan
Bolivia	Ethiopia	Laos ¹⁴
Bosnia and Herzegovina	Fiji	Latvia
Botswana	Finland	Lebanon
Brazil	France and Dependencies ⁹	Lesotho
Brunei Darussalam	French Responses ¹⁰	Liberia
Bulgaria	Gabon	Libya
Burkina Faso	Gambia	Liechtenstein
Burundi	Georgia	Lithuania
Cambodia ²	Germany	Luxembourg
Cameroon	Ghana	Macedonia ¹⁵
Cape Verde	Greece	Madagascar
Central African Republic	Grenada	Malawi
Chad	Guatemala	Malaysia
Chile	Guinea	Maldives
China, People's Republic of ³	Guinea-Bissau	Mali
Colombia	Guyana	Malta
Comoros	Haiti	Marshall Islands

Mauritania	Romania	Tanzania, United Republic of
Mauritius	Russian Federation	Thailand
Mexico	Rwanda	Togo
Micronesia, Federated States of	Saint Kitts and Nevis	Tonga
Moldova, Republic of	Saint Lucia	Trinidad and Tobago
Monaco	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	Tunisia
Mongolia	Samoa ²¹	Turkey
Morocco	San Marino	Turkmenistan
Mozambique	Sao Tome and Principe	Tuvalu
Myanmar ¹⁶	Saudi Arabia	U.S.S.R., n.i.e. ²⁴
Namibia	Senegal	Uganda
Nauru	Seychelles	Ukraine
Nepal	Sierra Leone	United Arab Emirates
Netherlands and Dependencies ¹⁷	Singapore	United Kingdom
New Zealand and Dependencies ¹⁸	Slovakia	United Kingdom – British Citizens ²⁵
Nicaragua	Slovenia	United Kingdom – Dependent Territories ²⁶
Niger	Solomon Islands	United States ²⁷
Nigeria	Somalia	Uruguay
Norway	South Africa, Republic of	Uzbekistan
Oman	Spain	Vanuatu
Pakistan	Sri Lanka	Vatican City State ²⁸
Palau ¹⁹	Stateless ²²	Venezuela
Palestine/West Bank/Gaza Strip ²⁰	Sudan	Viet Nam
Panama	Suriname	Western Sahara
Papua New Guinea	Swaziland	Yemen
Paraguay	Sweden	Yugoslavia ²⁹
Peru	Switzerland	Zambia
Philippines	Syria ²³	Zimbabwe
Poland	Taiwan	
Portugal	Tajikistan	
Qatar		

Endnotes

¹ Formerly known as Antigua.

² Formerly known as Kampuchea.

³ Includes all persons who reported “Republic of China” as well as persons who reported “Macau”, the former dependency of Portugal, and all persons who reported “Hong Kong”. Macau and Hong Kong are now special administrative regions of China. Includes responses of “British National Overseas”, or “British Dependent Territories Citizen”, or “Stateless”, or “British” for citizenship and “Hong Kong” for place of birth.

⁴ Formerly known as Zaire.

⁵ Also known as Ivory Coast.

⁶ Includes persons who reported “Czechoslovakia”.

⁷ Includes Faroe Islands and Greenland, a dependency of Denmark.

⁸ Formerly part of Indonesia.

⁹ Includes France as well as the following dependencies of France: French Polynesia, French Guiana, Guadeloupe, Martinique, Mayotte, New Caledonia, Réunion, Saint Pierre and Miquelon, and Wallis and Futuna, as well as responses of “French Dependencies”.

¹⁰ Includes persons who reported “French” only.

¹¹ The official name is the Islamic Republic of Iran.

¹² The official name is the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea.

¹³ The official name is the Republic of Korea.

-
- ¹⁴ The official name is the Lao People's Democratic Republic.
- ¹⁵ The official name is the Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia.
- ¹⁶ Formerly known as Burma.
- ¹⁷ Includes Netherlands, Netherlands Antilles and Aruba, as well as responses of "Netherlands Dependencies".
- ¹⁸ Includes New Zealand, Niue, Tokelau, and Cook Islands, as well as responses of "New Zealand Dependencies".
- ¹⁹ Formerly known as Republic of Belau.
- ²⁰ Palestine refers to pre-1948 British mandate Palestine. West Bank and Gaza Strip are the territories referred to in the Declaration of Principles, signed by Israel and the PLO in 1993. However, since responses to the census are self-reported, it is not clear that responses of "Palestine", "Gaza Strip" or "West Bank" were in reference to these territories as defined.
- ²¹ Formerly known as Western Samoa.
- ²² Persons who reported "Stateless" as their country of citizenship excluding those who reported "Hong Kong" as their place of birth. Those who reported "Hong Kong" as their place of birth and who reported "stateless" as their citizenship are included in People's Republic of China.
- ²³ The official name is the Syrian Arab Republic.
- ²⁴ Includes persons who reported "U.S.S.R."
- ²⁵ Includes persons who reported "British Citizen" and "British National Overseas", excluding those who reported Hong Kong as their place of birth. Those who reported "Hong Kong" as their place of birth and who reported "British" as their citizenship are included in People's Republic of China.
- ²⁶ Includes the following dependencies of the United Kingdom: Anguilla, Bermuda, Cayman Islands, Falkland Islands (Malvinas), Gibraltar, Montserrat, Pitcairn, Saint Helena (also known as St. Helena and Ascension), Turks and Caicos Islands and the British Virgin Islands, as well as responses of "British Dependencies".
- ²⁷ Includes United States, Puerto Rico, U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam and American Samoa, as well as responses of "American Dependencies".
- ²⁸ The official name is the Holy See.
- ²⁹ Includes persons who reported "Yugoslavia", whether they referred to the former or the new republic of the same name.

Appendix L. Comparison of Religious Code Values, 2001, 1991 and 1981

Modified on December 4, 2003

2001	1991	1981
CATHOLIC		
Roman Catholic	Roman Catholic	Roman Catholic
Armenian Catholic	Armenian Orthodox	Armenian Orthodox
Chaldean Catholic	Antiochian Orthodox Christian	Antiochian Orthodox Christian
Greek or Byzantine Catholic, n.o.s.	Greek Orthodox	Greek Orthodox
Maronite	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Melkite	Orthodox, n.o.s. / Greek Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s. / Greek Orthodox
Syrian Catholic	Antiochian Orthodox Christian	Antiochian Orthodox Christian
Ukrainian Catholic	Ukrainian Catholic	Ukrainian Catholic
Eastern Catholic, n.i.e.	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Polish National Catholic Church	Polish National Catholic Church	Polish National Catholic Church
Other Catholic	Other Catholic	Not included
PROTESTANT		
Adventist, Seventh-day	Adventist	Adventist
Anglican	Anglican	Anglican
Apostolic Christian Church	Apostolic Christian	Apostolic Christian
Apostolic, n.o.s.	Other Christian	Other Christian
Associated Gospel	Associated Gospel	Associated Gospel
Baptist	Baptist	Baptist
Born-again Christian, n.o.s.	Other Christian	Other Christian
Brethren in Christ	Brethren in Christ	Brethren in Christ
Charismatic Renewal	Charismatic Renewal	Charismatic Renewal
Christadelphian	Christadelphian	Christadelphian
Christian and Missionary Alliance	Christian and Missionary Alliance	Christian and Missionary Alliance
Christian or Plymouth Brethren	Plymouth Brethren	Plymouth Brethren
Churches of Christ, Disciples	Churches of Christ, Disciples	Churches of Christ, Disciples
Church of God, n.o.s.	Church of God	Church of God
Church of the Nazarene	Church of the Nazarene	Church of the Nazarene
Christian Congregation	Christian Congregational	Christian Congregational
Doukhobors	Doukhobors	Doukhobors
Evangelical Free Church	Evangelical Free Church	Evangelical Free Church
Evangelical, n.o.s.	Other Christian	Other Christian
Iglesia ni Cristo	Other Christian	Other Christian
Jehovah's Witnesses	Jehovah's Witnesses	Jehovah's Witnesses
Lutheran	Lutheran	Lutheran
Mission de l'Esprit Saint	Mission de l'Esprit Saint	Mission de l'Esprit Saint
Moravian	Moravian	Moravian
New Apostolic	New Apostolic	New Apostolic
Pentecostal	Pentecostal	Pentecostal
Presbyterian	Presbyterian	Presbyterian
Protestant, n.o.s.	Protestant, n.o.s.	Protestant, n.o.s.
Quakers	Quakers	Quakers
Salvation Army	Salvation Army	Salvation Army

2001	1991	1981
Spiritualist	Spiritualist	Spiritualist
Standard Church	Standard Church	Standard Church
Swedenborgian (New Church)	New Church	New Church
Unitarian	Unitarian	Unitarian
United Church	United Church	United Church
Vineyard Christian Fellowship	Vineyard Christian Fellowship	Other Christian
Wesleyan	Wesleyan	Wesleyan
Worldwide Church of God	Worldwide Church of God	Worldwide Church of God
Interdenominational	Interdenominational	Interdenominational
Non-denominational	Non-denominational	Non-denominational
Anabaptist		
Amish	Mennonite	Mennonite
Hutterite	Hutterite	Hutterite
Mennonite	Mennonite	Mennonite
Latter-day Saints (Mormons)		
Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints	Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints	Church of Latter Day Saints
Reorganised Church of Latter-day Saints	Reorganised Church of Latter Saints	Reorganised Church of Latter Saints
Methodist Bodies		
Evangelical Missionary Church	Evangelical/Missionary Church	Evangelical/Missionary Church
Free Methodist	Free Methodist	Free Methodist
Methodist, n.i.e.	Methodist, n.o.s.	Methodist, n.o.s.
Reformed Bodies		
Christian Reformed Church	Christian Reformed Church	Christian Reformed
Canadian and American Reformed Church	Canadian Reformed Church / Reformed Church of America	Canadian Reformed Church / Reformed Church of America
Dutch Reformed Church	Dutch Reformed Church	Dutch Reformed Church
Reformed, n.i.e.	Other Reformed	Other Reformed
ORTHODOX (Christian)		
Antiochian Orthodox Christian	Antiochian Orthodox Christian	Antiochian Orthodox Christian
Armenian Apostolic	Armenian Orthodox	Armenian Orthodox
Armenian Orthodox	Armenian Orthodox	Armenian Orthodox
Bulgarian Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Coptic Orthodox	Coptic Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Ethiopian Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Greek Orthodox	Greek Orthodox	Greek Orthodox
Macedonian Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Romanian Orthodox	Romanian Orthodox	Romanian Orthodox
Russian Orthodox	Russian Orthodox	Russian Orthodox
Serbian Orthodox	Serbian Orthodox	Serbian Orthodox
Ukrainian Orthodox	Ukrainian Orthodox	Ukrainian Orthodox
Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
Other Orthodox	Orthodox, n.o.s.	Orthodox, n.o.s.
CHRISTIAN, N.I.E.		
Other Christian	Other Christian	Other Christian
Christian, n.o.s.	Christian, n.o.s.	Christian, n.o.s.

2001	1991	1981
MUSLIM		
Ahmadiyya	Islam	Islam
Druze	Islam	Islam
Ismaili	Islam	Islam
Shi'a, n.i.e.	Islam	Islam
Muslim, n.i.e.	Islam	Islam
JEWISH	Jewish	Jewish
BUDDHIST	Buddhist	Buddhist
HINDU	Hindu	Hindu
SIKH	Sikh	Sikh
EASTERN RELIGIONS		
Baha'i	Baha'i	Baha'i
Eckankar	Other Eastern Non-Christian	Other Non-Christian
Jains	Jains	Other Eastern Non-Christian
Shinto	Shinto	Other Eastern Non-Christian
Taoist	Taoist	Taoist
Zoroastrian	Zoroastrian	Other Eastern Non-Christian
Eastern Religions, n.i.e.	Other Eastern Non-Christian	Other Non-Christian
Aboriginal Spirituality	Native Indian or Inuit	Native Indian or Inuit
Pagan	Pagan	Pagan
Wicca	Pagan	Pagan
Unity - New Thought - Pantheist	New Thought-Unity-Metaphysical	New Thought-Unity-Metaphysical
Scientology	Scientology	Fourth Way
Rastafarian	Rastafarian	Other Para-religious Groups
New Age	New Age	Not included
Gnostic	Theosophical Groups	Theosophical Groups
Satanist	Satanism	Pagan
Other Religions, n.i.e.	Other Para-religious Groups	Other Para-religious Groups
NO RELIGIOUS AFFILIATION		
Agnostic	Agnostic	Agnostic
Atheist	Atheist	Atheist
Humanist	Humanist	Other, Non-religious
No Religion	No Religion	No Religion
Other, n.i.e.	Other, Non-religious / Other, not elsewhere classified	Other, Non-religious / Other, not elsewhere classified

Appendix M. Major Field of Study (MFS) – Classification Study

Modified on April 22, 2003

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
EDUCATIONAL, RECREATIONAL AND COUNSELLING SERVICES		
Education – General		
001	Education – General	COLL_UNIV
Elementary-Primary Education		
002	Elementary School Teaching – General	COLL_UNIV
003	Elementary School Teaching – Specialized	COLL_UNIV
004	Early Childhood Education	COLL_UNIV
Secondary Education (Basic)		
005	Secondary School Teaching	COLL_UNIV
006	English Language Teaching	COLL_UNIV
007	French Language Teaching	COLL_UNIV
008	Other Language Teaching	COLL_UNIV
009	Mathematics and/or Science Teaching	COLL_UNIV
010	Computer Teaching	COLL_UNIV
011	Social Studies Teaching	COLL_UNIV
012	Secondary Basic Curriculum – Other	COLL_UNIV
Secondary Education (Specialized)		
013	Adult Education	COLL_UNIV
014	Art and Fine Art Education	COLL_UNIV
015	Business Education	COLL_UNIV
016	Home Economics Education	COLL_UNIV
017	Industrial/Vocational Education	COLL_UNIV
018	Music Education	COLL_UNIV
019	Religious Education	COLL_UNIV
Special Education		
021	Special Education Teaching	COLL_UNIV
023	Native Education	ALL_UCT
026	Special Education – Other	COLL_UNIV
Non-teaching Educational Fields		
027	Educational Technology	ALL_UCT
028	Educational Administration	COLL_UNIV
029	Educational Psychology and Measurement	COLL_UNIV
031	Philosophy of Education	COLL_UNIV
032	Educational Assistant	TRADE_COLL
Physical Education, Health and Recreation		
033	Physical Education and Health	COLL_UNIV
034	Kinesiology	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
035	Recreation	COLL_UNIV
036	Outdoor Recreation	COLL_UNIV
037	Travel and Tourism	TRADE_COLL
038	Sports Administration	ALL_UCT
039	Fitness and Other Physical Recreation	ALL_UCT
Counselling Services and Personal Development		
040	Counselling Services – General	COLL_UNIV
041	Counselling Psychology	COLL_UNIV
042	Marriage, Family and Life Skills Counselling	COLL_UNIV
043	Vocational Counselling	ALL_UCT
044	Counselling Services – Other	ALL_UCT
Other Education		
045	Education, n.e.c. – Other	ALL_UCT
046	Postsecondary Education Training	COLL_UNIV
FINE AND APPLIED ARTS		
Fine Arts		
047	Fine Arts – General	COLL_UNIV
048	Art Studies	COLL_UNIV
049	Art History	COLL_UNIV
050	Painting and Drawing	ALL_UCT
051	Ceramics and Pottery	ALL_UCT
052	Sculpture	ALL_UCT
Music		
053	Music and Musicology	ALL_UCT
054	Music Composition	COLL_UNIV
055	Piano	ALL_UCT
056	Music History and Theory	COLL_UNIV
057	Vocal Music	ALL_UCT
Other Performing Arts		
058	Performing Arts – General	ALL_UCT
059	Dance	COLL_UNIV
060	Drama	COLL_UNIV
061	Theatre Arts	COLL_UNIV
Commercial Art		
062	Commercial Art – General	TRADE_COLL
063	Advertising Art	TRADE_COLL
064	Modeling	TRADE_COLL

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Graphic and Audio-visual Arts		
065	Graphic Arts and Design	ALL_UCT
066	Lithography	TRADE_COLL
067	Photography	TRADE_COLL
069	Printing and Publishing	TRADE_COLL
070	Audio-visual Arts	ALL_UCT
Creative and Design Arts		
071	Creative and Design Arts – General	ALL_UCT
072	Handicrafts (Arts and Crafts)	TRADE_COLL
073	Interior Design and Decorating	ALL_UCT
Hairdressing, Esthetics and Other Applied Arts		
074	Applied Arts – General	TRADE_COLL
075	Barbering	TRADE_COLL
076	Beauty Culture and Cosmetology	TRADE_COLL
077	Hairdressing	TRADE_COLL
078	Upholstery and Furniture	TRADE_COLL
079	Applied Arts – Repair and Renovation	TRADE_COLL
HUMANITIES AND RELATED FIELDS		
Classics and Classical Languages		
080	Classics	COLL_UNIV
081	Latin, Greek and Other Classical Languages	COLL_UNIV
History		
083	History – General	COLL_UNIV
084	Canadian History	COLL_UNIV
085	Medieval and Ancient History	COLL_UNIV
087	History – Other	COLL_UNIV
Library and Records Science		
088	Library/Documentation Science	ALL_UCT
089	Museology, Museum Studies	ALL_UCT
Communications and Media Studies		
090	Communications	COLL_UNIV
091	Cinematography, Film Studies	COLL_UNIV
092	Radio and Television	COLL_UNIV
093	Journalism, News Reporting	ALL_UCT
English Language and Literature		
094	English Language and Literature – General	COLL_UNIV
097	English and French Literature	COLL_UNIV
098	English Language and Literature – Specialized ¹	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
French Language and Literature		
099	French Language and Literature – General	COLL_UNIV
102	French Language and Literature – Specialized ²	COLL_UNIV
Other Languages and Literature		
103	Comparative Literature	COLL_UNIV
104	Asian Languages and Literature	COLL_UNIV
105	Germanic Language and Literature	COLL_UNIV
106	Italian Language and Literature	COLL_UNIV
107	Slavic or Eastern European Languages and Literature	COLL_UNIV
108	Linguistics	COLL_UNIV
109	Other Languages and Literature	COLL_UNIV
Philosophy		
110	Philosophy – General	COLL_UNIV
111	Political Philosophy	COLL_UNIV
113	Political Economy	COLL_UNIV
114	Philosophy – Specialized	COLL_UNIV
Religious Studies		
115	Religion, Religious Studies	COLL_UNIV
116	Comparative Religion	COLL_UNIV
117	Divinity	COLL_UNIV
118	Theology	COLL_UNIV
119	Religious Studies – Other	COLL_UNIV
Other Humanities and Related Fields		
120	Humanities – General Arts	COLL_UNIV
121	Second Language Training	ALL_UCT
122	Translation and Interpretation	COLL_UNIV
123	Creative Writing	COLL_UNIV
124	Humanities and Related Fields, n.e.c. – Other	ALL_UCT
SOCIAL SCIENCES AND RELATED FIELDS		
Anthropology		
125	Anthropology – General	COLL_UNIV
127	Physical Anthropology	COLL_UNIV
128	Anthropology – Other	COLL_UNIV
Archeology		
130	Archeology	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Area Studies (Neither Languages nor Literature)		
131	Asian Studies	COLL_UNIV
132	Canadian Studies	COLL_UNIV
133	Germanic Studies	COLL_UNIV
134	Latin American Studies	COLL_UNIV
135	Islamic and Near Eastern Studies	COLL_UNIV
136	Russian and Slavic Studies	COLL_UNIV
137	Area Studies – Other	COLL_UNIV
Economics		
138	Economics – General	COLL_UNIV
139	Agricultural Economics	COLL_UNIV
140	Econometrics and Mathematical Economics	COLL_UNIV
141	International Development	COLL_UNIV
143	Economics – Other	COLL_UNIV
Geography		
144	Geography – General	COLL_UNIV
145	Cartography	ALL_UCT
146	Economic Geography	COLL_UNIV
147	Historical Geography	COLL_UNIV
148	Human and Social Geography	COLL_UNIV
149	Environmental Geography	COLL_UNIV
150	Physical Geography	COLL_UNIV
151	Urban Geography	COLL_UNIV
152	Geography – Other	COLL_UNIV
Law and Jurisprudence		
153	Law and Jurisprudence – General	COLL_UNIV
154	Civil/Criminal/Family Law	COLL_UNIV
155	Commercial/Business Law	COLL_UNIV
156	Constitutional and International Law	COLL_UNIV
157	Law – Other	COLL_UNIV
Environmental Studies		
158	Environmental Studies – General	COLL_UNIV
159	Human Ecology	COLL_UNIV
160	Resource Management	COLL_UNIV
161	Urban and Regional Planning	COLL_UNIV
Political Science		
162	Political Science – General	COLL_UNIV
163	Political Science and Economics	COLL_UNIV
165	International Relations	COLL_UNIV
166	Political Science – Other ³	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Psychology		
167	Psychology – General	COLL_UNIV
168	Early Childhood Development	COLL_UNIV
169	Clinical and Experimental Psychology	COLL_UNIV
170	Social Psychology	COLL_UNIV
171	Psychology – Other Behavioural Sciences	COLL_UNIV
Sociology		
172	Sociology – General	COLL_UNIV
173	Criminology	COLL_UNIV
174	Demography	COLL_UNIV
176	Family Studies	COLL_UNIV
177	Sociology – Other ⁴	COLL_UNIV
Social Work and Social Services		
178	Social Work – General	COLL_UNIV
179	Child and Youth Care	ALL_UCT
180	Corrections	TRADE_COLL
181	Gerontology	ALL_UCT
182	Law Enforcement	TRADE_COLL
183	Protection Services (Fire and Other)	TRADE_COLL
184	Social Services – Other	ALL_UCT
Military and Armed Forces		
185	Military and Armed Forces	COLL_UNIV
Other Social Sciences and Related Fields		
186	Social Sciences – General	COLL_UNIV
187	Social Sciences and Related, n.e.c. – Other	ALL_UCT
COMMERCE, MANAGEMENT AND BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION		
Business and Commerce		
188	Business and Commerce – General	COLL_UNIV
189	Business Administration	COLL_UNIV
190	International Business and Trade	COLL_UNIV
191	Business and Commerce – Other	ALL_UCT
Financial Management		
192	Financial Management – General	COLL_UNIV
193	Accounting	COLL_UNIV
194	Assessment and Appraisal	COLL_UNIV
195	Financial Management – Other	ALL_UCT

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Industrial Management and Public Administration		
196	Industrial Relations/Management	ALL_UCT
197	Labour Relations	ALL_UCT
198	Public Administration	COLL_UNIV
199	Human Resources Management	COLL_UNIV
200	Industrial Management and Administration – Other	ALL_UCT
Institutional Management and Administration		
201	Health Administration	COLL_UNIV
202	Hotel and Food Administration	ALL_UCT
203	Funeral Directing and Embalming	ALL_UCT
204	Hospitality and Tourism	ALL_UCT
205	Institutional Management – Other	ALL_UCT
Marketing, Merchandising, Retailing and Sales		
206	Public Relations and Customer Services	ALL_UCT
207	Marketing	COLL_UNIV
208	Merchandising	ALL_UCT
209	Retailing and Sales	ALL_UCT
210	Marketing and Sales – Other	ALL_UCT
Office Administration, Secretarial and Clerical		
211	Secretarial/Administrative – General	ALL_UCT
212	Bank and Financial Clerk	TRADE_COLL
213	Office Systems Technology	TRADE_COLL
214	Court Reporting	ALL_UCT
215	Health Records Technician	ALL_UCT
216	Legal Secretary/Assistant	ALL_UCT
217	Medical Secretary, Medical Office Assistant	ALL_UCT
218	Secretarial Accounting/Bookkeeping	TRADE_COLL
219	Word Processing	TRADE_COLL
220	Administrative/Clerical – Other	TRADE_COLL
AGRICULTURAL, BIOLOGICAL, NUTRITIONAL, AND FOOD SCIENCES		
Agricultural Science		
221	Agricultural Science – General	COLL_UNIV
222	Animal Science – General	COLL_UNIV
223	Crop Science / Agronomy	COLL_UNIV
224	Food Science	COLL_UNIV
225	Horticulture/Floriculture	COLL_UNIV
226	Plant Science	COLL_UNIV
227	Floral Design / Florist	ALL_UCT
228	Soil Science / Agrology	COLL_UNIV
229	Agricultural Science – Other	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Agricultural Technology		
230	Agricultural Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
231	Agricultural Business	ALL_UCT
232	Farming	TRADE_COLL
233	Agricultural Technology – Other	TRADE_COLL
Animal Science Technologies		
234	Animal Health Technology	TRADE_COLL
235	Dairy and Livestock Technology	TRADE_COLL
236	Equine Studies	TRADE_COLL
237	Veterinary Technician / Animal Care	TRADE_COLL
238	Animal Science Technologies – Other	TRADE_COLL
Biochemistry		
239	Biochemistry	COLL_UNIV
Biology		
240	Biology – General	COLL_UNIV
241	Genetics	UNIV_ONLY
242	Microbiology and Bacteriology	COLL_UNIV
243	Molecular Biology	UNIV_ONLY
244	Biology – Other	COLL_UNIV
Biophysics		
245	Biophysics	UNIV_ONLY
Botany		
246	Botany – General	ALL_UCT
247	Phycology	COLL_UNIV
248	Plant Sciences – Specialized	COLL_UNIV
Food Services, Nutrition, and Other Household Sciences		
249	Homemaker	ALL_UCT
250	Consumer Studies	ALL_UCT
251	Clothing and Textiles	TRADE_COLL
252	Nutrition and Dietetics	ALL_UCT
253	Food Services and Preparation	TRADE_COLL
254	Home Economics	ALL_UCT
Veterinary Medicine/Science		
255	Veterinary Medicine	COLL_UNIV
256	Veterinary Science and Pathology	COLL_UNIV
Zoology		
257	Zoology – General	COLL_UNIV
258	Animal Biology	COLL_UNIV
259	Entomology	COLL_UNIV
260	Fisheries Biology	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
261	Marine Biology	COLL_UNIV
262	Wildlife Biology	COLL_UNIV
Other Agricultural and Biological Science/Technologies		
263	Aquaculture and Fisheries	TRADE_COLL
264	Food Processing Technologies – General	TRADE_COLL
265	Trapping	TRADE_COLL
266	Natural Sciences	ALL_UCT
ENGINEERING AND APPLIED SCIENCES		
Architecture and Architectural Engineering		
267	Architecture – General	COLL_UNIV
268	Architectural Engineering/Design	COLL_UNIV
269	Industrial Design	COLL_UNIV
Aeronautical and Aerospace Engineering		
270	Aeronautical and Aerospace Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Biological and Chemical Engineering		
271	Biochemical Engineering	COLL_UNIV
272	Biomedical Engineering	COLL_UNIV
273	Chemical Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Civil Engineering		
274	Civil Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Systems Design Engineering		
275	Systems Design Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Electrical/Electronic Engineering		
276	Computer Engineering	COLL_UNIV
277	Electrical/Electronic Engineering – General	COLL_UNIV
278	Sound and Recording Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Industrial Engineering		
279	Industrial Engineering – General	COLL_UNIV
Mechanical Engineering		
280	Mechanical Engineering – General	COLL_UNIV
281	Instrumentation Engineering	COLL_UNIV
282	Power Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Mining, Metallurgical and Petroleum Engineering		
283	Geological Engineering	COLL_UNIV
284	Metallurgical Engineering	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
285	Mining Engineering	COLL_UNIV
286	Petroleum Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Resources and Environmental Engineering		
287	Agricultural Engineering	COLL_UNIV
288	Environmental/Resource Engineering	COLL_UNIV
289	Marine Engineering	COLL_UNIV
290	Water Resources Engineering	COLL_UNIV
Engineering Science		
291	Engineering Science – General	UNIV_ONLY
292	Engineering Physics	UNIV_ONLY
Engineering, n.e.c.		
293	Engineering, n.e.c.	COLL_UNIV
Forestry		
294	Forestry – General	COLL_UNIV
295	Forest Engineering	COLL_UNIV
296	Forest Wildlife Management	COLL_UNIV
298	Forestry – Other	COLL_UNIV
Landscape Architecture		
299	Landscape Architecture – General	COLL_UNIV
300	Landscape Horticulture	ALL_UCT
301	Landscape Technology	TRADE_COLL
APPLIED SCIENCE TECHNOLOGIES AND TRADES		
Architectural Technology		
302	Architectural Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
303	Architectural Drafting	TRADE_COLL
Chemical Technology		
304	Chemical Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
305	Biotechnology	TRADE_COLL
306	Plastics Engineering Technology	TRADE_COLL
307	Textile Engineering Technology	TRADE_COLL
Building Technologies		
308	Boat, Shipbuilding and Naval Architecture	ALL_UCT
309	Building Technology	TRADE_COLL
310	Construction Electrician	TRADE_COLL
311	Drywall, Lathing, Plastering	TRADE_COLL
312	Heat and Insulation	TRADE_COLL
313	Interior Finishing	TRADE_COLL
314	Masonry (Brick, Concrete, Stone)	TRADE_COLL

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
315	Plumbing and Related Pipe Trades	TRADE_COLL
316	Welding Technologies	TRADE_COLL
317	Woodworking, Carpentry	TRADE_COLL
Data Processing and Computer Technologies		
318	Data Processing and Data Entry	TRADE_COLL
319	Computer Science Technology	TRADE_COLL
320	Computer Programming	TRADE_COLL
321	Microcomputer and Information Systems	TRADE_COLL
Electronic and Electrical Technologies		
322	Electronic Technology	TRADE_COLL
323	Electrical Technology	TRADE_COLL
324	Radar Technology	ALL_UCT
325	Radio and Television Technology	TRADE_COLL
326	Telecommunications Technology	ALL_UCT
327	Electronic and Electrical Technology – Other	TRADE_COLL
Environmental and Conservation Technologies		
328	Environmental Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
329	Water Treatment Technologies	TRADE_COLL
330	Forest Conservation Technologies	TRADE_COLL
331	Renewable Resources Technology	TRADE_COLL
332	Fish and Wildlife Technology	TRADE_COLL
General and Civil Engineering Technologies		
333	Civil Engineering Technologies – General	TRADE_COLL
334	Construction Technologies, n.e.c.	TRADE_COLL
335	Drafting – General	TRADE_COLL
336	Drafting – Specialized	TRADE_COLL
337	Instrumentation Technology	TRADE_COLL
338	Non-plumbing Piping Technologies	TRADE_COLL
339	Surveying Technology	TRADE_COLL
Industrial Engineering Technologies		
340	Industrial Millwright	TRADE_COLL
341	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration	TRADE_COLL
342	Clothing/Fabric Products	TRADE_COLL
343	Machinist, Machine Shop	TRADE_COLL
344	Pattern Making	TRADE_COLL
345	Sewing Machine Operator	TRADE_COLL
346	Sheet Metal	TRADE_COLL
347	Tool and Die	TRADE_COLL
348	Industrial Technologies – Other	ALL_UCT
Mechanical Engineering Technologies		
349	Mechanical Engineering Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
350	Aircraft/Aviation/Avionics Engineering Technology	TRADE_COLL

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
351	Agricultural Mechanics	TRADE_COLL
352	Aircraft Maintenance Mechanics	TRADE_COLL
353	Automobile Mechanics	TRADE_COLL
354	Heavy Equipment Mechanics	TRADE_COLL
355	Marine Mechanics	TRADE_COLL
356	Office/Business Machine Technician	TRADE_COLL
357	Small Engine Repair	TRADE_COLL
358	Power/Stationary Engineering	TRADE_COLL
Primary Resource Industrial Processing		
359	Forest Products Technology	TRADE_COLL
360	Mining Technology	TRADE_COLL
361	Petroleum Technologies	TRADE_COLL
362	Water Well Drilling and Primary Resources – Other	TRADE_COLL
Transportation Technologies		
363	Transportation Technology – General	TRADE_COLL
364	Air Transportation Technology	TRADE_COLL
365	Marine Navigation	TRADE_COLL
366	Motor Transportation – Commercial/Public	TRADE_COLL
367	Motor Transportation – Driving Instructor	TRADE_COLL
368	Rail Transportation	TRADE_COLL
Other Engineering Technologies, n.e.c.		
369	Other Engineering Technologies, n.e.c.	ALL_UCT
HEALTH PROFESSIONS AND RELATED TECHNOLOGIES		
Dentistry		
370	Dentistry – General	UNIV_ONLY
371	Dental Surgery	UNIV_ONLY
372	Orthodontics	UNIV_ONLY
373	Dental Specialties	UNIV_ONLY
Medicine – General		
375	General Practice Medicine	UNIV_ONLY
Medicine – Basic Medical Sciences		
376	Medical Anatomy	UNIV_ONLY
378	Medical Biophysics and Biochemistry	UNIV_ONLY
380	Medical Neurophysiology	UNIV_ONLY
381	Medical Pharmacology	COLL_UNIV
382	Medical Physiology	UNIV_ONLY
383	Basic Medical Sciences – Other ⁵	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Medical Specializations (Non-surgical)		
384	Neuroscience	UNIV_ONLY
385	Paediatrics	UNIV_ONLY
386	Psychiatry	UNIV_ONLY
387	Radiology	COLL_UNIV
388	Medical Specializations – Other	COLL_UNIV
Paraclinical Sciences		
390	Medical Immunology	UNIV_ONLY
391	Medical Microbiology and Immunology	UNIV_ONLY
392	Medical Pathology	UNIV_ONLY
393	Medical Parasitology and Virology	UNIV_ONLY
Surgery and Surgical Specializations		
394	Surgery – General	UNIV_ONLY
395	Obstetrics and Gynaecology	UNIV_ONLY
396	Orthopaedic Surgery	UNIV_ONLY
398	Surgical Specialties – Other ⁶	UNIV_ONLY
Nursing		
399	Nursing – General	COLL_UNIV
400	Critical Care Nursing	COLL_UNIV
401	Gerontology Nursing	COLL_UNIV
402	Medical Nursing	COLL_UNIV
403	Midwifery and Obstetric Nursing	COLL_UNIV
404	Psychiatric Nursing	COLL_UNIV
405	Public Health Nursing	COLL_UNIV
406	Nursing – Other	COLL_UNIV
Nursing Assistance		
407	Nursing Assistant – General	TRADE_COLL
408	Health Care Aide	TRADE_COLL
409	Long-term Care Aide	TRADE_COLL
410	Nursing Aide	TRADE_COLL
Optometry		
411	Optometry	COLL_UNIV
Pharmacy and Pharmaceutical Sciences		
412	Pharmacy	COLL_UNIV
413	Pharmaceutical Sciences/Technology	COLL_UNIV
Public Health		
414	Public Health – General	ALL-UCT
415	Community Health	ALL-UCT
416	Dental Hygiene	COLL_UNIV
417	Epidemiology and Biostatistics	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
418	Industrial Health	ALL-UCT
419	Industrial Hygiene	COLL_UNIV
Rehabilitation Medicine		
421	Rehabilitation – General	COLL_UNIV
422	Speech Language Pathology	COLL_UNIV
423	Occupational and Physical Therapy	COLL_UNIV
424	Physiotherapy	COLL_UNIV
Medical Laboratory and Diagnostic Technology		
425	Medical Laboratory Technology	COLL_UNIV
426	Biological Laboratory Technology and Cytology	ALL_UCT
427	Biomedical Electronic Technology	ALL_UCT
428	Dental Technician	ALL_UCT
429	Radiological Technology	COLL_UNIV
Medical Professions and Treatment Technologies⁷		
430	Cardio-pulmonary Resuscitation (CPR)	TRADE_COLL
431	Chiropractic Technology	COLL_UNIV
432	Dental Assistant	TRADE_COLL
433	Emergency Paramedical Technology	TRADE_COLL
434	Mental Health Counselling	TRADE_COLL
435	Respiratory Therapy Technology	TRADE_COLL
436	Ultrasound Technology	TRADE_COLL
437	X-ray – Radiography	TRADE_COLL
438	X-ray – Radiation Therapy	TRADE_COLL
439	Medical Treatment Technologies – Other	TRADE_COLL
Optician, Optical Dispensing, Prosthetics and Orthotics		
440	Optician, Optical Dispensing, Prosthetics and Orthotics	ALL_UCT
Alternative Medicine and Other Health Sciences		
441	Alternative Medicine and Other Health Sciences, n.e.c.	ALL_UCT
MATHEMATICS, COMPUTER AND PHYSICAL SCIENCES		
Actuarial Science		
442	Actuarial Science – General	COLL_UNIV
Computer Science and Other Applied Mathematics		
443	Applied Mathematics – General	COLL_UNIV
444	Computer Science – General	COLL_UNIV
445	Computer Science – Systems Analysis	COLL_UNIV
446	Operations Research	COLL_UNIV
447	Applied Mathematics – Other	COLL_UNIV

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
Chemistry		
448	Chemistry – General	COLL_UNIV
449	Analytical Chemistry	COLL_UNIV
450	Inorganic and Organic Chemistry	COLL_UNIV
452	Physical Chemistry	COLL_UNIV
453	Mathematical and Theoretical Chemistry	COLL_UNIV
454	Chemistry – Other ⁸	COLL_UNIV
Geology and Related Fields		
455	Geology	COLL_UNIV
456	Geochemistry	COLL_UNIV
457	Geophysics	COLL_UNIV
458	Hydrogeology and Hydrology	COLL_UNIV
459	Gemology	COLL_UNIV
460	Geology – Other ⁹	COLL_UNIV
Mathematical Statistics		
463	Statistics	UNIV_ONLY
Mathematics		
464	Mathematics	COLL_UNIV
Metallurgy and Materials Science		
465	Metallurgy	COLL_UNIV
Meteorology		
466	Meteorology	COLL_UNIV
Oceanography and Marine Sciences		
467	Oceanography and Marine Sciences ¹⁰	COLL_UNIV
Physics		
471	Physics – General	COLL_UNIV
472	Astronomy	UNIV_ONLY
473	Nuclear Physics	UNIV_ONLY
474	Chemistry Physics	UNIV_ONLY
477	Theoretical and Mathematical Physics	COLL_UNIV
478	Physics – Other ¹¹	COLL_UNIV
General Sciences		
479	General Science	COLL_UNIV
480	Science Lab Technology	TRADE_COLL

MFS Code	MAJOR, Minor and Unit Levels	LEVEL
	No Specialization	
481	All Other, n.e.c.	ALL_UCT
482	No Specialization	ALL_UCT

Endnotes

- ¹ Includes American, British and Canadian (English) literature.
- ² Includes French Canadian and European French literature.
- ³ Includes Canadian and comparative politics.
- ⁴ Includes Ethnic sociology.
- ⁵ Includes Medical embryology/genetics.
- ⁶ Includes Plastic surgery.
- ⁷ Includes Dental assistants, Paramedics, X-ray technicians and Chiropractic technology.
- ⁸ Includes Spectroscopy.
- ⁹ Includes Petrology, petrography, stratigraphy and sedimentology.
- ¹⁰ Includes Biological oceanography, Fisheries oceanography and Marine sciences, n.e.c. – Other.
- ¹¹ Includes High energy, particle and solid state physics.

Appendix N. 2001 Form 2B, Population Questionnaire

Note: In order to reduce the length of this document, Appendix N, which originally went from page 356 to page 387, has been removed.

You can access the PDF version of this appendix on the Internet from either the Table of Contents – Appendices page or the Warning page. Links to these pages are found in the introduction page to the *2001 Census Dictionary*.

Appendix O. Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations With Census Tracts: Changes Between the 1996 Census and the 2001 Census

New – December 17, 2002

To view the changes between the 1996 and 2001 Censuses, refer to Paper No. 2002-1 of the *Geography Working Paper Series* entitled “Census Metropolitan Areas and Census Agglomerations with Census Tracts for the 2001 Census” and written by Peter Murphy and Henry Puderer ([Catalogue No. 92F0138MIE](#)).

REGIONAL REFERENCE CENTRES

The Advisory Services Division of Statistics Canada provides an information dissemination network across the country through eight regional reference centres.

Advisory Services can provide assistance in helping you identify your informational needs, establish sources of available data, consolidate and integrate data from different sources, develop profiles, provide analysis of highlights or tendencies and, finally, provide training on products, services, Statistics Canada concepts and the use of statistical data.

For more information, call the Toll-free general enquiries line listed below or send an e-mail to infostats@statcan.ca.

Contact Us

E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

Telephone (Canada and the United States only):

7:30 a.m. to 7:30 p.m. Eastern Time

- **1 800 263-1136** – Toll-free general enquiries line
- **1 800 267-6677** – Toll-free products and services sales line
- **1 800 363-7629** – National TTY line (teletype machine)
- **1 877 287-4369** – Toll-free fax number

Telephone (outside Canada and the United States):

7:30 a.m. to 7:30 p.m. Eastern Time

- **1 613 951-8116**

Statistical Reference Centre (National Capital Region)
Rm. 1500, Main Building
Holland Avenue
OTTAWA, Ontario
K1A 0T6

ATLANTIC ADVISORY SERVICES

Serving the provinces of Newfoundland and Labrador, Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island and New Brunswick.

Atlantic Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
2nd Floor, Box 11
1741 Brunswick Street
Halifax, Nova Scotia B3J 3X8
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

QUEBEC ADVISORY SERVICES

Serving the province of Quebec (except the National Capital Region).

Quebec Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
4th Floor, East Tower
Guy Favreau Complex
200 René Lévesque Blvd. W
Montréal, Quebec H2Z 1X4
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

ADVISORY SERVICES, NATIONAL CAPITAL REGION

Serving the National Capital Region.

Advisory Services, National Capital Region
Statistics Canada
Main Building, Room 1500
120 Parkdale Avenue
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0T6
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

ONTARIO ADVISORY SERVICES

Serving the province of Ontario (except the National Capital Region).

Ontario Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
Arthur Meighen Building, 10th Floor
25 St. Clair Avenue E
Toronto, Ontario M4T 1M4
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

PRAIRIES, NWT AND NUNAVUT ADVISORY SERVICES

This region has three reference centres serving the provinces of Manitoba, Saskatchewan, Alberta, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut.

Serving the province of Manitoba:

Prairies, NWT and Nunavut Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
Via Rail Building, Suite 200
123 Main Street
Winnipeg, Manitoba R3C 4V9
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

Serving the province of Saskatchewan:

Prairies, NWT and Nunavut Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
Park Plaza, Suite 440
2365 Albert Street
Regina, Saskatchewan S4P 4K1
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

Serving the province of Alberta, the Northwest Territories and Nunavut.

Prairies, NWT and Nunavut Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
Pacific Plaza, Suite 900
10909 Jasper Avenue NW
Edmonton, Alberta T5J 4J3
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca

PACIFIC AND YUKON ADVISORY SERVICES

Serving the province of British Columbia and the Yukon Territory.

Pacific and Yukon Advisory Services
Statistics Canada
Library Square Tower
600-300 West Georgia Street
Vancouver, British Columbia V6B 6C7
Toll-free number: 1 800 263-1136
E-mail: infostats@statcan.ca



ORDER FORM

Statistics Canada

TO ORDER:

MAIL **TELEPHONE** 1 800 267-6677 **FAX** 1 800 889-9734

Statistics Canada
Operations and Integration
Circulation Management
120 Parkdale Avenue
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0T6
CANADA

E-MAIL
order@statcan.ca

(Please print)

TTY
1 800 363-7629

Company _____

Department _____

Attention _____ Title _____

Address _____

City _____ Province _____
() ()

Postal Code _____ Telephone _____ Fax _____

E-mail Address: _____

Your personal information is protected by the *Privacy Act*.**

METHOD OF PAYMENT:

(Check only one)

Please charge my: VISA Master Card American Express

Card Number _____

Expiry Date _____

Cardholder (please print) _____

Signature _____

Payment enclosed \$ _____
(payable to the Receiver General for Canada)

Purchase Order Number _____
(please enclose)

Authorized Signature _____

Catalogue Number	Title	Date of issue(s) or indicate an "S" for subscription(s)	Price (All prices exclude sales tax)	*Shipping Charges (Applicable to shipments sent outside Canada)	Quantity	Total \$

	*Shipping charges: No shipping charges for delivery in Canada. For shipments to the United States, please add \$6 per issue or item ordered. For shipments to other countries, please add \$10 per issue or item ordered. Annual frequency = 1. Quarterly frequency = 4. Monthly frequency = 12.	SUBTOTAL	
	Canadian clients add either 7% GST and applicable PST or HST (GST Registration No. R121491807).	GST (7%)	
	Clients outside Canada pay in Canadian dollars drawn on a Canadian bank or pay in equivalent US dollars, converted at the prevailing daily exchange rate, drawn on a US bank.	Applicable PST	
	Statistics Canada is FIS-ready. Federal government departments and agencies must include with all orders their IS Organization Code _____ and IS Reference Code _____.	Applicable HST (N.S., N.B., Nfld.Lab.)	
	** Statistics Canada will only use your information to complete this sales transaction, deliver your product(s), announce product updates and administer your account. From time to time, we may also offer you other Statistics Canada products and services or ask you to participate in our market research. If you do not wish to be contacted again for promotional purposes <input type="checkbox"/> and/or market research <input type="checkbox"/>, check as appropriate and fax or mail this page to us, call 1 800 700-1033 or e-mail order@statcan.ca.	GRAND TOTAL	
		PF021207	



THANK YOU FOR YOUR ORDER!



Statistics Canada
Statistique Canada

www.statcan.ca

Canada